THE following revised Regulations for Cavalry Drill are to be strictly adhered to throughout the Army.

Wolseley F. M.

Commander-in-Chief.

WAR OFFICE,

1*st February*, 1898.

CONTENTS.

	Page
Organization	19
Order of Dress—Officers	21
„ „ Men..	25
Mode of carrying Equipment	31

PART I.—EQUITATION.

Introductory Remarks	33
Riding School and Open Manège	34

Section. INSTRUCTION OF THE RECRUIT.

1. Directions for Instructors	36
2. Leading and Standing to the Horse	36

RIDING WITHOUT SADDLES.

3. Mounting and Dismounting with Numnahs	38
4. Position with Numnahs	39
5. Dressing at the Halt	40
6. Extension and Balance Motions at the Halt	41

Section. Page

7. Simple Aids for moving off at the Walk, Halting, Reining back and Turning 42
8. Walking and Trotting in the School or Manège .. 43
9. Extension and Balance Motions while Moving.. .. 44

RIDING IN SADDLES WITHOUT STIRRUPS

10. Directions for Instructors 45
11. Saddling.. 45
12. Bridling 46
13. Mounting and Dismounting without Stirrups 47
14. Aids in Walking, Trotting, Turning, Bending, &c. .. 47

RIDING WITH STIRRUPS AND BIT.

15. Mounting and Dismounting with Stirrups 50
16. Position with Stirrups 53
17. Position of Bridle Hand with the Bit 54

THE SINGLE RIDE.

18. Direction for Instructors 56
19. Formation of the Ride 56
20. Bending Lesson 63
21. Turns in the Bending Lesson 66
22. The Canter 67
23. Words of command for the Single Ride 74

RIDING WITH ARMS.

24. Riding with the Sword 77
25. Riding with the Lance 79

Section. Page

26. Riding with the Carbine 82
27. Salute when Mounted 83

LEAPING.

28. Aids in Leaping 84

PRACTICE OF THE GALLOP AND CHARGE.

29. Directions for Instructors 84

POST PRACTICE.

30. Sword Post Practice 85
31. Lance Post Practice 86

ATTACK AND DEFENCE DRILL.

32. Preliminary Instruction on Foot 86
33. Sword *v.* Lance 87
34. Lance *v.* Lance 89

MOUNTED COMBAT.

35. General Instructions 91
36. Use of the Sword 91
37. Use of the Lance 94

TENT PEGGING, &c.

38. Instructions for Tent Pegging, Lemon-cutting, &c. 5

TRAINING THE YOUNG HORSE.

Section.		Page
39.	The Cavesson	96
40.	Longeing..	96
41.	Saddling a Young Horse	98
42.	The Cross	98
43.	Mounting	99

TRAINING HORSES WHICH HAVE BEEN ALREADY RIDDEN.

44.	Formation of Paces, &c.	101
45.	Bitting	105
46.	Accoutrements and Appointments	106
47.	Leaping	106
48.	Practice of Paces for Manœuvre	107
49.	Of Sights and Sounds	107
50.	Teaching Horses to Swim	107

INSTRUCTION BY SQUADRON OFFICERS.

51.	Duties of Officers with regard to Instruction	112

PART II.—INSTRUCTION OF THE CAVALRY SOLDIER ON FOOT.

General Rules 113

SQUAD DRILL, WITH INTERVALS.

1.	Position of the Soldier at Attention	115
2.	Standing at Ease	116

Section. Page

3. Dressing a Squad with Intervals 117
4. Turnings by Numbers 118
5. Extension Motions 121
6. Saluting 122

MARCHING.

7. Length of Pace 124
8. Cadence 124
9. The Plummet and Pace Stick 124
10. Position in Marching 125
11. Balance Step 126
12. The Slow March 127
13. The Halt.. 128
14. Stepping Out 128
15. Stepping Short 128
16. Marking Time 128
17. Stepping Back 129
18. Changing Feet 129
19. The Quick March 129
20. The Double March 130
21. The Side or Closing Step 130
22. Turning when on the March 131

SQUAD DRILL, IN SINGLE RANK AT CLOSE FILES.

23. Formation of the Squad in Single Rank 133
24. Dressing when Halted 133
25. Turnings 135
26. Marching in Line 135

Section. Page
27. Inclining.. 136
28. Wheeling as a Squad on a Fixed Pivot 137
29. Marching as in File 139
30. Wheeling as in File 140
31. Men marching as in File forming Squad 140
32. The Side or Closing Step 143
33. Marching with Arms, and Paying Compliments .. 143

TROOP DRILL AND PREPARATORY INSTRUCTION FOR MOUNTED SQUADRON DRILL.

34. Formation in Two Ranks 145
35. Inspection and Formation of the Troop and Squadron .. 146
36. Dismissal off Foot Parade 148

SWORD AND LANCE EXERCISE.

37. Sword Exercise 149
38. Single Stick Practice 166
39. Lance Exercise 179

For Carbine Exercise see Rifle and Carbine Exercises.

FOOT PARADE OF THE REGIMENT.

40. Parade Movements 191
41. Posts of Officers, &c., on Foot 197
42. Calculation of extent of Front on Foot 198

PART III.—DRILL.

Preliminary Remarks.

Section.		Page
1.	Fundamental Principles of Instruction in Drill	199
2.	Terms of Formation and Manœuvre	200
3.	Intervals, Distances, &c.	207
4.	Commands, Trumpet Sounds, and Signals	210
5.	Pace and Direction	214
6.	System of Instruction	215

Troop Drill.

7.	General Remarks	215
8.	Instruction of Leaders, Guides, and Centre Files ..	217
9.	Practice of Pace	218
10.	Dressing, Passaging, and Reining Back	219
11.	The March in Line	220
12.	Inclining and Wheeling	222
13.	Movements by Fours—Increasing and Diminishing the Front	225
14.	Sword and Lance Exercise	236
15.	Drill of the Attack	237
16.	Passage of Obstacles	240
17.	Elementary Instruction for Dismounted Service ..	241

The Squadron.

Section.		Page
18.	Posts and Duties of Officers	245
19.	Orders of Formation: their Description and Use ..	247
20.	Evolutions	248
21.	Drill of the Attack, Ground Scouts, &c.	253

The Regiment.

22.	Posts and Duties of Officers	256
23.	Orders of Formation: their Description and Use ..	258
24.	Evolutions	260
25.	Drill of the Attack, &c.	270

The Brigade.

26.	Posts and Duties of Officers..	271
27.	Orders of Formation: their Description and Use ..	272
28.	Evolutions	273
29.	Drill of the Attack, &c.	276

The Division.

30.	Posts and Duties of Officers..	277
31.	Orders of Formation: their Description and Use ..	277
32.	Evolutions	279

PART IV.—MANŒUVRE.

Section. Page

Preliminary Observations 283

DETACHED DUTIES.

1. General Observations 284

INFORMATION.

2. Reconnaissance and Screening Duties 285
3. Rules for the Guidance of Reconnoitring Detachments.. 292
   (*a*) General Instructions to be given to the Commander 293
   (*b*) Points to be looked to by the Commander before starting 294
   (*c*) Order of March 294
   (*d*) Passage of Woods, Villages, and Defiles 294
   (*e*) Disposition for the Halt: Orders for the Night, &c... 295
   (*f*) The Transmission of Reports 295
   (*g*) Requisitioning and Foraging 296
   (*h*) Surprises and Ambushes 297
   (*i*) Destruction of Railway and Telegraph Lines .. 299
4. Patrols 301
   (*a*) Information of an Enemy 304

Section. Page

(*b*) Information of a Country 307
(*c*) Contact with the Enemy 309
5. Reports 310
6. Sketches 311
7. Connecting and Communicating Posts 312

PROTECTION.

A. PROTECTION OF TROOPS WHEN HALTED. OUTPOSTS.

8. General Observations 315
9. Halting for a Period of One or More Days 315
(*a*) Selection of a Line and method of Occupation .. 316
(*b*) Outposts by Night and in Thick Weather .. 317
(*c*) Commander of the Outposts 318
(*d*) Outposts moving into Position 320
(*e*) Posting Piquets 321
(*f*) Duties of the Piquet Commander 323
(*g*) Rules for the guidance of Piquets 324
(*h*) Piquet Vedettes and Cossack Posts 325
(*i*) Posting Vedette and Cossack Posts 326
(*j*) Rules for guidance of Vedettes 327
(*k*) Examining Posts 329
(*l*) Detached Posts 329
(*m*) Special Rules for Piquet Patrols 329
(*n*) Supports to the Piquets 332
(*o*) Reserve of the Outposts 332
(*p*) Relief of Outposts 334
(*q*) Flags of Truce and Deserters 334
(*r*) Attacks by the Enemy 335

Section. Page

10. On the March from Day to Day 336
11. Occupation and Protection of Cantonments and Bivouacs 337

B. Protection of Troops on the March. Advanced and Rear Guards.

12. General Observations 339
13. Composition and Formation of the Advanced Guard .. 340
(*a*) Commander of the Advanced Guard 341
(*b*) Commander of the Advanced Party 343
(*c*) Formation and Duties of the Advanced Party .. 343
(*d*) The Support 344
(*e*) The Reserve 345
14. Flanking Detachments 345
15. Communication between the parts of the Guard .. 347
16. Method of Examining Localities 348
(*a*) The Main Road 348
(*b*) Villages, &c. 349
(*c*) Woods 351
(*d*) Defiles 351
(*e*) Rivers.. 352
17. Collision with the Enemy 352
18. Rear Guards 353
(*a*) Commander of the Rear Guard 354
19. Advanced and Rear Guards during halts.. 356

General Duties of Cavalry on the Field of Battle in Conjunction with the Other Arms.

20. The Cavalry Division 357
21. The Divisional Cavalry 364

Section. Page

22. Pursuit 365
23. Retreat 366
24. Escort for Prisoners and Convoys 366

THE CAVALRY FIGHT.

25. General Observations 368
26. The Reconnoitring Phase 370
27. The Manœuvring Phase 373
28. The Attacking Phase 375
29. The Pursuit 377
30. The Retreat 377
31. Horse Artillery with Cavalry 378
32. Machine Guns with Cavalry 379
33. Mounted Infantry 381
34. The Cavalry Attack on Infantry 382
35. The Cavalry Attack on Artillery 384

DISMOUNTED SERVICE.

36. General Remarks 386
37. Manœuvre exercises, dismounted 317

PART V.—MISCELLANEOUS.

MISCELLANEOUS DUTIES AND SQUADRON TRAINING.

1. Duties in aid of the Civil Power 392
2. Escorts for Convoys, &c. 393
3. Duties on the Line of March 397

Section.		Page
4.	Transport of Cavalry by Railway	402
5.	Rules for crossing Pontoons, &c.	405
6.	Ferrying across Rivers	406
7.	Squadron Training	407
8.	Instruction in Detached Duties	412
	CEREMONIAL.	
9.	Parade Movements	417
10.	Guards	434
11.	Royal Escorts, State Processions, &c.	444
12.	Firing a Feu-de-joie	457
13.	Funerals	457

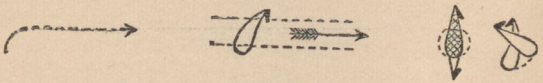
EXPLANATORY REFERENCES TO THE PLATES ILLUSTRATING MILITARY EQUITATION.

Instructor.

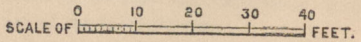
Dressing to the Right. Dressing to the Left.

First. Second. Third. Fourth. Fifth. Sixth.

Successive Movements in one Exercise.



Direction of Movement. Do. during Right Pass. About and circling.



Length of the Horse 8 feet.

CAVALRY DRILL,

1898.

ORGANIZATION.

The establishments and organization of regiments of the line are stated in Army Order 41 of 1897.

In each regiment the reserve squadron will be formed of the band-serjeant and corporal, the bandsmen, the corporal rough-rider, the clerks, waiters, Maxim-gun detachment, and the most backward recruits.

Eight regiments serving in the United Kingdom will be on the higher establishment.

Twelve regiments at home will be in brigade as follows :—

1st Brigade	Head-quarters, Aldershot	3 regiments on higher establishment.
2nd ,, ...	Head-quarters, Canterbury.	3 regiments on higher establishment.
3rd ,, ...	Head-quarters, Curragh	2 regiments on higher establishment, and 1 on lower establishment.
4th ,, ...	Head-quarters, Colchester	3 regiments on lower establishment.

The service brigade will be composed of 3 regiments, each of which will be organized in 3 service squadrons.

The division will be composed of 2 brigades as above.

As it is not possible that squadrons can at all times turn out at their full establishment, commanding officers will be guided by the following General Rules :—

There should never be more than 32 nor less than 19 men in the ranks of a troop ; 32 to 24 men will form a troop of 16 files ; while the maximum for a 12 file troop is 23 men, and the minimum 19.

Squadrons, Higher Establishment.

When there are 96 or more N.C.O.'s and men in the ranks, the squadron will be formed in 4 troops of 16 files each ; under 96 and over 75, 4 troops of 12 files each. When 75 or under, 1 troop will be broken up and distributed among the other 3 troops. 72 N.C.O.'s and men will form 3 troops of 16 files. Under 72, 3 troops of 12 files.

Squadrons on Lower Establishment.

72 N.C.O.'s and men and over will be formed in 3 troops of 16 files ; 57 and under 72, in 3 troops of 12 files ; under 57 one troop must be broken up and distributed among the other 2 troops.

With 48 N.C.O.'s and men, 2 troops of 16 files will be formed ; under that number, 2 troops of 12 files.

When there are a few extra men they will ride as serrefiles. They should be taken from the signallers, pioneers, ground scouts, and farriers, *e.g.*, a squadron higher establishment has 94 men for the ranks ; it will form 4 troops of 12 files = 92. The two spare men will ride as serrefiles.

Horses.

The horses of the three service squadrons of the regiments in the 1st and 2nd Brigades will be composed as far as possible of animals fit for active service. These regiments will receive fewer remounts than those of the lower establishment, and the most matured remounts will be selected for the regiments in the service division.

No remounts will be placed in the ranks until the spring of the year in which they become 5-year-olds, and then only if well developed and thoroughly trained. They will not be ridden at any manœuvres of all arms until they are 6 years old, but, when specially ordered, may accompany their squadrons to cavalry concentrations, where they will only be subjected to light work.

ORDER OF DRESS—OFFICERS.

NOTE.—Household Cavalry and Line Regiments wearing special patterns as provided in the dress regulations will adhere to the patterns therein laid down.

REVIEW ORDER.

Full dress head-dress.
Tunic.
Sword.
Dress sword-knot.
Dress sword-belt.
Dress shoulder-belt.
Dress pouch.
Gauntlets (gloves for Hussars).

When mounted.

Pantaloons.
Knee boots.
Steel jack spurs.
Sabretache (dress for Hussars).

When dismounted.

Undress trousers.
Wellington boots.
Steel box spurs.
Dress sabretache (Hussars only).

NOTE.—When dismounted on State occasions, and in the evening when Review Order is worn, Hussars will wear Hessian boots and dress pantaloons; other regiments dress trousers.

Horse Furniture.

Saddle.
Bridle, complete, with head-rope.
Breastplate.
Wallets.
Leopard or sheepskin.
Cape, in front of saddle.
Throat ornament (in 1st and 2nd Dragoons and Hussars).
The cloak to be worn behind the saddle when ordered.
Lance buckets (except Hussars).

MARCHING ORDER.

*Field Cap.
Frock.
Pantaloons.
Knee boots.
Steel jack-spurs.
Sabretache (undress for Hussars).
Haversack.
Sword.
Whistle.
Sword-knot.
Sword-belt.
Shoulder-belt.
Pouch.
NOTE.—Undress belts, &c., for those regiments permitted to wear them.
On Active Service or when ordered :—
Field dressing.
Revolver.
Water-bottle.
Pocket compass.
Pocket Book and Army Message Book 153.

Horse Furniture.

As in Review Order, but no leopard or sheepskin or throat ornament.
Field glasses on off side of saddle.
Cloak, rolled, behind the saddle.
On Active Service or when ordered :—
Mess-tin.
Nose-bag.
Picketing pegs.
Heel rope.
Spare shoes and nails, as carried by the men.

*Helmets for service abroad and full dress headdress when on guard, and on change of station.

DRILL ORDER.

*Field Cap, or other headdress (without plume) according to climate.
Other articles as in Marching Order.
Brown gloves when men do not wear gloves.
No haversack unless ordered.

Horse Furniture.

As in Marching Order, but no cloak, unless ordered.
Throat ornaments to be worn.

*Helmets for service abroad, and full dress headdress when on guard, and on change of station.

MESS ORDER.

Mess Jacket.
*Waistcoat.
Dress trousers.
Wellington boots.
Brass spurs.

*Kamarband worn in hot climates.

ORDER OF DRESS—MEN.

Note.—The dress of men of Household Cavalry will conform generally to the following orders, but they will wear their special pattern garments as laid down in the Clothing Regulations.

REVIEW ORDER.

Full dress head-dress.
Tunic.
Gauntlets (gloves for Hussars).
Sword-belt.
Girdle (Lancers only).
Pouch-belt.
Pouch.

When mounted.

Sword.
Carbine.
Lance (for services in possession).
Pantaloons.
Knee-boots.
Jack-spurs.

When dismounted.

Trousers.
Wellington boots.
Spurs.
Sword.
Carbine or lance.

Horse Furniture.

Saddle and bridle, complete, with head-rope, and wallets unpacked.
Breastplate.
Cape, in front, in cape protector.
When ordered, Cloak, rolled, behind the saddle, and nose-bag.

*MARCHING ORDER.

On the man.

†Field cap.
Frock.
Jersey (in cold weather).
Pantaloons.
Knee-boots.
Jack-spurs.
Gauntlets (gloves for Hussars).
Sword-belt.
Pouch-belt.
Pouches.
Haversack.
Water-bottle.
Revolver and pouch (for ranks in which carried).

Flannel belt,	On Active service only.
Field dressing,	
Pocket-knife and lanyard,	
Description card,	
Ammunition,	

---

* In Mounted services, Marching Order for Guard will be the same as Review Order dismounted, but with frock instead of tunic, and no girdle for Lancers. The cloak will be carried, *en banderolle*, over the right shoulder (to be taken off when the guard has mounted), and the sword on the belt.

† Helmet for service abroad, and full dress head-dress when on guard, and on change of station.

*MARCHING ORDER (*continued*).

On the horse.

Saddle and bridle, complete, with head-rope and wallets packed.
Breast-plate.
Breast harness, } Regulation
Pioneer equipment, } proportion.
Hoof-picker.
Nosebag.
Small corn-sack.
Forage-net.
Mess-tin.
Heel-rope.
Carbine in bucket.
Sword, in frog on shoe-case, edge to the rear.
Carbine sling (on Field Service only), on carbine.
Lance (for services in possession).
Cape, in front of wallets.
Cloak, rolled, in rear of saddle.
†Field cap, if not worn, in pocket of the cloak, when woollen cap is not carried.
Surcingle pad.
Cape protector.

---

* In Mounted services, Marching Order for Guard will be the same as Review Order dismounted, but with frock instead of tunic, and no girdle for Lancers. The cloak will be carried, *en banderolle*, over the right shoulder (to be taken off when the guard has mounted) and the sword on the belt.

† Helmet for service abroad, and full dress headdress when on guard, and on change of station.

*MARCHING ORDER (*continued*).

In the wallets.

Weight to be evenly distributed.

†2 iron picketing pegs, with rings.
Horse-brush and curry-comb.
Horse-rubber.
Sponge.
1 pair socks.
1 shirt.
Holdall, complete.
Towel and soap.
Spare bootlaces.

For Active Service only :—

Tin of grease.
Emergency ration.
Woollen cap.

---

* In Mounted services, Marching Order for Guard will be the same as Review Order dismounted, but with frock instead of tunic, and no girdle for Lancers. The cloak will be carried *en banderolle*, over the right shoulder (to be taken off when the guard has mounted), and the sword on the belt.

† When the wooden pegs and the built-up rope are issued they will be carried as follows :—One peg on the carbine bucket, the remaining peg and rope on the top of the cloak.

HOME MARCHING ORDER (ON CHANGE OF QUARTERS ONLY).

On the man.

As in Marching Order.

On the horse.

As in Marching Order, the tunic to be carried in the nose-bag.
Ankle-boots to be strapped outside the wallets.
Forage nets and heel ropes not carried.

In the wallets.

Horse-brush.
Curry-comb.
Sponge.
Oilcan.
1 shirt.
1 pair socks.
Towel and soap.
Holdall, complete.
Tin blacking.
Polishing-brush.
Cloth ,,
Blacking ,,
Brass ,,
Hair ,,
Horse-rubber.
Pipeclay and sponge.
1 pair trousers, authorized for grooming.
Head-dress plume.
Spare bootlaces.

DRILL ORDER.

On the man.

As in Marching Order; but with field cap or other head-dress (without plume) according to climate.

Gloves (not to be worn with field caps, except in the winter months). No haversack or water-bottle unless ordered.

Horse Furniture.

As in Review Order.

MODE OF CARRYING THE EQUIPMENT.

Haversack.—The haversack will be carried on the left side, the strap passing over the right shoulder under the pouch-belt. When not used for carrying provisions, it will be neatly folded and fastened with a button, and hang square across the man's side, the lower edge in line with the elbow.

Water-bottle.—The water-bottle will be carried on the man under the left arm, the bottom of the bottle to be in line with the elbow, the strap over the right shoulder and under the pouch-belt.

Head-rope.—The head-rope will be fastened round the horse's neck.

Hoof-picker.—The hoof-picker will be slung on the strap outside the shoe-case, which will be carried on the near side. Stable scissors will be carried in the holdall.

Nosebag.—The nosebag, when not required for carrying oats, will be rolled and carried on the shoe-case, fastened to the baggage-strap. When full, the strap of the nosebag will be fastened to the back arch of the saddle, on the near side.

Small corn-sack.—The small corn-sack, when empty, will be fastened to the saddle between the cantle and the cloak. When full, it will be fastened in the same place, with the ends hanging down and resting on the side-bars.

Forage-net.—Forage nets, when empty, will be fastened on the saddle between the cantle and the cloak. When full, they will be fastened in front of the saddle, and hang in front of the wallets.

Mess-tin.—The mess-tin will be fastened by the off baggage-strap to the off side of the saddle.

Heel-rope.—The heel-rope will be coiled round the shackle and carried on the near side behind the nosebag, fastened to the baggage-strap.

Cape.—To be rolled, about 34 inches in length, and fastened on the saddle in front of the wallets.

Cloaks.—Cloaks to be about 26 inches in length, rolled with a waist, and fastened in rear of the saddle.

Mallet.—The mallet will be carried on the off-side wallet, head upwards, the handle fastened by the wallet-strap.

PART I.—EQUITATION.

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

THE means by which the rider guides and controls the horse, are termed the *Aids in Horsemanship.*

It is with these aids, which consist in the motions and proper application of the bridle-hand and legs, that the rider directs and determines the turnings and paces of the horse, gives him a light mouth, and makes him obey the bit.

A thorough knowledge of military equitation is indispensably requisite for the military horseman, in order that, being able to govern his horse by the aid of his legs and bridle-hand, he may have the right hand at full liberty for the use of his weapons.

The health and condition of men and horses, as well as a regard for public economy, demand that the greatest care be taken in their instruction, and that their lessons be proportioned to their health, strength, and ability, so as neither to produce overfatigue, nor to injure them by too violent exertion.

The above objects must always be kept in view; and all instruction must be strictly conformable to the Regulations for Cavalry Drill, so that when men and horses are placed in the ranks, they may be fully competent to enter upon their duties in the field.

Instruction in equitation is divided into three parts :—

First. The instruction of the recruit upon a trained horse, from the earliest to the last lesson.

Second. The training of the horse.

Third. The practice of the recruits and remount horses in the elementary parts of mounted drill, to prepare them for instruction in the troop or squadron.

RIDING SCHOOL AND OPEN MANÈGE. (Plate I.)

1. THE usual form of a riding-school or manège is shown in Plate I, but the position of the serpentine markers will necessarily vary according to the size of the school.

2. The use of an open manège is indispensable in quarters where there is no riding-school. It is also desirable that Cavalry should be often exercised in open manèges, so as to prepare the horses for working steadily in the field with various objects in sight, which do not occur to distract their attention in a school; and also to prevent men and horses from depending on the confinement of the walls for correct movements, and to make the men trust only to the proper application of the *aids*.

3. Manèges may be formed in a barrack yard, by preparing certain portions of ground with fine gravel of sufficient depth. They should be rectangular, 60 yards long and 20 broad, and the corners should be marked by large stones, stakes, or lances.

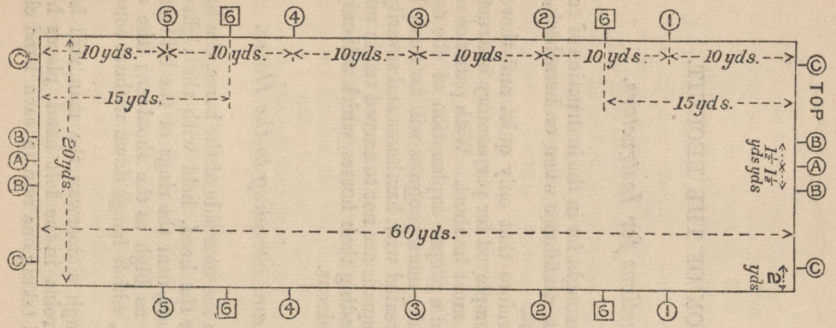
Where a larger size is required, an increase of 5 yards in breadth is to be made for every 10 in length; one manège will thus contain two good circles or longes.

Each squadron should have at least two manèges arranged on parallel lines, not less than 15 yards apart, so that all the rides may be drilled under the supervision of the squadron commander. Manèges are to be kept in order by regiments.

4. Instead of exercising horses in watering order, by which the men are apt to acquire lounging and slovenly habits, and the horses lose their training, squadrons are to be drilled, when practicable, in open manèges. The men will thus retain all the advantages of their previous drill, and by the use of the bridoon, or snaffle-bridle, the freshness of the horse's mouth, and the lightness of his forehand, will be preserved.

5. It is recommended that non-commissioned officers and men who have been formed at the riding establishment, should be frequently employed in conducting riding drills, in order that they may keep up their knowledge of the system, and furnish a useful supply of assistants for the school when vacancies occur.

PLAN OF A RIDING SCHOOL OR MANÈGE.



A A	Centre Markers placed at Centre of both ends.
B B B B	Double ride Centre Markers 1½ yards on either side of Centre Markers.
C C C C	Shoulder in Markers 2 yards from sides of School or Manège.
1 1	1st Serpentine Markers $\frac{1}{6}$-th length of School or Manège.
2 2	2nd ,, ,,
3 3	Bar and 3rd Serpentine Markers at Centre of sides of School or Manège.
4 4	4th Serpentine Markers.
5 5	5th ,, ,,
6 6 6 6	Quarter Markers $\frac{1}{4}$ of length of School or Manège on which the "Change" is made when on the Circle. It is advisable to have these Markers a different height or shape from the others to avoid confusion.

INSTRUCTION OF THE RECRUIT.

S. 1. *Directions for Instructors.*

1. THE first object to be sought for in the instruction of recruits in riding is to give them confidence when on horseback, and a natural, easy, and firm seat.

2. It is necessary therefore that only quiet and thoroughly broken horses should be employed for preparatory instruction.

3. The lessons at first must be short. With patience on the part of the instructor, and a proper explanation of the use and object of the different aids, more progress will be made by the recruits than if they are treated with harshness and severity.

4. In the first lessons squads are not to exceed ten in number, and recruits will parade leading their horses, which will only have on them numnahs and bridoons.

S. 2. *Leading and Standing to the Horse.*

1. The man standing on the near side of the horse, the bridoon reins are to be taken over the head, held with the right hand, the forefinger between them, near the rings of the bridoon; the right arm bent, the hand as high as the shoulder; the end of the reins in the left hand, which hangs down without constraint behind the thigh.

2. When leading through a doorway, the man, still holding the end of the bridoon reins in the left hand, places himself in front of his horse, and taking one rein in each hand close to

the rings of the bridoon, steps backwards; taking care that the horse's hips clear the posts of the door. When the horse is through, he places himself on the near side, as before.

3. In passing an officer the soldier should look towards him without changing his position, and filing past an officer for inspection the man should lead on the same flank as that on which the officer is standing.

"*In front of your Horses.*" Each man will take a full pace forward with the right foot, turning to the right-about on the ball of it, and take the bridoon reins in each hand near the rings, still holding the end of them in the left hand, raising the horse's head to the height of his own breast and six inches from it, and making the horse stand even; hands and elbows to be as high as the shoulders. (In this position a man shows a horse to an officer when halted.)

"*Eyes Right* (or *Left*), *Dress.*" When fronting the horses, the men will dress to the same flank as when mounted.

"*Off side, stand to your Horses.*" Each man will take a full pace forward with the left foot to the horse's off side, turning right about on the ball of it, and coming to "*Attention,*" the left hand holding the reins near the rings, the forefinger between them, and the right hand taking hold of the end of the reins and hanging down behind the thigh.

"*In front of your Horses.*" Each man will take a full pace forward with the left foot, turn left about on it, and resume the position before described, the left hand taking the end of the reins.

"*Stand to your Horses.*" Each man will take a full step forward with the right foot to the horse's near side, and turn left-about on the ball of it, coming to "*Attention.*"

"*In front of your Horses.*" As before described.

"*Single File Right,*" "*Quick March.*" Each man will turn to his left and move off in succession, dropping his left hand, which holds the ends of the reins, to the side, and holding the reins with the right hand as before directed, a horse's length distance being preserved from nose to croup.

(For *Single File Left*, the instruction is similar, the words "right" and "left" being substituted for each other.)

The recruits will next be instructed in the preceding positions and movements when the reins are put over the horses' heads and hanging on their necks.

"*Stand at Ease.*" Each man will draw back the right foot, as in foot drill, but the right hand will slide down the bridoon rein to the full extent of the arm, the rein being retained in the hand, and the left hand will hang down behind the thigh.

"*Attention.*" As before directed, but holding the left rein near the ring, the right hand raised as high as the man's shoulder, the left hand hanging down straight by the thigh.

"*In front of your Horses,*" *&c.* As before directed, except that in all cases only one rein is held in each hand.

RIDING WITHOUT SADDLES.

S. 3. *Mounting and Dismounting with Numnahs.*

1. The recruits will then be practised in mounting and dismounting. The reins having been put over the horse's head, and hanging evenly on his neck, the word will be given—

2. "*Prepare to Mount.*" On this caution, each man will turn to the right, step six inches to the right, and close the left heel.

He will hold the reins equally divided in the full of the left hand, which will be placed on the horse's withers. The right arm will be laid on the horse's loins, the forearm being well to the offside, and the fingers of the right hand closed.

"*Mount.*" By bending both knees, making a spring from the insteps, and assisting himself by straightening his arms, the man will raise himself as much as possible over his horse, and then pass his right leg over the horse and drop into his seat in the middle of the horse's back. In doing this he must be careful not to cling to the numnah, which would otherwise become displaced. He may hold the horse's withers with his left hand, but the

fingers of the right hand must be kept closed, and the right arm only used by pressing the forearm against the offside of the horse.

"*Prepare to Dismount.*" On this caution, each man will place both his hands on his horse's withers, and raise himself from the horse's back by straightening his arms.

"*Dismount.*" He will bring his right leg clear over his horse's quarters, and alight on the ground, throwing his weight on his toes. He will then step six inches to his left, close his right heel and turn to the left, laying hold of the bridoon rein.

Mounting and dismounting should also be practised on the offside.

3. As soon as the recruits are perfect in the detailed motions of mounting and dismounting, they must be practised in mounting and dismounting without pausing between the several motions.

S. 4. Position with Numnahs.

1. The recruits being mounted will now be placed in the proper mounted position.

Each man should have his body balanced in the middle of the horse's back, head erect and square to the front, shoulders well thrown back, chest advanced, small of the back slightly bent forward, upper part of the arms hanging straight down from the shoulder, elbows bent and lightly closed to the hips, little fingers on a level with the elbows, wrists rounded, knuckles to the front, and thumbs pointing across the body. Each hand should hold a rein between the third and fourth finger, the end being thrown over the forefinger and the thumb closed upon it; when the horse is in motion the hands should be about three inches from the body, and from four to six inches apart, but when sitting at ease, they should be close together and rest on the horse's withers, right hand over the left. The thigh should be stretched down from the hip, the flat of the thigh close to the horse's side, the knees a little bent, and the legs hanging

down from the knee and near the horse's sides. The heels should be well stretched down, and the toes raised from the insteps, and as near the horse's sides as the heels. A plummet line from the front point of the shoulder should fall one inch behind the heel.

While following these instructions, the man must, however, sit easily on his horse, without having his muscles unnaturally braced, and without stiffness. In order to get his toes and heels into a proper position, he should be taught to turn the flat part of the thigh from the hip towards the horse's side, and not merely to twist the foot inwards from the ankle or knee.

2. This is the position halted, or at the walk ; at the trot the body must be inclined a little backward, the whole figure pliant, and accompanying the movements of the horse. The elbows and lower limbs must be kept steady.

S. 5. *Dressing at the Halt.*

The recruits will next be instructed in taking up the proper dressing when mounted.

"*Eyes Right* (or *Left*)—*Dress.*" The whole of the squad will take up the dressing by the flank named. The flank man and the man next to him will place themselves with their horses square across the school with one horse's length interval between them, and with their hind feet three yards from the side of the school. The remainder aligning themselves on them and keeping the same interval from man to man.

Each man will have his body quite square to the front, his head well up and just turned enough to allow a glance of the eye towards the dressing point, so as to be able to see the surface of the face of the next man but one.

A correct position must be retained while dressing, whether halted or moving, and no attempt must be made to get the dressing by leaning forward or backward.

"*Eyes Front.*" Each man will turn his head and look straight to his front.

S. 6. Extension and Balance Motions at the Halt.

In order to give the recruits ease and confidence while sitting on horseback, and to teach them to preserve their balance under all circumstances, they will be practised in the following extension and balance motions :—

"*Prepare for Extension and Balance Motions.*" On this caution each man will drop his reins on his horse's neck, and let his arms fall behind his thighs, hanging easily from the shoulders, with the palms of the hands to the front.

Caution,—"*First Practice*" (as on foot, except 3rd and 4th motion—See page 121.)

Caution,—"*Second Practice*" (as on foot—See page 121.)

Caution,—"*Third Practice*" (as on foot—See page 122.)

Caution,—"*Fourth Practice.*"

"*One.*" On the word "*One,*" lean back until the head touches the horse's quarter, but moving the legs as little as possible.

"*Two.*" On the word "*Two,*" resume the original position.

Caution,—"*Fifth Practice.*"

"*One.*" On the word "*One,*" lean down to the left side and touch the left foot with the left hand, without however, drawing up the foot to meet the hand.

"*Two.*" On the word "*Two,*" resume the original position.

The same practice should also be done to the right.

Caution,—"*Sixth Practice.*"

"*One.*" On the word "*One,*" pass the right leg over the horse's head, and, turning in the seat, sit facing to the proper left, keeping the body upright and the hands resting on the knees.

"*Two.*" On the word "*Two,*" pass the left leg over the horse's quarter, and turning in the seat, sit facing to the rear, assuming as much as possible the proper mounted position, the arms hanging behind the thighs.

Three." On the word "*Three,*" pass the right leg over the horse's quarter, and, turning in the seat, sit facing to the proper right, the body upright, and the hands resting on the knees.

"*Four.*" On the word "*Four,*" pass the left leg over the horse's head, and, turning in the seat, resume the proper mounted position.

Each of the above motions may be performed by command of the instructor without repeating the words, "*One,*" "*Two,*" &c.

S. 7. Simple Aids for Moving Off at the Walk, Halting, Reining Back, and Turning.

The squad will be instructed as follows :—

"*Walk, March.*" Each man will relax the feeling of the bridoon in his horse's mouth, by turning the little fingers of both hands towards the head of the horse ; and will press both legs to the horse's sides. When the horse is in motion the hands should resume their position. The rate of the walk is four miles an hour.

"*Halt.*" Each man will feel both reins steadily by bringing his little fingers towards his breast, turning the nails upwards, and close both his legs for a moment, to keep the horse up to the hand. The feeling of the reins should be relaxed as soon as the horse is halted.

"*Rein Back, March.*" Each man will feel both reins lightly, by turning the little fingers towards the breast ; and will press both legs to the horse's sides to raise his forehand and keep his haunches under him ; the rider must not have a dead pull on the horse's mouth, but should ease the reins after every step, and feel them again.

"*Halt.*" Each man will ease both reins and feel them again, closing both legs for a moment to keep the horse up to the hand; the hands to be eased as soon as halted.

"*Walk, March.*" As before directed.

"*Right* (or *Left*) *Turn.*" The turn is made by a double feeling of the inward rein, the outward retaining a steady feeling, and the horse being kept up to the hand by a pressure of both legs, the outward leg the stronger.

"*Right* (or *Left*) *About.*" The aids for the turn about are as follows:—A double feeling of the inward rein and a stronger pressure of the inward leg, supported by the outward leg and rein, the horse turning on his centre, fore and hind feet describing a circle.

S. 8. *Walking and Trotting in the School or Manège.*

(*Walk* 4 *miles, Trot* 9 *miles an hour.*)

1. The squad being now formed in line down the middle of the school, with a horse's length interval between the files, the instructor will proceed to move the squad across the school by the command, "*Walk, March.*"

Correct dressing is to be kept by keeping the pace with an occasional glance of the eye. No turning of the head is to be permitted.

2. While moving in file round the school, the squad will be numbered off from the front as follows:—

"*From the Front, Number.*" The leading file tells off "one," the next "two," and so on; each man turning his head to the inward hand while doing so, and at once turning his head again to the front.

"*Trot.*" Each man will ease his reins and press both legs to his horse, according to the horse's temper; when the horse is at the trot he should feel both reins, to raise the horse's forehand and keep his haunches under him.

"*Walk.*" By a steady feeling of both reins, each man will bring his horse to the walk. Both legs must, however, be pressed to the horse's sides to prevent him from altogether halting.

"*Halt.*" As before directed.

S. 9. *Extension and Balance Motions while Moving.*

1. As soon as the recruits have learned the proper method of moving their horses off at the walk and trot, and of bringing them again to the halt, the instructor will cause them to go round the school at the walk and trot without using their reins, folding their arms in front or behind their backs, or letting them hang straight from the shoulder, the reins being dropped on the horses' withers, and to do the extension and balance motions while their horses are in motion.

2. In order that the squad may be led at a steady and even pace, the instructor will name the men who are to ride without their reins at any particular time, taking care that the leading file is always riding with his reins.

Thus, the order will be given, "*Nos.* 2, 3, 4, &c." (or any other named men) "*Drop your Reins,*" "*Arms hanging down,*" "*In front* (or *Behind your backs*) *fold your Arms.*"

These men will then ride round the school, or perform such extension and balance motions as may be directed, and, when the instructor thinks fit, will receive the command, "*Take your Reins.*"

The leading file will afterwards be changed, and the process will be repeated until the whole squad has been exercised.

3. In performing some of the extension motions (such as those which involve extending the arms to right and left) while the squad is in motion, it will be necessary to make the squad file down the centre to give the necessary space. The leading file will lead down the centre of the school, and it will be found that the horses of the remainder will in most instances follow without the guidance of the reins, if the recruits are mounted upon thoroughly broken horses.

4. If any horse should break away from the others, or get so close to the horse in front as to be in danger of touching him, his rider must take up his reins to restore him to his place, and again drop them.

5. The instruction of recruits as above laid down, to be practised on horses with numnahs and bridoons, can only be carried out when a riding school or enclosed manège is available. When this is not the case, the preparatory instruction will commence at the beginning of the following section. It is of the utmost importance, however, that, whenever practicable, the instruction in the foregoing sections shall be thoroughly carried out.

RIDING IN SADDLES WITHOUT STIRRUPS.

S. 10. *Directions for Instructors.*

When the recruits have been sufficiently practised in riding on numnahs, and have learned to retain their seat on horseback without using their reins, they will be taught how to saddle and bridle their horses, and will proceed to ride in stripped saddles.

S. 11. *Saddling.*

1. The *saddle* should be placed in the middle of the horse's back; the front of it about the breadth of the hand behind the play of the shoulder.

2. The *numnah* should be raised well into the fork over the withers by putting the arm under it.

3. The *girth* should admit a finger between it and the horse's belly. In saddling a horse, the girth must be tightened gradually, and not with violence. It is recommended that the girths of all except young and growing horses should be fitted so as to be worn at home in the second or third hole from the free end of the girth strap.

4. The *surcingle* should lie flat over, and not tighter than the girth.

5. The *breastplate* should be so fitted that the upper edge of the rosette or leather is the breadth of three fingers above the sharp breast-bone. It should admit the breadth of the hand between it and the flat of the shoulder, and also between the martingale (when used) and the horse's chest.

6. The *carbine-bucket* should be fastened to the back arch of the saddle on the off side, hang perpendicularly, and well back from the near spur ; the butt-plate of the carbine should be as nearly as possible the breadth of four fingers below the elbow.

7. The *blanket* can be folded in several ways. With a horse of normal shape and condition the following method is recommended :—The blanket is folded lengthways in three equal folds, one end is then turned over 24 inches, the other is turned into the pocket formed by the folds ; the blanket thus folded is placed on the horse's back with the thick part near the withers. Size when folded 2′ 0″ × 1′ 8″, when unfolded 5′ 5″ × 4′ 8″. The folding of the blanket may be modified to suit horses of peculiar conformation, and to meet alteration in shape consequent upon falling away in condition, or from other causes.

S. 12. *Bridling.*

1. The *bridoon* should touch the corners of the mouth, but should hang low enough not to wrinkle them.

2. The *bit* should be placed in the mouth so that the mouth-piece is one inch above the lower tusk of a horse, and two inches above the corner tooth of a mare. This can only be laid down as a general rule, however, as so much depends on the shape and sensitiveness of the horse's mouth and on his temper.

3. The *curb* should be laid flat and smooth under the jaw, and should admit two fingers easily between it and the jawbone.

4. The *headstall* should be parallel to and behind the cheek-bone.

5. The *noseband* should be the breadth of two fingers below the cheek bone and should admit two fingers between it and the nose.

6. The *throat lash* should admit two fingers between it and the horse's jaw.

7. The *bridoon rein* should be of such a length that, when held by the middle, in the full of the left hand, with a light feeling of the horse's mouth, it will touch the rider's waist.

S. 13. *Mounting and Dismounting without Stirrups.*

"*Reins over.*" The bit reins are passed over and in front of the bridoon, the bridoon reins are then passed over the horse's head, and the end of them brought over the left bit rein.

The recruits will lead their horses into the school, and will be formed up for instruction.

"*Reins over.*" The end of the bridoon reins is passed over the left bit rein and brought up over the horse's head.

They will then be instructed in mounting and dismounting without stirrups.

"*Without Stirrups—Prepare to Mount.*" As with numnahs, but left hand, will be placed on the front of the saddle, the right hand being on the back of the saddle.

"*Mount.*" As with numnahs.

"*Without Stirrups—Prepare to Dismount.*" Each man will place both his hands, holding the reins, on the front of the saddle, with the fingers extended.

"*Dismount.*" As with numnahs.

As soon as the recruits are perfect in the detailed motions of mounting and dismounting, they must be practised in mounting and dismounting without pausing between the several motions.

The recruits being mounted, and having been taught to cross the stirrups, will be taught to assume the proper mounted position in the saddle.

"*Cross Stirrups.*" Each man will pass the off stirrup over the horse's neck, and then pass the near one over the off.

S. 14. *Aids in Walking, Trotting, Turning, Bending, &c.*

1. If the recruits commenced their training in a riding school or enclosed manège, and have therefore been already practised in acquiring a firm seat, it will not be necessary that they should

be long delayed at this period of their training; but if their training is commenced on stripped saddles, they are now to be instructed in preserving their seat and balance on horseback, and applying the aids in the several turnings and paces.

2. For a few days they should ride quietly at a walk round the manège, in order to gain the habit of extending their limbs, of becoming accustomed to the movements of their horses, and of preserving their proper position and balance while in motion.

3. The instructions for the *Walk—March, Halt, Rein Back, Right* (or *Left*) *Turn*, and *Right* (or *Left*) *About*, are to be taught as laid down in Section 7.

With reference to the above instructions, the following additional points are to be noted:—

In turning to the right or right-about, the little finger of the right hand is to work towards the right shoulder; in turning left or left-about, the left little finger works towards the left shoulder, upwards in both cases, to raise the forehand of the horse.

In working to the right, the thumb of the inward (right) hand should be on a level with the little finger of the left; the inward rein one inch shorter than the outward, so as to let the rider see the horse's inward eye, and *vice versâ*.

4. When the squad is halted by the wall in file, the order "*Bend your Horses*" may be given. Each man will then play lightly with the inward rein, supporting with the outward leg and rein. The bend should be from the poll of the neck, and both bending and unbending should be gradual.

The motion of the inward hand in bending, or forming a horse's mouth, consists in alternately turning the little finger towards the body, nails upwards, and resuming the usual position; and this should be done by a movement of the wrist, not by easing and drawing back the hand by a motion of the elbow, which must be kept steady.

5. It must be clearly explained that lightness of hand consists in an almost imperceptible alternate feeling and easing of the bridle, according to the motion of the horse, by which the delicacy of the horse's mouth is preserved.

6. The above aids and directions will be explained to the recruits as they make progress. They will commence with the most simple lessons, such as—

"*Walk, March.*" "*Right Turn.*" The turns to the right should be repeated until some improvement is made. Each man when he arrives at the side of the school will turn to the right. While the squad is moving across the school, the command "*Halt*" should be given, followed by—

"*Rein Back, March.*" "*Forward.*" Each man will ease the reins and press both legs, moving forward by the right, and, when he arrives at the side of the school, will turn to the right as before.

"*Right Turn.*" Then while the squad is moving across the school—

"*Halt.*" "*Right About.*" "*Walk, March.*" Each man will turn his horse about upon its centre. The dressing is then changed to the left, and each man, on reaching the side of the school, will, without further word of command, turn to the left.

The same movements will then be done to the left, thus :—

"*Left Turn*" to be repeated till well done.

"*Halt.*" "*Rein Back—March.*" "*Forward.*"

"*Left Turn.*" "*Halt.*"

"*Left About.*" "*Walk, March.*"

This last changes the dressing again to the right.

The squad should occasionally be halted by the side of the school in file, and made to rein back a few steps.

7. When the recruits have been worked at a walk until they can preserve their position and perform the turns, &c., well at that pace, they may commence a gentle trot, applying the aids described on page 42.

Recruits must be taught to preserve their position and seat by the balance of the body, and not by clinging with their knees.

They should practise the turns at a trot, as at a walk, to either hand; and should also file down the centre, to accustom them to keep a straight line and cover well, depending more on their aids than on the wall.

8. When they have learnt to preserve their seats and balance, and to apply the aids well at the trot, the pace may be gradually increased—by the command "Trot out," which must be regulated by the class of horse on which the regiment is mounted. It is advantageous to make them change horses occasionally.

9. When the recruit has learnt to preserve his proper seat and balance, and has a knowledge of the aids of hands and legs, he is to ride with spurs. In making use of them, he must not open his thighs, or move the body forward; the leg only should move, and the spur should be applied just behind the girth.

The spur should be used as little as possible, but when it is used, the horse should feel it. A continued touching lightly with the spur will either make the horse kick, or cause him to become insensible to it; a jogging motion of the leg, therefore, with the heel drawn up, must never be allowed.

10. Before undergoing instruction in the single ride the recruit must be perfected in covering a measured distance at the regulation rates for *Walk*, *Trot*, and *Canter*.

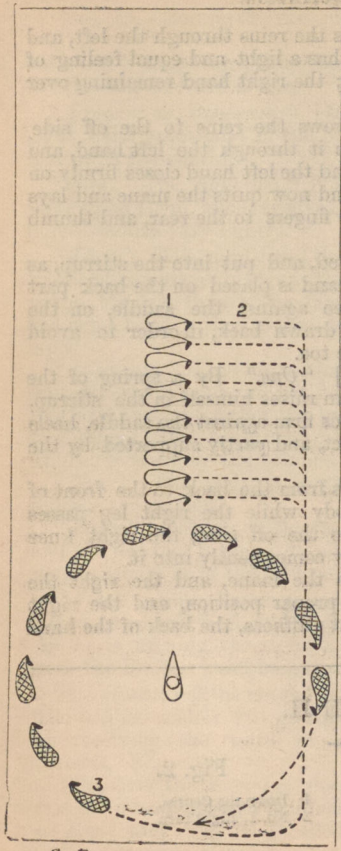
11. In the course of the instruction the recruits' horses should be constantly changed. No man should ride the same horse for more than a week together. A general change of horses should often be made during a ride.

RIDING WITH STIRRUPS AND BIT.

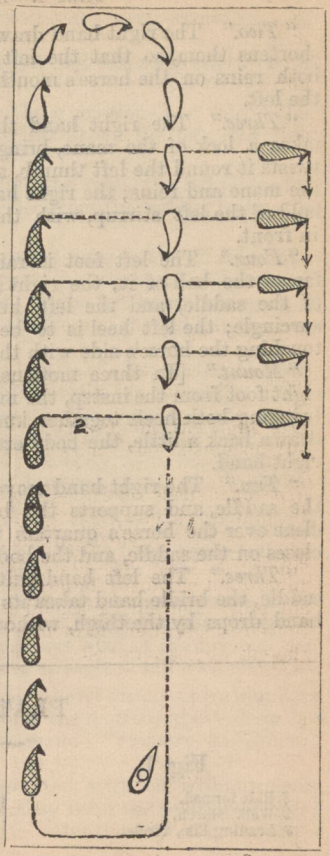
S. 15. *Mounting and Dismounting with Stirrups.*

"*By numbers.*" "*Prepare to Mount.*" [In four motions.] "*One.*" The man, standing to his horse, turns to the right on the left heel, places the right foot opposite the stirrup, parallel to the side of the horse, heels six inches apart; he then takes the bridoon reins equally divided in the left hand, and the end of the bit-reins between the fore-finger and thumb of the right hand, placing the little finger of the left between them, and places the left hand below the right on the neck of the horse, about twelve inches from the saddle. The bridoon, when used singly, is to be taken in the same manner as the bit-reins.

Fig. 1. PLATE II. Fig. 2.



C. D.



D 2

"*Two.*" The right hand draws the reins through the left, and shortens them, so that the left has a light and equal feeling of both reins on the horse's mouth; the right hand remaining over the left.

"*Three.*" The right hand throws the reins to the off side, takes a lock of the mane, brings it through the left hand, and twists it round the left thumb, and the left hand closes firmly on the mane and reins; the right hand now quits the mane and lays hold of the left stirrup, with the fingers to the rear, and thumb in front.

"*Four.*" The left foot is raised, and put into the stirrup, as far as the ball of it; the right hand is placed on the back part of the saddle, and the left knee against the saddle, on the surcingle; the left heel is to be drawn back, in order to avoid touching the horse's side with the toe.

"*Mount.*" [In three motions.] "*One.*" By a spring of the right foot from the instep, the man raises himself in the stirrup, bringing both heels together, knees firm against the saddle, heels drawn back a little, the body erect, and partly supported by the right hand.

"*Two.*" The right hand moves from the back to the front of the saddle, and supports the body while the right leg passes clear over the horse's quarters to the off side; the right knee closes on the saddle, and the body comes gently into it.

"*Three.*" The left hand quits the mane, and the right the saddle, the bridle hand takes its proper position, and the right hand drops by the thigh, without stiffness, the back of the hand

---

PLATE II.

Fig. 1.

1 Ride formed.
2 Walk, March.
3 Leading File, Circle.

Fig. 2.

1 Down the Centre.
2 No. 1, Right turn

outwards ; at the same time the right foot takes the stirrup without the help of hand or eye.

"*Prepare to Dismount.*" [In three motions.] "*One.*" The right hand takes hold of the bit-reins above the left; the right foot quits the stirrup.

"*Two.*" The right hand holding the reins, the left slides forward upon them, about twelve inches from the saddle, feeling the horse's mouth very lightly.

"*Three.*" The right hand drops the reins to the off side, takes a lock of the mane, brings it through the left hand, and twists it round the left thumb, the fingers of the left hand closing on it; the right hand is then placed on the front of the saddle; the body erect.

"*Dismount.*" [In four motions.] "*One.*" Supporting the body with the right hand and left foot, the right leg is brought gently (without touching either the horse's hind quarters or the saddle) to the near side ; heels close ; the right hand on the back of the saddle, to preserve the balance of the body, as in mounting.

"*Two.*" The body is gently lowered, until the right toe touches the ground.

"*Three.*" Resting on the right foot, the left stirrup is quitted, and the left foot is placed in a line with the horse's fore-feet; the hands remain as in the first motion.

"*Four.*" Both hands quit their hold; the man turns to the left on the left heel, and brings the body square to the front. As he is turning, the right hand lays hold of the bridoon rein near the bit, the hand being raised as high as his own shoulder.

The recruit will be taught to mount and dismount by numbers. The trained soldier will go through the motions above described on receiving the word of command—"*Prepare to Mount,*" "*Mount,*" &c.

Whenever the men are dismounted, with or without arms, and have been allowed to *Stand Easy* from the position of *Stand at Ease*, they will be recalled to attention by the command "*Stand to your Horses.*"

S. 16. *Position with Stirrups.*

The men being proficient in the single ride without stirrups, they now take their stirrups and ride with bits.

The position with stirrups is nearly the same as without stirrups (*S.* 4), the knee being a little more bent.

A plummet line falling from the point of the knee should drop directly on the ball of the foot. The foot should be kept in its place by the play of the ankle and instep, the stirrup being under the ball of the foot. The lower edge of the bar is, as a general rule, to be from two and a half to three and a half fingers' breadths above the upper edge of the heel of the boot, when the man is sitting in the proper position. The Instructor must remember, however, that, though he should follow the general rules in fitting the stirrups, a great deal depends on whether the rider has a thin flat thigh or the reverse ; a man with a thick thigh requires slightly shorter stirrups, otherwise, when the horse is in motion and the muscles are brought into play, he will not have a proper hold of the stirrup. The ride should be slowly trotted round the school or manège, and if a man is then seen to be well down in his saddle, with his leg in the proper position with his heel down, and yet not to have a proper hold of his stirrup, the stirrup requires shortening.

S. 17. *Position of Bridle Hand with the Bit.*

1. The upper arm hanging straight down from the shoulder, the left elbow lightly touching the hip ; the lower arm square to the upper ; the hand opposite the centre of the body and 3 inches from it, the back of the hand to the front, wrist rounded outwards, thumb pointing across the body, little finger on a level with the elbow ; the top of the thumb firmly closed on the bit reins, which are divided by the little finger ; the bridoon reins, when working with the bit, to be held in the full of the bridle hand and apart from the bit reins, hanging over the fore-finger.

The bridle hand will, *at the halt*, always rest on the cape, or front of the saddle, and when sitting at ease the grasp of the fingers should be relaxed to allow more liberty to the horse's head.

2. The little finger of the bridle hand has four lines of action viz. :—

Towards the breast, towards the right shoulder, towards the left shoulder, and towards the horse's head. These motions should be made from the wrist, the arm being kept perfectly steady.

(*a.*) In *Halting*, the little finger is turned upwards, towards the breast, and resumes its position as soon as the horse is halted.

In *Reining back*, these motions are repeated alternately at every step.

(*b.*) In *Turning to the Right* and *Right-about*, the little finger is turned, and the hand a little raised, towards the right shoulder.

In *Right Shoulder in*, on turning from the boards, the little finger is turned towards the right shoulder; when in *Shoulder in*, the little finger should partly work upwards, towards the breast, and partly towards the left shoulder, to keep the horse's shoulders leading.

In *Right Pass*, the little finger is turned towards the right shoulder; if the forehand is too much advanced, the little finger is turned towards the body to check it.

In *Half Passage*, the little finger is not so much turned to the right shoulder.

(*c.*) In *Working to the Left*, the same movements are made towards the left shoulder.

(*d.*) In *Moving Forward*, the little finger is turned towards the horse's head, to ease the reins for a moment.

3. On the command "*Take up your Bridoon Reins*," when riding on the bit, the left bridoon rein is drawn through the left hand and placed over the bit reins, the left thumb being closed firmly on the bit reins and left bridoon rein ; the right bridoon rein is then held in the right hand, as when riding on the bridoon.

4. On the command "*Bit reins*," when riding on all four reins

the right hand drops the right bridoon rein, takes hold of the left bridoon rein close to the left hand, and draws the rein through the left hand until the centre of the bridoon rein is in the full of the left hand ; the left thumb then closes firmly on the bit reins, the bridoon rein being in front of the bit reins, over the fore-finger, and the right hand assumes its proper position behind the thigh.

5. When it is necessary to ride on all four reins, with sword drawn or lance at the *carry*, the left bridoon rein is drawn through the left hand as before, the right bridoon rein is then placed across the left hand the reverse way of the left bridoon rein, and the left thumb closes firmly on all four reins.

6. Bridoon reins are always to be taken up when marching at ease, going over jumps, or manœuvring over bad ground.

7. Recruits are to be instructed in *Rising in Stirrup*, which habit, being conducive to the greater ease of both man and horse, is to be encouraged and practised whenever possible.

THE SINGLE RIDE.

S. 18. *Directions for Instructors.*

1. The following instructions at the walk are intended for recruits and awkward men only. At inspections and on ordinary occasions trained rides will commence at the trot.

2. As a rule, all turns and circles should be executed when the rides are moving *from* the instructor, so that the dressing and covering shall be towards him, and the men may more readily attend to his instructions and corrections. For the same reasons, the inclines and passages across the school should be made when the rides are moving *towards* the instructor.

S. 19. *Formation of the Ride.*

The ride being formed in line down the centre of the school (Plate II., fig. 1, 1), with an interval of six inches between files, the word will be given—

"*Attention.*" The ride to be perfectly steady.

"*Eyes Right—Dress.*" Each man will have his body quite square to the front, his head well up, and just turned enough to allow a glance of the eye towards the dressing point, so as to see the surface of the face of the next man but one.

"*Eyes Front.*" Each man will turn his head and eyes to the front.

"*Walk, March.*" (Plate II., fig. 1, 2). The ride moves forward together, at the regulation pace. On arriving at the side, the right-hand man turns his horse to the right and marches straight forward close to the boards or side of the school; the remainder halting, turning to the right in succession, covering the leading file, and keeping 4 feet distance from head to croup.

"*Leading File, Circle.*" (Pl. II., fig. 1, 3). The leading file describes a circle according to the strength of his ride, every man following the track of the leading file and keeping his distance.

"*Leading File, Change.*" The leading file turns his horse to the right, leads straight through the centre of the circle, and on arriving at the opposite side, changes the bend of his horse, turns to the left, and commences the circle to the other hand; the remainder follow the movements of the leading file.

"*Go large.*" The leading file goes round by the side of the school, the remainder following.

"*Trot.*" The pace is increased to nine miles an hour.

"*Leading file, Left incline.*" The leading file makes a half turn from the side by a double feeling of the inward rein, supporting his horse with the outward leg. On arriving at the opposite side of the school, he squares his horse by feeling the outward rein and supporting him with the inward leg and rein, and the bend of the horse is then changed. The remainder follow the movements of the leading file and cover.

The ride is next told off in two divisions as follows:—On the command—

"*From the front, Number.*" The men tell off as previously

instructed. In the case of there being an odd number of files, No. 1 ride will be made the stronger. Supposing that there are 16 men, the word will then be given—

"*Numbers* 8 *and* 9, *Flanks of rides Proof.*" The flank men of rides smartly stretch out their right hands, at the full extent of the arm, palm of the hand to the left, fingers extended and close together, thumb close to the forefinger, and level with the top of the shoulder.

If the men are riding on both reins, they pass the right rein into the left hand while proving.

"*As you were.*" The men drop their hands smartly to the usual position.

"*Down the Centre.*" (Plate II., fig. 2, 1). The leading file makes a square turn to the right from the centre marker at the end of the school by feeling the inward rein and closing the outward leg, every man riding up to the same ground and applying the same aids. In filing down the centre, a straight line is to be kept, every man covering to his front. On arriving at the opposite end, the outward leg is to be closed to prevent the haunches from flying out.

The whole of No. 1 ride being at the side of the school, the word is given—

*"*No.* 1, *Right Turn*" (Plate II., fig. 2, 2), followed by—

"*No.* 2, *Right Turn.*" In crossing the school, care must be taken that every man keeps his interval of 3½ yards from knee to knee, and rides at the regulation pace.

"*No.* 1, *Right Turn.*"

"*No.* 2, *Right Turn.*" As soon as No. 2 ride is on the side of the school, the word is given—

"*No.* 2, *Circle Right*" (Plate III., fig. 1, 2), followed by—

"*No.* 1, *Circle Right.*" Circles are made from the side of the

---

* It sometimes happens that the word of command "*Right Turn*" is given to No. 2 rather late. The common practice of correcting this mistake of the Instructor by directing No. 2 to "*Trot Out*" to correct the lost distance, must be discontinued. It is quite unnecessary and renders the ride unsteady.

school to the centre. In circling, each file causes his horse to leave the side by a double feeling of the inward rein, retaining a steady feeling of the outward, the horse to be well supported by the outward leg. *The dressing is by the right,* the ride leaving the side with the leading file, the centre with the rear file (Pl. III., fig. 1, 3), and arriving again at the side with the leading file. If the circles are correctly made, there will be an interval of 3½ yards from knee to knee when half way between the side and centre of the school, and 4 feet distance from head to croup when at the centre and side.

"*No.* 2, *Circle and Change.*" (Pl. III., fig. 2).

"*No.* 1, *Circle and Change.*" When the circle is nearly completed, each file changes the bend of his horse (Plate III., fig. 2, 3,) and turns smoothly to the other hand.

When No. 1 ride is in file at the side of the school, it receives the word—

"*No.* 1, *Left Turn,*" and, on arriving at the other side—

"*No.* 1, *Halt.*" As soon as No. 2 ride will cover No. 1, man for man, it receives the word—

"*No.* 2, *Left Turn,*" and when at half a horse's length distance from No. 1—

"*No.* 2, *Halt.*"

"*Rein Back, March.*" The whole rein back.

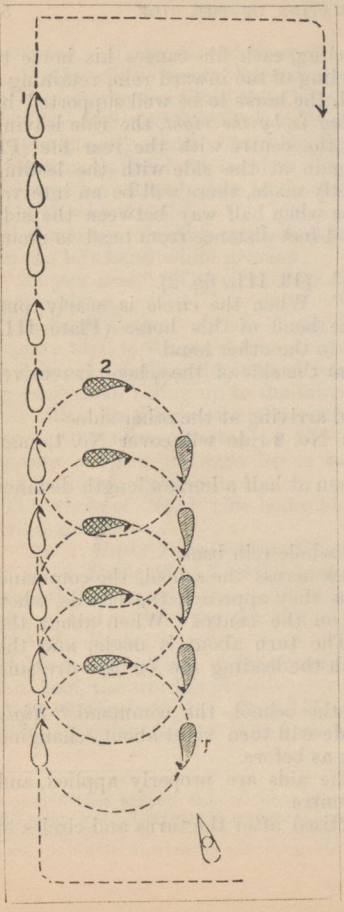
[The ride having reined back across the school, the command "*Left About*" may be given as they approach the boards, when each file will turn left about on the centre. When about, the dressing becomes changed. The turn about is made, and the reining back is taken up, with the leading file on the dressing flank.

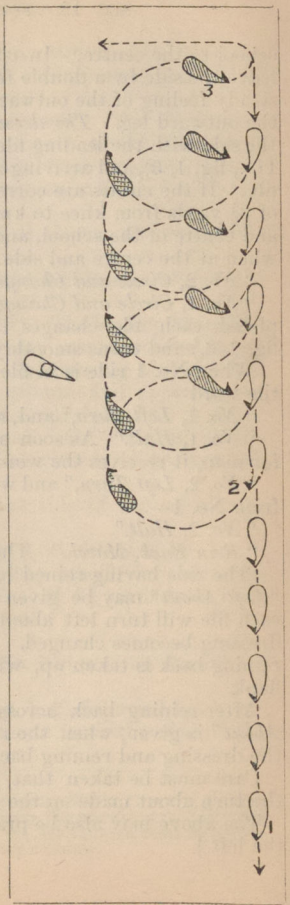
After reining back across the school, the command "*Right About*" is given, when the ride will turn right about, changing the dressing and reining back as before.

Care must be taken that the aids are properly applied, and the turn about made on the centre.

The above may also be practised after the turns and circles to the left.]

Fig. 1. PLATE III. Fig. 2.





"*No.* 1, *At the walk* (or *At the Trot*), *Forward.*" As soon as No. 2 ride has room to follow No. 1, it receives the word—

"*No.* 2, *At the walk* (or *At the Trot*), *Forward.*"

Both rides being now in file, they receive the word—

"*Down the Centre,*" and the ride is continued by the following words of command—

"*No.* 1, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 1, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Circle Left.*"
"*No.* 1, *Circle Left.*"
"*No.* 2, *Circle and Change.*"
"*No.* 1, *Circle and Change.*"
"*No.* 1, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 1, *Halt.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Halt.*"
"*Rein Back, March.*"
"*No.* 1, *At the walk* (or *At the trot*), *Forward.*"
"*No.* 2, *At the walk* (or *At the trot*), *Forward.*"

} As previously directed, substituting left for right in the explanations, and *vice versâ.*

No. 1 ride being on the side of the school, the word is given – "*No.* 1, *Right Incline,*" followed by—

"*No.* 2, *Right Incline.*" In inclining, each file makes a turn of 30° to the right by feeling the inward rein and closing the outward leg, and moves in an oblique direction across the school.

PLATE III.

Fig. 1.

1 In File by the Boards.
2 Circle right, dressing to Rear File.
3 Covering in the centre, and leaving with Rear File.

Fig. 2.

1 No. 1, in File by the Boards.
2 No. 2, commencing to circle.
3 No. 2, changing the bend and turning to the left.

An interval of 3½ yards from knee to knee must be kept. On arriving at the other side of the school, each file squares his horse by feeling the outward rein and supporting him with the inward leg and rein; the bend of the horse is then changed, and the rider covers the leading file.

The ride should occasionally be halted when on the incline in order to see that each file is properly placed.

"*No.* 1, *Left Incline.*"

"*No.* 2, *Left Incline.*"

The foregoing movements should be repeated at the trot to each hand.

"*Down the Centre.*" When the ride is covered on the centre the command "*Right About*" will be given, on which each man will halt his horse steadily, make a momentary pause, and turn right about on the centre, applying the aids previously described. The first turn is made with the leading file, the second with the rear file, and all, after going about, change the bend and move forward together.

On arriving at the opposite end of the school, the leading file will turn to the left, every man following him, and closing the outward leg to prevent the haunches flying out.

When the ride is on the side of the school, the word "*On the Forehand, Right About*" (or "*On the Haunches, Left About,*") will be given, on which each man will halt steadily, and go about on the forehand or haunches. The aids for turning about on the haunches are as follows:—Stay the hind-quarters with the inward leg, and circle the forehand round with the inward rein, the outward leg being closed to prevent the haunches flying out. In turning about on the forehand, stay the forehand with the inward rein, circle the croup round with the outward leg, the outward rein well supporting, the inward leg keeping the horse up to the hand.

If the ride was at the trot or canter before the word "*About,*" the men will move two paces at the walk, after going about, before resuming the trot or canter.

S. 20. *Bending Lesson.*

If the ride be at the trot, it will be ordered to walk before commencing the bending lesson.

The ride being in file by the side of the school, working to the right, the word is given—

"*Right Shoulder in.*" (Plate IV., fig. 1, 1.) Each man brings his horse's forehand in towards the centre of the school by a double feeling of the inward rein, supporting the horse by the outward leg and rein; he then leads his horse off with the outward rein.

The outward rein leads, the inward preserves the bend; the inward leg presses the horse to cross his legs, while the outward keeps him up to the hand and prevents him from swerving.

When a horse is properly placed in "*Shoulder in,*" his whole body from head to tail should be curved. His shoulders should lead, the inward legs should cross over the outward, and the fore and hind feet should move in two lines, parallel to the side of the school, the hind feet being about one yard from the side.

If the horse is too square, the outward leg should be applied to check the haunches, and the outward rein should lead off the shoulders.

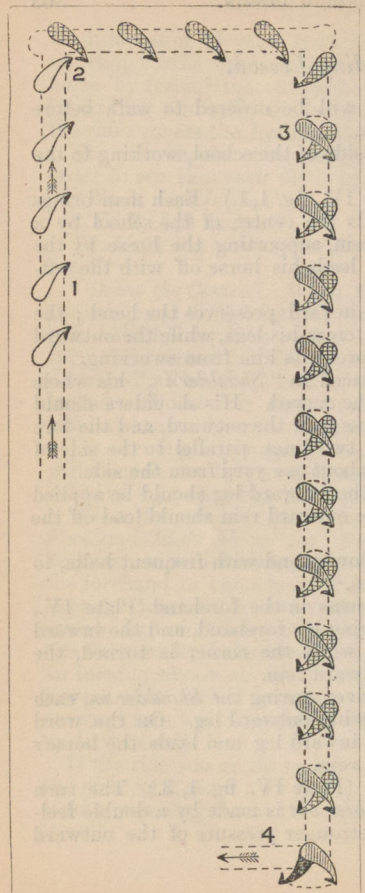
Shoulder in should be done slowly, and with frequent halts, to correct the position of the horses.

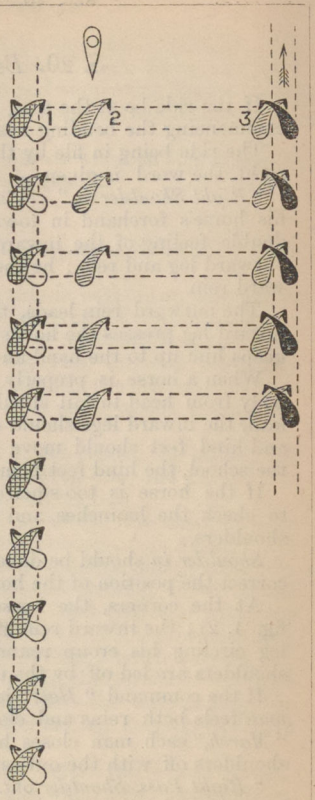
At the corners, the horse turns on the forehand (Plate IV., fig. 1, 2); the inward rein staying his forehand, and the inward leg circling his croup round; when the corner is turned, the shoulders are led off by the outward rein.

If the command "*Halt*" is given during the *Shoulder in*, each man feels both reins and closes his outward leg. On the word "*March,*" each man closes his inward leg and leads the horse's shoulders off with the outward rein.

"*Right Pass, Shoulder out.*" (Plate IV., fig. 1, 3.) The turn from *Shoulder in* to *Pass, Shoulder out* is made by a double feeling of the outward rein and a stronger pressure of the outward

Fig. 1. PLATE IV. Fig. 2.





leg, the horse turning on his centre ; when turned, the shoulders are led off with the inward rein.

In the passage the inward rein bends and leads the horse, the outward balances and assists the power of the inward ; the pressure of the outward leg makes him cross his legs, and the inward keeps him up to the hand.

The turns in the passage *Shoulder out* and at the corners (Plate IV., fig. 1, 4), are made on the haunches, the inward leg staying the horse's hind quarters, and a double feeling of the inward rein circling his forehand round, the outward leg preventing his haunches from flying out.

If the command "*Halt*" is given during the passage, each man feels both reins and closes his inward leg. On the word "*March*," each man closes his outward leg and leads the horse's shoulders off with the inward rein.

Thus, the difference between the passage shoulder in and the passage shoulder out is as follows—

In the *Shoulder in*, the horse's head is towards the centre of the school, the inward legs cross over the outward, and the turn is made on the forehand ; in the *Passage*, *Shoulder out*, the horse's head is towards the boards, the outward legs cross over the inward, and the turn is made on the haunches.

"*Right Shoulder in.*" (Plate IV., fig. 2.) The turn from *Pass*, *Shoulder out* to *Shoulder in* is made by a double feeling of the inward rein and a stronger pressure of the inward leg, the horse turning on his centre ; when turned, the shoulders are led off with the outward rein.

PLATE IV.

Fig. 1.

1 Right Shoulder in.
2 Turning at the corner.
3 Turning from Shoulder in to Pass, Shoulder out.
4 One horse turning at the corner.

Fig. 2.

1 Turning from Pass, Shoulder out to Shoulder in.
2 No. 1, Right pass.
3 No. 1, Turning from Right Pass to Left Shoulder.

When No. 1 ride is on the side of the school (Plate IV., fig. 2, 2), the word is given "*No.* 1, *Right Pass,*" and the ride passes across the school, each man closing the outward leg and leading the shoulders off with the inward rein. While crossing the school the interval and dressing must be kept.

When No. 1 ride arrives near the side, the word is given—

"*No.* 1, *Left Shoulder in.*" (Plate IV., fig. 2, 3). The bend is changed and the forehand stayed with the inward rein, and the croup circled round with the inward leg; when turned, the shoulders are led off with the outward rein.

When No. 2 ride is on the side of the school, the word is given—

"*No.* 2, *Right Pass,*" and on arriving at the side—

"*No.* 2, *Left Shoulder in.*"

Both rides now being at *Left Shoulder in,* the word is given—

"*Left Pass, Shoulder out.*"

"*Left Shoulder in.*"

When No. 1 ride is on the side of the school, the ride is continued by the commands—

"*No.* 1, *Left Pass.*"

"*No.* 1, *Right Shoulder in.*"

"*No.* 2, *Left Pass.*"

"*No.* 2, *Right Shoulder in.*"

Both rides now being at *Right Shoulder in,* on the command—"*Forward,*" the whole will square their horses by a double feeling of the outward rein and a stronger pressure of the outward leg, and take up their covering and distance at once, close to the side of the school.

S. 21. *Turns in the Bending Lesson.*

In *Shoulder in* the turns are made on the forehand; the inward rein staying the forehand, the inward leg circling the croup round; when the turn is completed, the shoulders are led off by the outward rein.

In the *Passage* the turns are made on the haunches; the inward leg stays the hind quarters, and a double feeling of the inward rein circles the forehand round; the outward leg prevents the haunches from flying out.

The turn from *Shoulder in* to *Pass*, *Shoulder out* is made by a double feeling of the outward rein and stronger pressure of the outward leg, supported by the inward leg and rein, causing the horse to turn on his centre; when he has turned he must be led off with the inward rein.

The turn from *Pass*, *Shoulder out* to *Shoulder in* is made by a double feeling of the inward rein and stronger pressure of the inward leg, supported by the outward leg and rein, the horse turning on his centre; when the turn is completed, the horse should be led off by the outward rein.

S. 22. *The Canter* (9 miles an hour).

When the ride works well at a trot and in the bending lesson, and the horses are well bent and collected, the *Canter* may be commenced. On the command—

"*Canter*," each man should have a light and firm feeling of both reins, to raise his horse's forehand, and, by a pressure of both legs, make him bring his haunches under him. A double feeling of the inward rein and a stronger pressure of the outward leg will make the horse strike off true and united. Each horse should lead off correctly, without throwing his haunches in; the rider, in applying the aids for cantering, should remain steady in the middle of the saddle, without leaning forward. If his horse is false, he should not check the ride for the purpose of correcting him, but should close up to half the distance ordered, make half a halt at the next corner of the school, feel the inward rein and close the outward leg.

In cantering to the right, a horse should lead with the off foreleg, followed by the off hind; in cantering to the left, he should lead with the near fore, followed by the near hind.

In cantering to the right, a horse leading with the near foreleg followed by the near hind is *false.*

In cantering to the left, a horse leading with the off foreleg followed by the off hind is *false.*

If a horse in cantering leads with the near fore, followed by the off hind, or with the off fore, followed by the near hind, he is *disunited.*

When a horse has struck off correctly in a canter, the hands and legs of his rider should resume their proper position. The reins should be eased at every pace, by the play of the wrist of the rider, who should avoid a dead pull.

The canter, though collected, should never be so slow as at all to affect the freedom and spring of the horse's action.

The horse must be taken well into the corners of the school by feeling the outward rein and applying the inward leg, at the same time preserving the bend.

Halting in the *Canter* must not be practised till the hand and seat are good, so as not to strain the horse's hocks by a sudden jerk; the ride is therefore at first to be brought to the *Trot* from the *Canter*, previous to the halt.

When the ride is well advanced—

"*Right* (or *Left*) *About*" may be ordered during the *Canter;* in which case, first making a steady halt, each file turns about and resumes the *Canter*, the dressing being changed.

The ride cantering to the right round the school, the word is given—

"*Down the Centre.*" Every man makes a square turn to the right on the centre marker, covering and keeping his distance correctly. On arriving at the end of the school, the horse must be well supported with the outward leg, to prevent his haunches from flying out.

Care must be taken that every horse is cantering correctly previous to turning.

"*No.* 1, *Right Turn.*"

"*No.* 2, *Right Turn.*"

In all turnings, a steady pace with correct intervals must be kept.

Frequently a ride keeps a good pace round the school, but in turning the steadiness is lost and the pace becomes hurried, either because the riders feel the inward reins too strongly, and do not support their horses by the outward reins and legs, or else they yield their hands too much, and do not keep the horses' haunches under them. Some horses keep up a tolerable canter on a straight line; but when turned they feel too much constraint laid upon them, and to relieve themselves from it they lean upon their riders' hands. If, in such a case, the rider yields the reins instead of closing the hand firmly, turning the little finger upwards towards the breast, and pressing both legs to the horse, the horse comes on his shoulders. It is to be well understood that the rider's hand should be light and steady, for when a horse defends himself against being collected by leaning on the rider's hand he should be corrected by the rider keeping him well up to it (by reining him back if possible), but, as soon as the horse yields to the hand, the hand should yield to him.

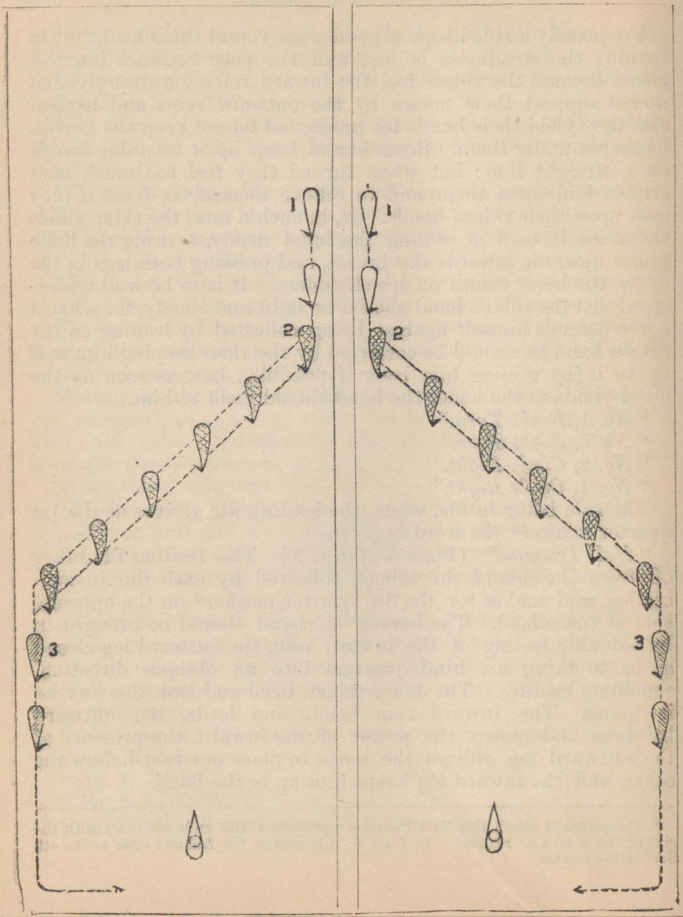
"*No.* 1, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Circle Right.*"
"*No.* 1, *Circle Right.*"

The ride being in file, when the leading file arrives at the 1st quarter marker* the word is given—

"*Half Passage.*" (Plate V, fig. 1, 2.) The leading file takes off from the side of the school, followed by each file in succession, and makes for the 3rd quarter marker* on the opposite side of the school. The horse's forehand should be brought in by a double feeling of the inward rein, the outward leg closed so as to bring his hind quarters into an oblique direction, shoulders leading. The horse must bend and look the way he is going. The inward rein bends and leads, the outward balances and assists the power of the inward, the pressure of the outward leg obliges the horse to place one foot before the other, and the inward leg keeps him up to the hand.

* The points at which the Half Passage commences and ends will vary with the size of the school or manège. In Plate V. it begins at the 2nd and ends at the 4th Serpentine marker.

Fig 1. PLATE V. Fig. 2.



On leaving the side of the school each man dresses with his horse's head on the outward knee of the man in front of him. The forehand and haunches of each horse should arrive at the side at the same time, after which the horse will be changed. A horse is apt to accustom itself to anticipate his rider and to change previously to coming to the boards. If the rider, however, closes strongly his outward leg, and does not allow the position of his horse's head to change until he arrives at the boards, the fault will be prevented. The *Half Passage* should be practised first at the walk, to ensure the horses being properly placed.

All the horses having changed and cantering to the left, the ride is continued by the commands—

"*Down the Centre.*"
"*No.* 1, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 1, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Circle Left.*"
"*No.* 1, *Circle Left.*"
"*Half Passage.*" (Plate V., fig. 2, 2.)
"*No.* 1, *Right Incline.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Incline.*" } Each file makes a third of a turn from the side, bending his horse the way it is inclining, till he arrives at the opposite side; there he makes half a halt, changes the position of his horse's head and leading leg, and continues the *Canter.* (Plate V, fig. 2, 3.)

PLATE V.

Fig. 1.

1 Canter to the Right.
2 Half Passage.
3 Change.

Fig. 2.

1 Canter to the Left.
2 Half Passage.
3 Change.

"*No.* 1, *Left Incline.*"

"*No.* 2, *Left Incline.*"

The ride being in file, the word is given—

"*Take a horse's length distance,*" and the ride is formed in two divisions, as follows. On the command—

"*Leading Files of Rides, Dress,*" the leading file of No. 1 ride increases his pace and conforms to the position of the leading file of No. 2, so that both rides may be exactly opposite each other. The leading file of No. 2 maintains the original pace, and the remainder of both rides take care to keep their proper distance.

The rides being opposite each other on either side of the school, the word is given*—

"*No.* 1 *will attack.*" "*Circle Right.*" Both rides turn to the right from the sides together, and circle round each other in the centre of the school, advancing with swords at the *Right Engage.*† When within measure, No. 1 ride cut one and two on the right at their opponents faces, No. 2 ride defending with the first and second guards on the right. After they have circled round each other, they retire with swords at the *Right Rear Guard* (second position of the *Engage*), sloping swords together by their right when out of measure.

"*No.* 2 *will attack.*" "*Circle Right.*" As directed for No. 1.

"*Change.*" Both rides change smoothly to the other hand on reaching the side of the school. On changing over to the left rein, swords are brought from the *Right Rear Guard* to the *Left Rear Guard* (third position of the *Engage*), and the rear file now leading No. 1 ride conforms to the rear file leading No. 2, who is answerable for the pace.

"*No.* 1 *will attack.*" "*Circle Left.*" Both rides circle as directed above, advancing with swords at the *Left Engage*, attack as before, No. 1 ride cutting one and two on the left, and retire

* This part of the single ride will not be practised until the men have been taught to ride with stirrups and on the bit and instructed in riding with arms (Sects. 22 to 26.)

† Lancers "trail lance" throughout the circle, coming to the carry on arriving at the sides.

with swords at the *Left Rear Guard* (third position of the *Engage*).

"*No. 2 will attack.*" "*Circle Left.*" As for No. 1.

"*Change.*" As before directed. The word is then given—

"*Close your files to half a horse's length on No.* 1," the front being ordered to decrease, or the rear to increase, their pace.

The files may also be closed by the command "*Close your files to half a horse's length on No.* 1." "*Leading file of No* 2, *right turn.*"

The leading file being near the centre of one end of the school, the word is given—

"*Serpentine.*" The leading file inclines to the right, to the side of the school, followed by each file in succession, and makes a zig-zag course down the school,* always covering on the markers indicated to him and coming within a horse's length of the side of the school. On arriving at the centre of the other end, he turns to the hand on which he began the serpentine.

In turning to the right, the horses should canter to the right; in turning to the left, they should change and canter to the left. The horses should change without checking, neither throwing the haunches in nor out but exactly following the leading file.

Before the serpentine is done at a canter, it should be practised at a walk.

When the *Serpentine* is completed, the word is given—

"*Trot.*" "*Trot out,*" "*Trot short.*"

"*From the Front, tell off by Fours.*" The files tell off "*One,*" "*Two,*" "*Three,*" "*Four,*" in succession from the front.

"*Flanks of Fours, Proof.*" Nos. 1 and 4 prove as directed for flanks of rides. "*As you were.*"

"*By Sections* (or *Half-sections*) *down the centre.*" The men of each section turn at the same moment from the end of the school, Nos. 2, 3 and 4 leaving the end of the school with No. 1, and keeping the intervals from the right.

---

* The number of inclines and the point at which the leading file is to take off will depend upon the size of the school.

"*Close your files to half a horse's length.*" "*Leading section* (or *Half-section*), *Halt.*"

"*Sword* (or *Lance*) *Exercise.*" After the sword exercise, the ride will receive "*Eyes Left,*" "*Go large,*" "*Walk, March,*" when the sections will move off in succession as they get room, turning to the left at the end of the school so as to bring the leading file in front.

S. 23. *Words of Command for the Single Ride.*

"*Attention.*"
"*Eyes Right—Dress.*"
"*Eyes Front.*"
"*Walk, March.*"
"*Leading File, Circle.*"
"*Leading File, Change.*"
"*Go Large.*"
"*Trot.*"
"*Trot out.*"
"*Leading File, Left incline.*"
"*Trot short.*"
"*From the Front, Number* ."
"*Nos.* 8 *and* 9 (or as the case may be), *Flanks of rides, Proof.*"
"*As you were.*"

"*Down the Centre.*"
"*No.* 1, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 1, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Circle Right.*"
"*No.* 1, *Circle Right.*"
"*No.* 2, *Circle and Change.*"
"*No.* 1, *Circle and Change.*"
"*No.* 1, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 1, *Halt.*"
"*No.* 2, *Left Turn.*"

Repeated, substituting "*Left*" for "*Right,*" and *vice versâ.*

"*No.* 2, *Halt.*"
"*Eyes Left—Rein Back, March.*"
"*No.* 1, *At the walk* (or *At the trot*), *Forward.*"
"*No.* 2, *At the walk* (or *At the trot*), *Forward.*"
"*No.* 1, *Right Incline.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Incline.*"
"*No.* 1, *Left Incline.*"
"*No.* 2, *Left Incline.*"

Bending Lesson.

"*Right Shoulder in.*"
"*Right Pass, Shoulder out.*"
"*Right Shoulder in.*"
"*No.* 1, *Right Pass.*"
"*No.* 1, *Left Shoulder in.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Pass.*"
"*No.* 2, *Left Shoulder in.*"

Repeated, substituting "*Left*" for "*Right*" and *vice versâ*.

"*Forward.*"

The Canter.

"*Canter.*"
"*Down the Centre.*"
"*No.* 1, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 1, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Circle Right.*"
"*No.* 1, *Circle Right.*"
"*Half Passage.*"
"*Down the Centre.*"
"*No.* 1, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 2, *Left Turn.*"
"*No.* 1, *Left Turn.*"

"*No.* 2, *Left Turn.*
"*No.* 2, *Circle Left.*
"*No.* 1, *Circle Left.*"
"*Half Passage.*"
"*No.* 1, *Right Incline.*"
"*No.* 2, *Right Incline.*"
"*No.* 1, *Left Incline.*"
"*No.* 2, *Left Incline.*"
"*Take a horse's length distance.*"
"*Leading Files of Rides, Dress.*"
"*No.* 1 *will attack.*" "*Circle Right.*"
"*No.* 2 *will attack.*" "*Circle Right.*"
"*Change.*"
"*No.* 1 *will attack.*" "*Circle Left.*"
"*No.* 2 *will attack.*" "*Circle Left.*"
"*Change.*"
"*Close your files to half a horse's length on No.* 1." "*Leading file of No.* 2, *Right turn.*"
"*Serpentine.*"
"*Trot.*" "*Trot out.*" "*Trot short.*"
"*From the front, tell off by fours.*"
"*Flanks of fours, Prcof.*" "*As you were.*"
"*By Sections* (or *Half-sections*) *down the centre.*"
"*Close your files to half a horse's length.*" "*Leading Section* (or *Half-section*), *Halt.*"
"*Sword* (or *Lance*) *Exercise.*"
"*Go large.*" "*Walk, March.*"

It is to be distinctly understood that instructors are not always to adhere to the foregoing order of commands. They should constantly test the progress and efficiency of their rides by varying them unexpectedly, which will stimulate care and attention.

When, as sometimes happens, large rides have to be drilled in small schools, it is recommended that they should be worked in three rides, divided on the same principle as in two, or divided by passing sections down the centre.

RIDING WITH ARMS.

When the horses work well with the bit, and the men have acquired steadiness and lightness of hand, the latter, having been previously perfected in sword, carbine, and lance exercise on foot, are to be practised in the same mounted.

The following special instructions and remarks become necessary:—

S. 24. Riding with the Sword.

When standing to his horse at "*Attention*," the dragoon with a sword stands square to the front with his toes in line with his horse's fore-feet, holding the bridoon rein with the right hand near the bit, the right hand raised as high as his own shoulder, the sword upright by the side as on foot parade.

"*Stand at Ease.*" The position of the man is the same as in foot drill, except that the right hand slides down the bridoon rein to the full extent of the arm, the rein being retained in the hand.

"*Prepare to Mount.*"
"*Mount.*"
"*Prepare to Dismount.*"
"*Dismount.*"
} As directed in S. 15.

In mounting on the off side, the dragoon will pass the sword over behind him, as he is bringing down his left leg into the saddle. In dismounting on the off side, the sword is first to be laid across the front of the saddle, the shoe of the scabbard to the right.

"*Draw Swords.*" (1) Pass the right hand smartly across the body, over the bridle arm, to the sword knot,* place it on the wrist, give it two turns inwards to secure it, and as the handle

* When the sword is attached to the saddle, it may be necessary to draw out the blade so as to rest the hilt on the bridle arm before the sword knot is taken and the handle properly grasped.

is grasped draw out the blade slowly* until the hand is in line with the elbow, turning the edge to the rear, the right arm close to the body, shoulders square to the front. (2.) With an extended arm draw the sword slowly from the scabbard, edge to the rear, in rear of the left shoulder, and bring it smartly to the *Recover*, that is, with the bar of the hilt in line with the bottom of the chin, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow close to the body. (3) Lower the sword smartly to the *Carry*, that is, with the hilt resting on the thigh, blade perpendicular, edge slightly inclined to the left, the grasp of the lower fingers slightly relaxed, little finger in rear of the hilt, arm close to the body, that part of it between the wrist and the elbow lightly touching the hip.

"*Slope Swords.*" Bring the lower part of the arm at right angles to the upper, hand in front of the elbow, relax the grasp of the second and third fingers, and allow the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder, midway between the neck and point of the shoulder, the little finger still in rear of the hilt.

"*Sit at Ease.*" Keeping the sword at the slope, place the hands on the front part of the saddle, with the right hand over the left.

"*Attention.*" Come smartly to the position of *Slope Swords.*

"*Carry Swords.*" Resume the grasp of the second and third fingers and bring the blade perpendicular, the hilt resting on the thigh, as in the third motion of drawing swords.

"*Return Swords.*" Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow level with the shoulder; then, by a quick turn of the wrist drop the point in rear of the left shoulder slowly into the scabbard, and resume the position at the end of the first motion in *Draw Swords*, shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion. (2) Return the sword slowly into the scabbard, release the hand from the sword knot by giving it two turns outwards, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up. (3) Drop the right hand smartly to the side.

---

* Swords must be drawn from and returned to the scabbards SLOWLY, in order to preserve the edge.

When *Draw Swords* is ordered at the walk, the men after drawing, will remain at the *Carry* until ordered to *Slope* ; but if *Draw Swords* is ordered at the trot or gallop, the men will come to the *Slope* after drawing.

When men are dismounted to lead their horses, or attack on foot with carbines, swords are to be attached to the saddles.

Proving. In proving the telling off with a drawn sword, the sword is brought to the *Carry*, and again sloped on the command "*As you were.*"

S. 25. *Riding with the Lance.*

When standing to his horse at *Attention*, the lancer stands square to the front, his toes in line with the horse's fore feet, holding the bridoon rein with the right hand near the bit, and the lance at the order in the left hand, which slides down the pole to the full extent of the arm, the thumb next the body, the fingers on the outside of the lance.

"*Prepare to Mount.*" Grasp the lance just below the sling with the left hand along with the mane and reins.

"*Mount.*" Mount in the usual manner, taking care to keep the point of the lance well up to prevent it from touching the men and horses in the ranks. As soon as seated in the saddle, grasp the lance by the right hand below the balance under the bridle hand ; by a second motion bring it smartly up and hold it perpendicularly with the right hand in front of the face, the butt in line with the elbow ; after a moment's pause, lower it carefully into the bucket and come to the position of *Carry Lance*, which is the position of *Attention* when mounted.

"*Prepare to Dismount.*" Let the right hand slide down the pole of the lance to the full extent of the arm ; bring the lance smartly up and hold it perpendicularly with the right hand in front of the face ; after a moment's pause, lower it under the bridle arm, and grasp it just below the sling by the left hand with the reins and mane.

"*Dismount.*" Dismount as usual, pressing the hand upon the butt end of the pole, so as to keep the point well raised, and assume the position of *Attention* with the lance at the *Order* in the left hand, but close to the ball of the left foot.

"*Stand at Ease.*" Stand at ease, as after dismounting with swords, the lance resting against the left shoulder.

Dismounting on the *off* side, which should be frequently practised, is done by reversing the motions of dismounting. After securing the lance, reins, and mane in the right hand, the left hand grasps the sword and lays it across the front of the saddle, the point to the right; the man then dismounts on the *off* side, with the lance at the *Order* in the right hand.

Mounting on the *off* side is performed by reversing the motions of mounting on the near side. The lancer must be attentive that he does not entangle himself with his sword, which is passed over behind him, when he is bringing down his left leg into the saddle.

"*Carry Lance.*" The lance resting with the butt end in the bucket, keep it upright with the right hand, which grasps the pole with the thumb level with the top of the shoulder, back of the hand to the front, elbow down.

"*Order Lance.*" Let the lance fall against the hollow of the right shoulder, and let the right hand slide down the pole to the full extent of the arm, as on foot.

If the word "*Sit at Ease*" is given when at the *Carry*, the lance is allowed to fall against the hollow of the shoulder as at the *Order*, the left hand is placed on the front of the saddle, the right hand over the left, with the right arm round the pole.

On the command "*Attention*" (from *Sit at Ease*), the position of *Carry Lance* is at once assumed.

"*Trail Lance.*" Grasping the lance at the balance raise it out of the bucket, lower the point to the left front, over the horse's near ear, the hand resting on the thigh, little finger in line with the back edge of the stripe of the pantaloons, knuckles down and elbow slightly forward.

"*Sling Lance.*" (From the *Carry*). Pass the right hand

through the sling, and rest it on the thigh, near the hip, with the knuckles down, elbow bent outwards, without stiffness.

"*By Numbers.*" "*Left arm Sling Lance.*" Let the right hand slide down the pole of the lance to the full extent of the arm.

"*Two.*" Bring the lance smartly up, and hold it perpendicularly with the right hand in front of the face; after a moment's pause, lower it carefully into the left bucket outside the bridle arm, the right hand resting on the left, the lance sliding through it.

"*Three.*" Holding the lance between the thumb and forefinger, pass the remaining fingers of the right hand over the reins and hold them, with the back of the hand up; pass the left hand thus disengaged through the sling and again take the reins.

"*By Numbers.*" "*Carry Lance.*" Take the reins with the right hand, the back of the hand up, and drop the left hand, taking hold of the lance at the full extent of the arm.

"*Two.*" Sweep the lance to the front with the left arm, and, disengaging the arm from the sling, allow the lance to fall against the left shoulder, and immediately take the reins with the left hand.

"*Three.*" Drop the right hand to the full extent of the arm under the bridle hand, seize the lance and bring it smartly up, holding it perpendicularly with the right hand in front of the face; after a moment's pause, lower it carefully into the right bucket, and assume the position of *Carry Lance.*

The recruit will be taught the *Left Arm Sling Lance* and *Carry Lance* by numbers. The trained soldier will go through the motions above described on the word of command "*Left Arm Sling Lance,*" &c.

Dressing. On the order to dress, when mounted, the lance is brought to the *Order.* As soon as the dressing is completed and the command "*Eyes Front*" given, the position of *Carry Lance* is resumed.

Proving. In proving the telling off with a lance at the *Carry,* the right arm is extended to the front, the hand retaining its grasp. In proving at the *Order,* the hand is brought to the position of *Carry,* and the arm extended to the front. The original position is assumed on the command "*As you were.*"

Royal escorts, and orderlies, attending royal personages and general and other officers on duty, *Trail Lance.* Orderlies, carrying despatches or returning, and detached men, *Sling Lance,* except when passing guards, armed parties, and officers and others entitled to salutes, when they *Carry Lance.*

On the line of march, or on any other occasion when it is wished to ride at ease, the command is given "*Sling Lance*"; but on parade, when a regiment or smaller body is required to sit at ease, the word of command is "*Sit at Ease.*" In the former instance the leaders and serrefiles return swords, but in the latter they do not, but sit at ease as laid down in the instructions for sword exercise.

In riding through a wood or when it is necessary to conceal the lance (as for instance, on reconnoitring duty) it should be "*trailed*" with the point to the rear. When the lance is so placed, files are to be opened.

S. 26. *Riding with the Carbine.*

"*With Carbines, prepare to Mount.*" Seize the barrel of the carbine with the left hand, about three inches below the muzzle, butt downwards, and prepare to mount. On the command "*Mount,*" mount as usual, raise the carbine with the left hand, seize it with the right hand in front of the trigger guard, and bring it to the *Advance; i.e.,* with the right hand, which holds the carbine, on the upper part of the right thigh, little finger near the trigger guard, and in line with the front edge of the stripe of the pantaloons, thumb and fingers round the carbine, muzzle pointing to the left front, just clear of the horse's near ear. (In this position the carbine is carried by detachments and advanced parties when near the enemy, by vedettes, and by parade advanced and rear guards.)

"*With Carbines, prepare to Dismount.*" (From the *Advance*). Raise the carbine with the right hand perpendicularly in front of the face, hand as high as the chin; lower the butt under the bridle hand in front of the near wallet, and hold the barrel with

the left hand about three inches below the muzzle; then take a lock of the mane in the right hand and twist it round the thumb of the left. On the command "*Dismount,*" dismount as usual, bringing the carbine to the position of the *Trail,* and hold the bridle with the right hand. If required for dismounted service, as soon as the horse is given up, the carbine is passed from the left hand to the right.

"*Draw Arms.*" Seize the carbine by the small, draw the carbine from the bucket, and bring it to the *Advance.*

"*Return Arms.*" Place the carbine in the bucket with the right hand, and drop the hand behind the thigh.

"*Carry Arms.*" (From the *Advance.*) Without moving the right hand from its grasp of the carbine, place the butt on the upper part of the right thigh, the muzzle leaning to the front and in line with the right eye, trigger guard to the left, back of the hand down, elbow close to the side. (In this position the carbine is carried by escorts.)

S. 27. *Salute when Mounted.*

1. When a dragoon, riding on the bit or on all four reins (but without arms), passes an officer, he should ride at *Attention,* casting his eyes towards him. If riding on the bridoon only, he will also raise the outward hand until the little finger is in a line with the thumb of the inward hand.

2. A lancer, if his lance is at the *Sling* or *Trail,* when he passes an officer, should bring his lance to the *Carry,* casting his eyes towards him.

3. A dragoon with a carbine, if he passes an officer, should bring his carbine to the *Carry,* casting his eyes towards him.

4. A dragoon with a sword drawn, if he passes an officer, should bring his sword to the *Carry,* casting his eyes towards him.

LEAPING.

S. 28. *Aids in Leaping.*

1. When the instructor considers the ride sufficiently advanced for the purpose, *leaping* should generally be practised at the end of each lesson. This should be done in the first instance over a bar or other obstacle in the school or manège, and afterwards over hedges and other natural obstacles.

2. In jumping, the horse should be brought up to the fence at a steady canter, and must not be hurried or allowed to rush. His head must be kept straight to the fence.

3. Before men are made to practise leaping, the instructor should direct each man to cease riding solely on the bit, to tighten his bridoon reins, and to make use of them equally with the bit to steady his horse. In the earlier instruction in leaping, the men should ride on the bridoon only, after which a bit and bridoon rein are to be held in each hand; but when the men are well advanced, all the reins may be held in the left hand and leaping should be practised with drawn swords.

PRACTICE OF THE GALLOP AND CHARGE.

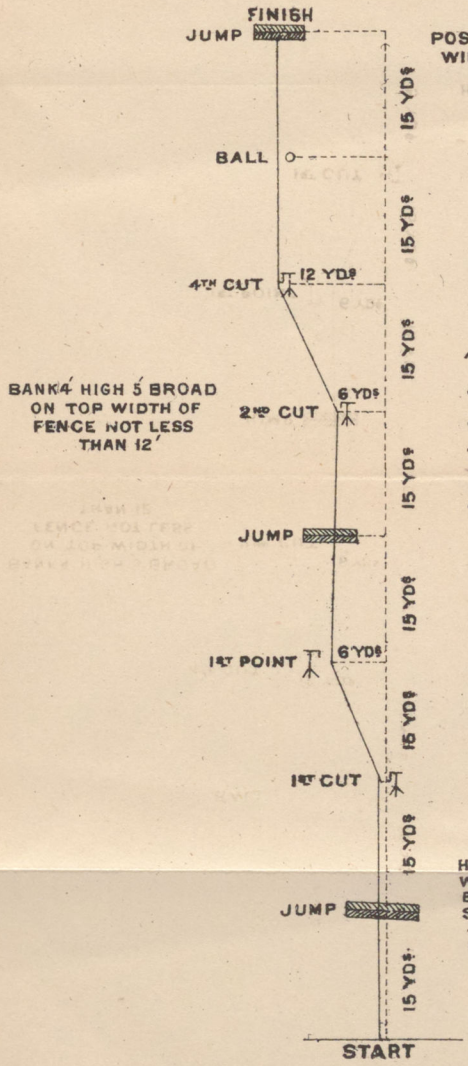
S. 29. *Directions for Instructors.*

As soon as the recruit has learnt to canter correctly he must be practised in riding and using his arms at the gallop, and must be gradually accustomed to the management of his horse at the highest speed, so that he may be thoroughly prepared for the practice of the attack when he joins the ranks of his squadron.

Plate VI.

Fig. 1.

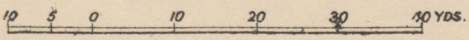
To face page 84



Sword.
A leap.
** Cut 1 to the right at Cavalry.*
Point to left at Cavalry.
A leap.
Cut 2 to right at Cavalry.
Cut 4 to right at Infantry.
Post to be 3 feet in height.
Point to right at Infantry.
Ball to be on ground.
A leap.

** Cuts may be made at lemons, or turnips when procurable.*

SCALE OF YDS



Wyman & Sons, Ltd., Lith. 9312. 10. 97.

Before dismissal the recruit should be taken into the open and made to ride his horse independently to given points.

[NOTE.—*Although no regulation in the nature of a "double ride" is laid down in the present volume, commanding officers are allowed to use their discretion in organising such inspection or show rides as they may think desirable, provided time and horseflesh are not thereby wasted.*]

POST PRACTICE.

The ride will now receive instruction in post practice in accordance with the diagrams on Plate VI.

S. 30. *Sword* (Fig. 1, Plate VI).

The following is the order for sword post practice :—

The ride being formed in line, the command is given :—

"*Advance by single files from the Right.*" "*Canter, March.*"

Each file from the right in succession will then move off, put his horse at the first jump and after crossing it proceed as follows :—

First Post.—"*Right Engage.*" "*Assault.*" "*Cut One on the Right at Cavalry.*"

Second Post.—*First Point to Left Front.*

Cross Second Jump.

Third Post.—"*Cut Two on the Right at Cavalry.*"

Fourth Post.—"*Cut Four to the Right at Infantry.*"

(Post to be 3 feet in height.)

Ball.—"*Point to the Right at Infantry.*"

(To be on the ground.)

Cross Third Jump.

After crossing the last jump he will file round and form on the left of the ride.

S. 31. *Lance* (Fig. 2, Plate VI.)

The following is the order for lance post practice :—

The ride being formed in line at the end of the school receives the command :—

"*At Horses' length distance Advance by Single file from the Right.*" "*Canter, March.*"

Each file from the right in succession will then move off, advance 15 yards, trail lance, and canter to the left and proceed as follows :—

"*Engage.*"

Cross First Jump.

First Post. Right Front. Second Point.
Second Post. Left Front. Thrust.

Cross Second Jump.

Third Post. Left Front. Fourth Point.
Fourth Post. Thrust to the Left.

Cross Third Jump.

After crossing the last jump he will file round and form on the left of the ride.

ATTACK AND DEFENCE DRILL.

The following exercise for the methodical instruction of man and horse in the elements of attack and defence will be carried out when a sufficient standard of proficiency in post practice has been attained.

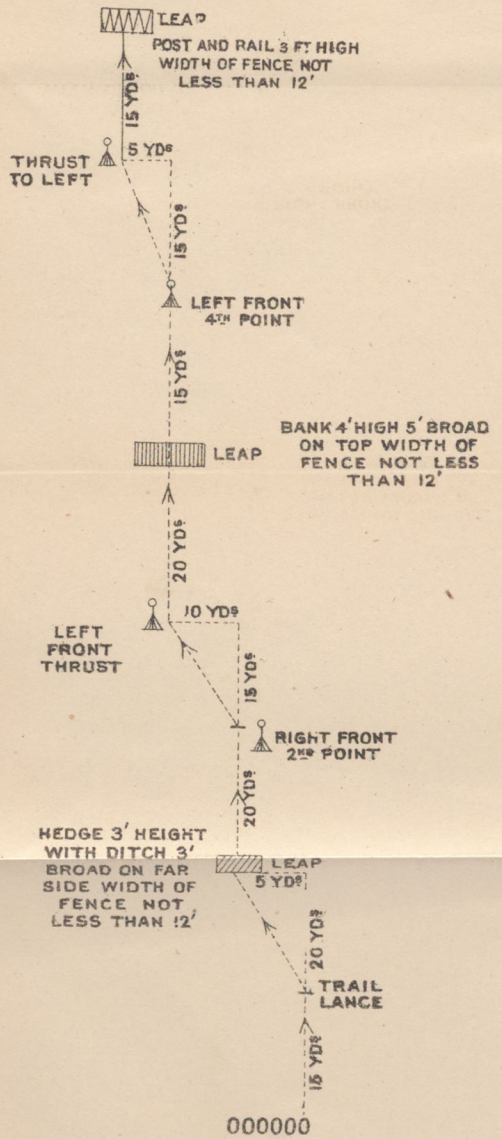
S. 32. *Preliminary Instruction on Foot.*

The men must first be instructed so thoroughly in the following exercises on foot that on receiving any of the following words of command they will without hesitation fall into the required position :—

Plate VI.

Fig. 2.

To face page 86.



Lance.
First practice (against Cavalry), using dummy Lance.
Engage.
A leap.
Right front 2nd point.
Left front, thrust.
A leap.
Left front 4th point.
Thrust to the left.
A leap.

Wyman & Sons, Ltd. Lith. 9312 6.97

Lance Exercise.

"*Right Rear, Third Point.*"
"*Left Front, Fourth Point.*"
"*Right Front, Second Point.*"
"*Thrust to the Left.*"
"*Round Rear, First Point.*"
"*Left Rear, Fourth Point.*"
"*Parry Right.*"
"*Parry Left.*"
} "*Prepare.*"

Sword Exercise.

"*Cut 1 on the Left.*"
"*Cut 2 on the Right.*"
} "*Prepare.*"

"*Circular Engage.*"

"*Cut 1 on the Right.*"
"*Cut 2 on the Left.*"
} "*Prepare.*"

MOUNTED INSTRUCTION.

S. 33. *Sword v. Lance.*

Two rides are formed of any convenient even number of men not exceeding 16—

No. 1 ride with dummy lances on the right of the instructor.

No. 2 ride with single sticks on the left.

Both rides to face inwards about 30 yards apart.

Three horses lengths' interval to be preserved between files.

The instructor gives the command :—

"*No. 1 will Attack.*" "*Circle Right.*" "*Walk, March.*"

Both rides to advance, No. 1 at the "*Engage.*" No. 2 at the "*Right Engage.*"

When they have advanced 10 yards the command is given :—
"*No.* 1 *Right Front, Second Point.*"

When within striking distance,

No. 1 delivers the point, No. 2 defends by the second motion of the "*Circular Engage.*"

Both rides then circle right-about and retire at the "*Engage*" and "*Right Engage,*" respectively, and on receiving the word "*Halt*" turn right-about and come to the "*Trail Lance*" or "*Slope Swords*" without further word of command.

The instructor then proceeds :—

"*No.* 2 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Left.*" "*Walk, March.*"

Both rides advance as before but No. 2 at the "*Left Engage.*"

"*Cut* 2 *on the Left.*" No. 2 delivers this cut *when within striking distance.* No. 1 defends by the parry to the left.

Both rides then circle about and retire.

Halt." Both rides turn *left-about* and resume their original positions.

"*No.* 1 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Left.*" "*Walk, March.*"

"*Left Rear, Fourth Point.*"

No. 1 will deliver this point when they have passed their opponents (taking care to make it a fourth point *to the left rear*, and not by circling left too soon make it a fourth point *to the left front*).

No. 2 defends by the fourth motion of the circular engage.

Both rides then will left-about and act on the word "*Halt*" as previously explained.

"*No.* 2 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Right.*" "*Walk March.*"

"*Cut* 2 *on the Right.*" "*Halt.*"

"*No.* 1 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Right.*" "*Walk, March.*" "*Round Wave, First Point.*" "*Halt.*"

"*No.* 2 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Right.*" "*Walk, March.*" "*Cut* 1 *on the Right.*" "*Halt.*"

"*No.* 1 *will Attack.* *Circle Left.*" "*Walk, March.*" "*Thrust to the Left.*" "*Halt.*"

"*No.* 2 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Left.*" "*Walk, March.*" "*Cut* 1 *on the Left.*" "*Halt.*"

"*No.* 1 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Right.*" "*Walk, March.*" "*Right Rear, Third Point.*"

Here again No. 1 will deliver this point just when they have passed (taking care to make a third point *to the right rear*, and not by circling about too soon, make it a point *to the right front*) "*Halt.*"

"*No.* 2 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Right.*" "*Walk, March.*" "*Cut* 2 *on the Right.*" "*Halt.*"

"*No.* 1 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Left.*" "*Walk, March.* "*Left Front, Fourth Point.*" "*Halt.*"

S. 34. *Lance v. Lance.*

In this practice, rides of convenient size should be formed.

The rides being opposite each other on either side of the school, the word is given,

"*No.* 1 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Right.*"

Both rides come to the trail and turn to the right together; when within striking distance, No. 1 delivers, "*Right Front, Second Point*" against cavalry. No. 2 defend themselves by raising the right arm to the right front to the full extent of the arm; hand 6 inches above the head, point of lance 6 inches higher than the butt. (This is No. 1 Guard.)

Both rides then come to the trail and circle round. No. 1 ride then delivers the "*Right Front Thrust*" against cavalry, No. 2 defending by the 1st guard as aforementioned.

Both rides trail their lances till they come to the boards, and then "*Carry Lance*" together.

"*No.* 2 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Right.*"
(As directed for No. 1.)

On the command "*Change,*" both rides change smoothly to the other hand on reaching the side of the school.

"*No.* 1 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Left.*"

Both rides come to the trail and turn to the left together. No. 1 delivers "*Left Front, Fourth Point,*" No. 2 defending by raising the right arm, till the right hand is 12 inches in advance of the head and 6 inches above it, back of the hand to the rear (*i.e.*, the second guard).

Both sides then come to the trail, circle round, and No. 1 delivers the "*Thrust to the Left Front*" against cavalry, No. 2 defending by means of the 2nd guard as aforementioned.

"*No.* 2 *will Attack.*" "*Circle Left.*"

(As directed for No. 1.)

REMARKS.

1. In carrying out attack and defence drill the following points must be kept clearly in mind :—

(*a*) In the preliminary drills on foot as well as the mounted instructions the words of command should not be given in the same order as in the lance or sword exercise.

(*b*) The cavalry soldier armed with the sword must be made to realize that his cut is *absolutely useless* unless his horse is made to go sufficiently near his opponent (especially if a lancer) to be *within striking distance of his body* (not his lance) indeed one of the primary objects of this drill is to teach troop horses, by use of the proper aids, to go fearlessly up to one another, thus enabling riders to get within striking distance of their opponent's body.

(*c*) It must be thoroughly explained that when either ride is attacking, if the word "*Circle Left,*" "*Walk, March,*" is given, No. 2 must always endeavour to retire at the "*Left Engage,*" also that both rides should turn left-about on the word "*Halt,*" when they have retired to their original positions.

(*d*) The "*Parry*" is intended to ward off a sword point or bayonet thrust aimed at the right side, and a similar one can be used on the left side.

2. When the men and horses are efficient in this drill at the "*Walk*," they should be put through at the "*Trot*," and finally at the "*Canter*." Then, and not till then, should any attempt be made to commence loose play.

MOUNTED COMBAT.

S. 35. *General Instructions.*

The greatest care should at all times be taken to maintain the proper position and balance of the body.

In the use of the sword at speed, the horseman should aid the impetus of the cut, and secure his own seat, by supporting the sway of his body with the leg opposite to the side on which he intends to cut or point. The lower down the grip can be taken, the better, taking care not to touch the horse with the spur. This rule is of greater consequence than appears at first sight; for unless it is understood and practised, a person may be a very good swordsman, and yet not capable of using his weapon either with effect against an opponent or with safety to himself. It is particularly applicable and necessary in pursuit over rough and varied ground. These observations equally apply to the use of the lance

S. 36. *Use of the Sword.*

Although a regular mode is laid down for drawing the sword, yet, in order to prepare the swordsman for any sudden attack of an enemy, he should occasionally practise, both on foot and on horseback, coming to the *Guard* immediately in any required direction, without going through the regular motions.

In all attacks, whether cuts or thrusts, the motion ought to increase in speed, the impetus being given at the last.

The sword exercise consists of four cuts or directions of the edge to each hand, and of the same number of guards or

defensive positions, and of points or thrusts ; and whatever may be the attack or defence, whether against cavalry or infantry, it can only be formed by having recourse to some of the above movements or a combination of them.

Detailed Directions.

In delivering a forward thrust, very little force is necessary when the horse is in quick motion, as the extension of the arm, with a good direction of the point, will be fully sufficient ; nor need a cut, under such circumstances, be strong, as the impetus of the horse will give it the necessary force. The drawing of the edge, when the horse is moving rapidly, can very frequently be applied with advantage, particularly where the point, by being given too soon, may not have taken effect ; in this case, by a quick turn of the wrist, the edge is drawn along the face of your opponent, or any part which more immediately comes in contact with it. The forcing also of the edge can be resorted to when very near and closely pressed by an adversary, by suddenly extending the arm, and directing the edge across the face, or where an opening is given ; in this case, however, the hand should not be carried more than absolutely requisite either to the right or left, or make too wide a movement, so as not to offer an equal chance to your opponent.

When sufficient space is allowed for choosing the point of attack, you should endeavour to take advantage of it, and should at all events avoid the attack being made on your left rear, when a change of position can alone bring you upon an equality with your opponent ; this may be done either by making a sudden halt, so as to allow him to pass, and then pressing upon his left rear ; or by turning quickly to the left about, and thereby having your right also opposed to his. Should you be prevented doing this, and he still keeps on your left, you must get as close as possible to him, for in his situation, by keeping at the proper distance from you, his cut will reach when yours will not, and you will be reduced to the defence alone.

In meeting your opponent on the left front, turn sharply to the left on your own ground, which brings you immediately with your sword-arm free, and at liberty to act upon his left; in meeting him upon the right front, press your horse quickly on, and by a sharp turn to the right, gain his left rear. If pursued, endeavour to keep your adversary on the right rear, as the distance will then be in your favour, and you may, by the rear cut and point, keep checking his advance with impunity. When attacked by more than one, you will naturally endeavour to keep them both either to the right or left; but where they have been enabled to place themselves on both sides, press close upon the left opponent, and endeavour to keep the right one at a distance.

The attack or defence against the lance must depend greatly upon the rider; for if the lancer is equally well-mounted, and skilful in the management of his horse, he will endeavour to keep at such distance as to be out of your reach, whilst he can easily make good his thrust, from the length of his lance; and he will very frequently succeed in directing his point at your horse, which, becoming unruly, will leave you exposed to the attack of your opponent. You must, therefore, invariably endeavour to gain his right rear, where he is less able to attack or defend; whereas if the attack is made upon his left rear, he has the advantage of resting his lance upon his bridle arm, and can lengthen or shorten his thrust with facility and quickness. If engaged on his left, the object must be to keep just out of distance of the lance; watching the opportunity to close either by having previously formed a defence, or by bearing the lance out of the line.

When opposed to Infantry, endeavour to meet an opponent on your right. As every guard parries the point of a sword, so will each defend against the point of a bayonet, but care must be taken that the "Fort" of your own weapon meets the "Feeble" of your opponent's; accordingly it is the bayonet which must be struck. Supposing the attack to be directed as usual, with the opponent's left shoulder advanced, and on

your right front, the most effectual defence will be the Third Guard followed by low Point.

In advancing against Infantry, the Third Guard on the Right or Fourth Guard on the Left leads well to the attack, and is ready for defence, or to take advantage of any opening. Should your opponent appear irresolute, or draw back his weapon, then, while passing, the Cut Three, or Point, may be given to advantage. The Cuts Three and Four on the Right or Left form a defence, as well as an attack, against Infantry ; and the smarter they are given, the more effectually they will protect you and cripple your opponent's position. The Point should be used chiefly in pursuit, and will be given with most advantage on your right, as from thence you can reach further, and are better prepared for defence.

S. 37. *Use of the Lance.*

The lancer must be thoroughly instructed and constantly practised in the use of his weapon, both in confined situations, as the mêlée, and in the single combat ; for this purpose the heads and posts afford good practice without the risk of accident, the butt of the lance being used to parry off the wooden arms, and the point to take off the rings and heads. Blunt lances are the best for this practice, until the men are expert, and the horses under perfect control.

A firm seat and light hand are even more indispensable to the lancer than to the swordsman, and his horse ought to be stout, active, well broken, and accustomed to disperse and attack independently.

It is good practice to let the men attack and defend themselves in circles, as they thereby acquire expertness in the use of their weapons and command over their horses. The attack and defence should be practised with blunt lances and sword sticks, both upon the right and left circle.

When ordered to disperse in pursuit at field days, lancers should perform the right attack of the first and second

divisions, circling their horses at a gallop to the right, and the left attack in circle to the left, taking care that the horses are not galloping false to either hand, and also causing them to change at the proper time. Swordsmen perform the pursuing practice.

TENT-PEGGING, &c.

S. 38. *Instructions for Tent-pegging, Lemon-cutting, and Tilting at Rings.*

The horses used for these practices will not be less than six years old and will be selected from the strong and active. Those of a nervous temperament will not be used.

The exercises are not to take place oftener than twice in each week, and no horse will be ridden more than four runs altogether on any day.

At all times an officer, or reliable non-commissioned officer, who is himself thoroughly well instructed, will be present and superintend the practice.

Only trained soldiers who are steady men and good riders will be permitted to practice.

They will first learn to ride with spear shafts without heads at the *Rings*, and afterwards at the *Pegs* with sharp spears. In riding at the *Pegs* the knuckles must be kept turned down, and the point of the spear held a little outwards, so that the butt end of the shaft may be recovered over the back, and not over the arm, which is liable to hurt the wrist.

They should at first be taught to move at a walk, then at a canter, and when they have become expert with their weapons, at the full speed of their horses.

The men will be instructed not to pull up their horses too suddenly after passing the peg.

They should be particularly instructed that, in taking the peg, speed and style will be taken into consideration in awarding prizes.

When cutting at the lemon, the chief object should be to cut with the edge of the sword. No good mark should be given to a man who merely knocks the lemon off the stick, or bruises it, and does not give it a clean cut.

TRAINING THE YOUNG HORSE.

S. 39. *The Cavesson.*

1. The cavesson should be placed about three inches above the nostrils; if higher, it would partly lose its power; if lower, it would affect his breathing.

2. The strap of the cavesson (which should act both as a nose-band and curb), placed under the snaffle, must not be buckled too tightly; the additional strap from check-piece to check-piece, under the jaw-bone, is to keep the cavesson back from his eyes. The preparations should be made by two men only, and no noise with whips should be made.

3. The first lesson to be taught a young horse is to go forward, and until he does this freely nothing else should be required of him.

S. 40. *Longeing.*

1. This lesson should be begun on a circle from 20 to 30 yards in diameter. As horses are usually fed, watered, saddled, and led on the near side, they are generally inclined to follow and lead better by the left rein than by the right. If, therefore, it should be found that a horse is less tractable on the off than on the near side, two lessons should be given on the right to one on the left. A young horse must not be supposed to be restive if he should hesitate, or stand still, when it is intended that he should move on; because this often happens from fear, or from

his not knowing what is required of him, and may be overcome by encouragement.

2. A man with a whip (with which the horse must not be struck at first) following at a distance, should show it now and then, when the horse seems to hang back; and he should strike the ground in rear of the horse, if he disregards the encouragement of the man who leads him. When this does not produce the effect, he may be lightly touched with the whip behind the girths.

3. After the horse has been led several times round the circle at a walk, the man holding the longeing rein should gently urge him to a trot; if the horse goes quietly, he gradually lengthens the longeing rein, so that the horse may scarcely feel it. He should continue to go round the circle at an active pace, nearly opposite the horse's shoulders, so as to keep him out and press him forward.

4. If the horse takes kindly to his lesson, the man holding the whip will be sufficient to keep him out to the circle, and up to his pace; and the man holding the cavesson may lengthen it by degrees, until the circle on which he himself moves becomes a small one, or until he has only to turn round on the same spot. Should the horse break his pace or plunge, the cavesson rein may be shaken, without jerking, which will bring him to a trot or walk again. The man holding the rein ought to have a light and easy hand. For the first two or three days the horse should not be urged too much.

5. Having practised the above lesson for a few days, the horse may be urged a little more in the trot, but the greatest care and attention are requisite to teach him to use his limbs without straining them. An accident may easily occur in this lesson by a sudden jerk, or by a too forcible pull of the cavesson.

6. After each lesson, which ought never to be so long as to fatigue the horse, he should be led into the centre of the circle, and placed straight upon all fours; he should then be caressed and a few oats may be given to him. The man holding the longeing rein should take it short in one hand, at the same time patting and rubbing the horse about the neck and head with the

other; he should then try with the right hand to bend the horse's head a little to the right; the bend ought to be in the very poll of the neck. This must be done very carefully, and by slow degrees; and, if repeated after each lesson, to the left as well as to the right, it will greatly assist the future instruction.

7. After the bending lesson the horse must be tried in reining back. The man who holds the cavesson, placing himself in front and facing the horse, should take the snaffle reins near the rings in both hands, and endeavour, by a gentle and alternate pressure of the bit against the bars of the horse's mouth, to make him go back a step or two, always moving him forward after reining him back. If he yields to the pressure of the bit, this will, at first, be sufficient.

S. 41. *Saddling a Young Horse.*

1. This should be done, in the first instance, in the manège, or longeing ground, and with the utmost caution. One man facing the horse, and taking the snaffle in both hands near the rings of the bit, should hold him while another places the saddle on his back, the girths and stirrups being laid upon it. The girths are then to be carefully let down.

2. Having placed the saddle, if the horse shows no uneasiness or resistance, the man takes the girths very gently, and draws them on each strap, loosely at first, so as merely to prevent the saddle from falling off; he afterwards tightens them by degrees, by drawing them on the straps alternately, a single hole at a time. Great care must be taken that the girths be not drawn so tightly as to occasion uneasiness to the horse.

S. 42. *The Cross.*

1. In order to bring the horse to lift his forehand and carry his head properly in the longe, and to give him a feeling of the snaffle before he is mounted, the cross may be used (particularly with young and weak horses). It must be buckled on, with or without the saddle, with the same care as in saddling. There

should be three buckles at different heights on each upper arm of the cross. The cross reins should be fastened, one end to the ring of the snaffle, on each side, and the other ends to the buckles of the cross; to the highest for those horses whose heads want raising; to the middle one for those whose heads are naturally well placed; to the lowest for those who carry their heads too high.

2. The reins should be quite easy at first and should be shortened by degrees, and with great care not to gag or confine the horse too much, or produce a constant and dead bearing on the snaffle. To produce the bend, the rein on the hand to which the horse is being longed may be one or two holes shorter than the other. The reins must be altered when the horse is longed to the other hand.

3. Great care must be taken not to press the horse too suddenly up to the snaffle by showing the whip; it must be done by slow degrees and with great gentleness.

S. 43. *Mounting.*

1. When the young horse becomes used to the saddle, and the instructor finds him sufficiently prepared by the exercises of the longe, he is to be mounted, in doing which great caution and quietness are necessary; and two men should assist the person who is to mount.

2. One with the cavesson, facing the horse, is to hold him with the bridle, keeping his head rather high, and engaging his attention; the other, on the off side, should take hold of the stirrup-leather near the saddle-tree, and by pressing upon it with the elbow at the proper moment, keep the saddle even while the man is mounting.

When mounting without the cavesson, the man who assists should stand on the off side, holding the bridoon reins with the right hand near the rings, the left hand holding the stirrup leather as above.

As soon as the man who is mounting puts his leg over the saddle, the man who assists should let his hand slide down the

L. of C.

leather and give the rider his stirrup. A timid horse will nearly always take fright at this stage, if the rider attempts to take his stirrup without assistance.

3. The above method should also be observed when assisting to mount a restive horse that has been bitted. The man who assists should not take hold of the bit on any account, as the least touch may throw the horse back on his haunches and cause him to fall over on his rider.

The same instructions apply to the duties of an orderly who may have been holding the horse of an officer.*

4. The man who is to mount (who should at first be without spurs) must proceed with great gentleness, frequently commencing, stopping, and beginning again, until, by soothing and caressing the horse between each attempt, he finally seats himself and takes the snaffle reins in each hand, lightly feeling the horse's mouth.

5. If the horse has been perfectly quiet during the above operation, he may be carefully led forward and encouraged ; the man who leads the horse by the cavesson rein should fix his eyes attentively upon him ; and if he perceives any disposition to kick or plunge, must try by gently shaking the cavesson, to keep his head up and engage his attention. The horse should then be led round the circle at the walk, to the right and left, halted in the centre, caressed, and a few oats given to him.

6. The man should dismount with the same care and attention, and once more mount and dismount ; making much of the horse afterwards. He should then bend his head to the right and left, make him step back a pace or two, and dismiss him.

7. This lesson should be continued for a few days, until the horse performs it readily and allows the man to mount and dismount without the least difficulty. When the horse becomes familiar with the circle, and is accustomed, by the gentle application of the aids, to go forward, to bend and turn to the right and left, to rein back, and to halt, the cavesson may be taken off, and

* All recruits are to be taught how to assist in mounting.

he may be ridden round the manège, or longeing ground, a man on foot occasionally assisting.

8. The horse must be confirmed in the walk and trot round the manège. The quicker paces grow out of each other. When the horse walks freely, he is to be pressed into a trot, gentle at first, supported by a light and lively hand ; then into a full trot, whenever the instructor shall think him sufficiently practised in the former lessons.

9. All aids, with a young horse, particularly in his early lessons, ought to be as simple as possible, so as to be easily understood by him. The young horse is now supposed to be, in point of instruction, on an equality with the most tractable of the remount horses when they first join a regiment.

TRAINING HORSES WHICH HAVE BEEN ALREADY RIDDEN.

S. 44. *Formation of Paces, etc.*

1. Remount horses, which have been already ridden, should at first be mounted by practised horsemen, with stripped saddles and snaffle bridles.

2. Whenever a horse makes resistance, the saddlery should be carefully examined, in order to find out whether any part of it hurts or tickles him, and whether his awkwardness in performing his lesson proceeds from ill temper, weakness of limb, or constitution, or from previous ill treatment ; and it must never be forgotten that it is necessary, at first, to proceed with horses by slow motions and degrees, in order to give them time to understand what is required of them.

3. Patience and skill hardly ever fail in making a vicious horse tractable ; mere force, or want of skill and coolness, only confirms him in bad tricks.

4. The dispositions and capacities of horses are various, and must be carefully studied ; the timid must be encouraged, the impetuous and restive subdued by patience and firmness.

5. The horse should now be ridden at a walk once round the manège, making the corners angular, not round ; he may then be made to turn to the right and to the left across the manège, and to change by inclining, ending with going round the manège ; he should then be placed square on his legs, caressed, and dismissed.

6. These movements, repeated and varied, will be sufficient for a few days, and will prepare the horse for similar lessons at the trot.

7. The snaffle reins must be held in the hands separately, and somewhat asunder, in order to raise the horse's head and neck ; this will also tend to give freedom to the shoulders, and to collect the haunches under him.

8. The horse must be kept attentive by a light feeling of the bridle, and by a gentle pressure of the calves of the legs, so as to teach him to obey the mouth-piece. The pace must be decided and animated, but not fast.

9. The horse having gone through a part of his lesson at the walk, to both hands, may be urged to the trot, repeating the turnings, and inclining to the right and left, as in the walk, but varying their order. After the trot he is again walked, halted, made to bend to the right and left, to rein back, to advance, and to halt ; he may then be caressed and dismissed.

10. The trot is a lesson of great importance in the proper training of a young horse, and pains should be taken to confirm him in the free and extended practice of it.

11. The trot must be moderate at first, and the step true and regular. As the horse improves, he should be made to trot out, occasionally restrained by the bridle, and urged by the pressure of the legs, so as to lighten the shoulders and throw the weight more on the haunches.

12. In all lessons, whether at the walk or trot, the pace of the horse must be firm, regular, and even ; he should be made to look to the inside, and bend, in some degree, to the hand to which he works ; this is done by shortening the inward rein to the degree required.

13. The halt is a material part of the lesson, and may be repeated advantageously if done with judgment.

14. After the halt it is proper to rein back. It must be done with great caution, and very slowly; the rider must not at first raise his hands, as it would throw too much weight on the quarters, for which the horse must be prepared by degrees. In advancing, after reining back, the horse's head must be kept up; he must be pressed forward in order to make him bring his haunches under him.

15. Chastisement may occasionally be necessary, but it need very seldom be resorted to with horses placed in skilful hands; it should never be used except with perfect coolness and deliberation, and not until the instructor has satisfied himself that the horse knows what is required of him, and that no natural defect, or other cause, prevents his ready obedience; nor until the more gentle methods have failed.

16. The bend proper for a young horse begins from the poll of the neck, not from the part near the shoulder, so that the rider can see the horse's inward eye, and the forehead and nose of the horse are nearly up and down, in a perpendicular line. If the nose were drawn more towards the breast it would confine the motion of the shoulders, and produce other bad consequences.

17. The horse must not be kept long on the bend. The upper joint of the neck, being unaccustomed to so great a turn, must be brought to the bend by degrees. It is equally necessary that the neck should be unbent very gradually and carefully; if this were to be done suddenly, or roughly, the horse would probably resist the bend the next time, or would not yield to it without difficulty.

18. As soon as a horse bends kindly to the inward rein he will make much progress in the pliancy of every part of the body in each succeeding lesson.

19. The *Shoulder in* helps to supple the shoulders, and to dispose the horse to draw his haunches under him.

20. A horse that is dull and heavy in this lesson must not b hurried; by repeatedly turning him into file, and then resuming

the *Shoulder in*, he will gradually learn what is required, and obey more readily.

21. When the horse has been duly prepared by the previous lessons of *Shoulder in*, he may commence the half passage from the incline. In this exercise he should only be required to half cross his legs, placing one foot before the other, advancing at the same time that he moves sideways; it is an introduction to the full passage, in which one leg crosses over the other, and the movement is sideways only.

22. The motion of the horse's legs in *Passaging* is the same as that in *Shoulder in*, but the head is turned differently. In the *Shoulder in*, the horse looks the contrary way to that in which he moves; in the *Passage*, he looks the way he is going, and follows the leading rein, his shoulders preceding his haunches, the body placed obliquely on the lines on which his legs are moving.

23. When the horse has been taught to trot freely, and has become familiar with the lessons of *Shoulder in* and *Passaging*, he may be trained to the canter and gallop.

24. As far as relates to the general action of the horse, the canter is the same as the gallop, whether it be the short collected step of the manège, or the extended pace of the charge; there is this difference, however, which distinguishes them, namely, that in the canter, the horse's forehand is raised, his whole figure is collected and shortened, his neck bowed and his head drawn in, and he moves by the spring of his haunches. In the early lessons, the canter of a young horse is generally long and loose, but by practice and good riding it will gradually become short and collected. While at the trot (which should be short and collected), the horse should be raised in front at a corner and pressed into the canter at the turn; he will seldom fail, if urged at the right moment with a stronger pressure of the outward leg and a double feeling of the inward rein, to lead with the inward leg. This, like other lessons, must proceed by degrees. At first, cantering round the manège will be sufficient. In the change by inclining, when arrived within a few paces of the opposite line of the manège, the young horse must be pulled up and

brought to the trot, and the canter resumed at the next corner, when, if the aids be well-timed, he will lead with the inward leg; the horse should afterwards be made to halt, to rein back, and to move forward; he may then be caressed and dismounted.

25. When the horse is confirmed in the canter, and has been taught to obey the aids in *Shoulder in* and *Passaging*, he may with ease and safety be made to turn across the manège at the canter, without altering his pace.

26. The horse must then be taught to circle, beginning at a walk; the circle being at first large, and made smaller by degrees.

27. When the horse has a firm, even, and *cadenced* pace, at a walk in circle, he may be pressed into a gentle trot, and then into a canter, which is to be shortened and collected by degrees, though never so much as to affect the spring and freedom of his action.

28. *Cadenced* means that the time passed in making each step shall be exactly equal. The rider will get a habit of judging correctly of the cadence by repeating to himself 1 for the first step, 2 for the second, 1 for the third, 2 for the fourth, and so on, 1 2, 1 2, 1 2, for the length of the manège, or round the circle; if the periods between 1 and 2 are unequal, the pace is not well cadenced.

29. In the circle, the hind feet should follow the track of the fore feet; for if the horse's haunches are thrown within the circle too much, his hind quarters will be strained; if his haunches are thrown without the circle, his shoulder will be strained.

The greatest care must be taken to avoid both these faults.

S. 45. *Bitting.*

1. The horse being obedient to and well bent and collected with the snaffle, he may next be bitted; but it is to be understood that horses are never to be bitted until they have become thoroughly confirmed in all their paces with the bridoon.

2. A formed horse should be trained to be ridden on the bit entirely; but on first bitting, the bridoon is to be used in aid, and to bring him to the bit by degrees. Very light-mouthed horses may require to be ridden on all four reins on all occasions.

3. At first the bit-rein is to be held loosely without feeling the mouth,—the bridoon only to be used as a snaffle. Afterwards the bridoon-rein is to be taken through the left hand into the right, and, by feeling the bit gently with the bridle hand, the horse is to be made to step back, and encouraged when he obeys.

4. Next, in *Shoulder in*, the inward bit-rein may be felt until he yields to it and bends.

5. Then the horse, being halted by the wall, may be bent by a light play with the inward bit-rein.

6. At length the bit alone may be used; but the right hand should for some time be ready to assist, by supporting with the bridoon-rein, if the horse is uneasy with the bit.

7. Where a horse continues uneasy and fretful with the bit for a long time, the mouth-piece is most likely ill suited to him, and should, if possible, be changed; or it may proceed from his not having been sufficiently prepared with the snaffle; in which case the snaffle should be resumed, and the bitting put off a little longer. Each regiment should have a few bits with different and easy mouth-pieces and curbs, for the purpose of being used for any young horses which have delicate feelings in the bars and under jaw-bone.

S. 46. *Accoutrements and Appointments.*

1. When the young horse has become used to the bit, he must gradually be accustomed to be ridden with the sword and other accoutrements and saddlery, &c., in drill and marching order.

2. Great caution must be used in putting on the appointments; this should first be done a few times in the manège, the weight of the necessaries being added by degrees.

S. 47. *Leaping.*

1. At first a young horse should be led over the bar lying on the ground until he becomes used to it, afterwards he should be ridden over low hurdles, and subsequently practised over the various obstacles included in the "*Heads and Posts*" course.

2. Great care must be taken to insure quiet and collected jumping, to prevent violence and rushing, and to preserve confidence.

S. 48. *Practice of Paces for Manœuvre.*

As soon as the young horses have finished their training, they should be practised according to the directions laid down in "Troop Drill." A good-sized open manège will occasionally afford the instructor the opportunity of practising these paces, but it is most essential that the men and horses should be trained to maintain the regular rate of trot and gallop for considerable distances in every variety of ground.

S. 49. *Of Sights and Sounds.*

1. Young horses must be gradually accustomed in the manège to drawing and returning swords, the sword and lance exercises, drums, and firing, both mounted and dismounted.

2. The horse, being naturally afraid of these things, must not have his terror added to by harsh treatment. Patience and gentleness being used, and the horse finding that these sights and sounds do him no injury, and are not accompanied by chastisement, he will soon become familiarised with them, and see and hear them without alarm. One minute's loss of temper on the part of the rider may throw the horse back for a month.

3. In all practice with arms, at first, suddenness of movement should be avoided, and everything be done smoothly and quietly.

4. To accustom the horse to firing, a blank cartridge should be fired at the end of each lesson for some days, and a little corn given to him after it; and then firing daily, and advancing him into the smoke, will generally succeed in preparing him for firing in the ride.

S. 50. *Teaching Horses to Swim.*

1. In order that cavalry may be able to swim rivers, &c. advantage should be taken of every opportunity for teaching the

men to swim, since a man who is himself unable to do so may, through fear, paralyze the movement of a horse that can swim well. All that is required to teach the men is water 4 or 5 feet deep, and a few poles and web girths. Good swimmers are to be found in almost every body of troops, and they should be utilised as instructors.

2. In order to accustom horses to take to water freely, they should at first be ridden across still water. To this end, if rivers or canals with sound bottoms are not available, a stream should, if possible, be dammed, provided with a good gravelly bottom, and arranged in regularly marked off fords of 2, 3, 4, and 4½ feet depth. A horse that will freely allow himself to be ridden over a ford 4 feet deep, is easily taught to swim; but the first instruction in swimming must be carried out without riders.

3. The swimming exercises should begin in a narrow stream with only a feeble current, as few untrained horses will cross a rapid stream without trying to turn. Both banks of the stream should be level and firm for a hundred yards or so, so that horses that swim very obliquely across can land easily. The water should be so deep that the horses cannot touch the bottom with their hind legs, as, if they acquire that habit, they will always try to feel the bottom, and, on attempting to cross deep water, will probably sink, to the great danger of their riders.

4. For the first lessons a boat should be provided, manned by sufficient oarsmen to ensure its moving faster than a horse can swim; and it should not be so light that a horse can pull it round if he turns back. Only one horse at a time is to be taught from the same boat.

5. A few horses and men should, if possible, be sent to the opposite bank, and placed where the horses under instruction can see them.

6. The bit having been removed, the horse is to be led by the bridoon, bare-backed, as far as possible into the water. The longe will then be attached to the right bridoon ring, and the other end passed through the left ring and held by a man in the

boat, the boat being kept 6 or 7 yards from the horse (so that he may not be frightened by the oars), and in front of him up stream. Spare rein should be ready to let out if necessary. If the horse attempts to turn back on getting out of his depth, as generally happens, the oarsmen must resist by pulling vigorously according to the directions of the instructor; but when he goes in the right direction, the latter should regulate the pace of the boat so that the longe shall always be slack.

On the horse reaching the opposite bank, one of the men on that side will lead him out of the water, detach the longe and walk him about.

7. When 5 or 6 horses have been thus passed over, only the horse that has shown most dislike for the water should be passed back across the stream; the rest should be led into the water and driven across, and they will generally be found willing to follow the horse on the longe.

8. After some days' practice in this manner, the horses may be driven across both ways without the longe, and when they can be freely passed over in this way, they may safely be ridden bare-backed on the return passage. The longe must never be attached to a horse when he is mounted, since, if his rider were to get separated from him, he could not be picked up by the boat without letting go the longe, in which case the horse would run the risk of being entangled with it.

9. To swim with a horse, the rider should lean well forward as soon as the horse loses his legs, stretch his arms out forward, holding the mane with one hand about two hand's breadths from the withers; if the rider is not a swimmer he should merely try to lie as flat as possible on the water, and bring his legs close together over the horse's back. The horse may, to a great extent be guided by splashing water against his head.

Horses, as a rule, swim obliquely to the stream, and many, until thoroughly accustomed to swimming, hold themselves perpendicularly to the current directly they lose their legs, and it is at that moment that a rider is apt to lose his head, especially if riding bare-backed.

As soon as the horse gets his footing, on reaching the opposite bank the rider replaces himself on his back.

10. There is no danger in guiding a horse with the bridoon as long as there is no weight on his back ; but, if a man retains his seat whilst the horse is swimming, he must be careful not to touch the reins, as, if he does so, he will overbalance the horse owing to the weight behind.

11. Good swimmers should be exercised occasionally on saddled horses. This lesson should be given individually, the horses selected being such as swim perfectly calmly, keeping a great part of their bodies well out of the water, and their backs nearly horizontal.

12. With the saddle, the rider is much more firmly seated on the horse in the water than when the latter is bare-backed, but the horse swims much more heavily owing to the weight behind.

13. During the above exercises squadron commanders will carefully note those men who show aptitude for the work either as swimmers or in rowing.

In the same way horses which take readily to the water and swim with ease are to be noted. It is desirable that in each squadron at least one officer, two non-commissioned officers and eight men should be able to swim an ordinary river with their horses, arms and necessary equipment (*i.e.* saddles and blankets).

14. Proficiency in the above exercise having been attained the whole squadron will be practised to cross rivers with the assistance of boats or rafts on the following principles :—

(*a.*) Before reaching the river parties will be sent ahead to collect as many boats as can be found, of all sorts and kinds at the point selected for the crossing. Strong punts with high sides are the most suitable.

(*b.*) The second in command of the squadron will also be sent ahead to the point of crossing together with the pioneers and squadron quartermaster-serjeant, to prepare the approaches to and exit from the river. The nature of its banks, rapidity of current, number of boats available and attendant circumstances will indicate whether more than one passage can be utilized simul-

taneously for crossing. The second in command will examine the boats available and decide roughly upon the number of men and kits which each can hold at a time, and allot them to the several passages. On the arrival of the squadron he will execute the orders of the squadron commander on the landing side.

(*c.*) On reaching the river bank the squadron commander will tell off the troops, the passages selected for crossing and the directions as to the order in which they will cross.

(*d.*) Troops will be placed at right angles to the course of the stream. Right flank 10 to 20 yards from the bank, formed in single rank.

One non-commissioned officer and one private is to be told off to each boat.

Each section is to be told off thus :—

(*a.*) One man to take charge of kit.

(*b.*) One or two men to hold horses.

(*c.*) Remainder to load kits.

The men will be dismounted and horses unsaddled, except head collar and bridoon rein.

The saddlery and equipment will be packed in horse blankets, and placed one horse's length in front of the line of horses.

Kits will be loaded in boats by sections in order commencing from the right of the troop.

The boat having been loaded with the number of kits ordered, a number of men (usually four or six), will be directed to enter the boats, and lead their horses to each side alternately one behind the other. Horses should not follow too close.

(*e.*) With trained horses a boat can be propelled across a stream much more rapidly than by rowing. The guiding of the boats when pulled by horses is a somewhat delicate operation. Non-commissioned officers and selected men must be carefully trained for this duty.

(*f.*) The above operations will be carried out in absolute silence, only those in command of detachments being permitted to give directions. Men must not stand up in the boat after the horses have begun to swim. If a horse attempt to climb

into the boat before getting out of his depth his head must be pushed down into the water.

(*g.*) There is no difficulty in landing at any spot where the banks are sloping.

Kits will be unloaded and laid out by sections in the same order as previous to loading. Horses when landed will be placed by sections in rear of the line of kits. The rapidity with which a stream is crossed depends greatly on the method in which kits are loaded and unloaded, much attention must, therefore, be paid to this.

(*h.*) It is improbable that all the horses of a troop will be required to propel the boats. Those not required can be swum across the river barebacked. It is not, however, necessary that each horse should have a rider. After a little practice horses will follow a few leaders over in a drove, especially when they see a few comrades or hear a trumpet sound on the further bank.

INSTRUCTION BY SQUADRON OFFICERS.

S. 51. *Duties of Officers with regard to Instruction.*

Squadron officers are expected by study and practice to qualify themselves to give lessons personally to their squadrons on the foregoing and following exercises. By frequent attendance at the riding school and manège they must keep themselves informed of the progress made by their recruits and young horses in their training. Whenever recruits or remounts are shown up by the adjutant or riding master to the commanding officer for dismissal, the squadron commander will invariably be present. It must be understood that he has a perfect right to bring to notice any man or horse he does not consider fully trained, but being once accepted the whole subsequent training and instruction of the man and horse is in his hands. They can never be sent back to the adjutant or riding master.

PART II.—INSTRUCTION OF THE CAVALRY SOLDIER ON FOOT.

Recruit or Squad Drill.

GENERAL RULES.

I.

Directions for Instructors.—1. The instructors must be clear, firm, and concise in giving their directions. They must allow for the different capacities of the recruits, and be patient where endeavour and good-will are apparent.

2. The unnecessary repetition of general directions and explanations, after they have been understood, should be avoided.

3. When first taught their positions, recruits should be properly placed by the instructor ; when more advanced they should not be touched, but taught to correct themselves when admonished.

4. Recruits should, as a general rule, fully comprehend one part of their drill before they proceed to another, but they should not be kept too long at any particular exercise. Provided too many things are not attempted at the same time, more rapid progress will be made by varying the exercises than by repeating one movement until it is perfectly acquired. On this principle marching without arms should be intermixed with the carbine, sword and lance instruction.

II.

Duration of Drills, &c.—Short and frequent drills are preferable to long lessons, which exhaust the attention both of the instructor and recruit. The recruits should be moved on progressively from

squad to squad according to their merit, so that the quick intelligent soldier may not be kept back by men of inferior capacity. To arrive at the first squad should be made an object of ambition to the young soldier.

III.

Mutual Instruction.—A system of mutual instruction will be practised amongst recruits ; it gives the young soldier additional interest in his drill, and prepares him for the duties of a non-commissioned officer. Recruits will, in turn, be called out to put their squad through the exercises which have been practised, and encouraged to correct any error they may observe.

IV.

Words of Command.—1. Every command must be distinctly pronounced, and sufficiently loud to be heard by all concerned.

2. Every command that consists of one word must be preceded be a caution ; the caution, or cautionary part of a command, must by given slowly and distinctly ; the last or executive part, which, in general, should consist of only one word or syllable, must be given sharply and quickly ; as *Troop—Halt : Half Right—Turn.* A pause of slow time will invariably be made between the caution, or cautionary part of a command, and the executive word.

3. The words given in the *Extension Motions* and *Balance Step* must be given sharply, or slowly and smoothly, as the nature of the motion may require.

4. When the last word of a caution is the signal for any preparatory movement, it will be given as an executive word, and separated from the rest of the command by a pause of slow time ; thus (S. 27), *Right—Incline. Quick—March,* as though there were two separate commands, each with its caution and executive word.

5. When the men are in motion, executive words must be completed as they are commencing the pace which will bring them to the spot on which the command has to be executed.

The cautionary part of the word must, therefore, be commenced accordingly.

6. Young officers and non-commissioned officers, will frequently be practised in giving words of command. It will be found a good plan to practise them in giving the words in succession, the time and pitch being first given by the instructor.

SQUAD DRILL, WITH INTERVALS.

1. A few men will be placed in line (that is, side by side) at arm's length apart; while so formed, they will be termed a "Squad with Intervals."

2. If necessary, the squad may consist of two such lines of men; in which case the men in the second line will cover the intervals between the men in the first, so that in marching they may take their own points.

3. Recruits will in the first instance be placed by the instructor without any dressing; when they have learned to dress they should be taught to fall in as above described, and then to dress and to correct their intervals; after they have been instructed, singly if possible, as far as S. 22, they may fall in in single rank, and then, if required to drill with intervals, be moved as directed in S. 23.

S. 1. Position of the Soldier at Attention.

The exact squareness of the shoulders and body to the front is the first principle of the position of a soldier. The heels must be in line and closed; the knees straight; the toes turned out, so that the feet may form an angle of 45 degrees; the arms hanging easily from the shoulder, the hand open, thumb to the front and close to the forefinger, fingers lightly touching the thigh; the hips rather drawn back, and the breast advanced,

but without constraint; the body straight and inclining forward, so that the weight of it may bear principally on the fore part of the feet; the head erect, but not thrown back, the chin slightly drawn in, and the eyes looking straight to the front.

When the soldier falls in for instruction, he will be taught to place himself in the position above described.

S. 2. Standing at Ease.

Soldiers will first be taught the motions of standing at ease by numbers, then judging the time.

1. *By Numbers.*

Caution,—"*Stand at Ease by Numbers.*"

*One.** On the word *One*, raise the arms from the elbows, left hand in front of the centre of the body, as high as the waist, palm upwards; the right hand as high as the right breast, palm to the left front; both thumbs separated from the fingers, and the elbows close to the sides.

Two. On the word *Two*, strike the palm of the right hand on that of the left, drop the arms to their full extent, keeping the hands together, and passing the right hand over the back of the left, which must be turned to the front as they fall; at the same time draw back the right foot six inches, and slightly bend the left knee.

When the motions are completed, the arms must hang loosely and easily, the fingers pointing towards the ground, the right thumb lightly held between the thumb and palm of the left hand; the body must incline forward, the weight being on the right leg, and the whole attitude without constraint.

---

* The commands to be given by the instructor are printed in the margin in italics.

Squad, Attention. — On the word *Attention*, spring up to the position described in S. 1.

2. *Judging the Time.*

Caution,—"*Stand at Ease, judging the Time.*"

Stand at—Ease. — On the word *Ease*, go through the motions described in the standing at ease by numbers, distinctly but smartly, and without any pause between them.

Squad, Attention. — As before.

If the command *Stand at—Ease* is followed by the word *Stand Easy*, the men will be permitted to move their limbs, but without quitting their ground, so that on coming to *Attention* no one shall have materially lost his dressing in line. If men are required to keep their dressing accurately, they should be cautioned not to move their left feet.

On the word *Squad* being given to men standing easy, every soldier will at once assume the position of standing at ease.

S. 3. *Dressing a Squad with Intervals.*

Eyes—Right. — On the words *Eyes—Right*, the eyes of all except the man on the right will be directed to the right, the head being turned in that direction, so that the left eye is in line with the centre of the body.

Open to Full Interval—Dress. — On the word *Dress*, each soldier, except the right-hand man, will, when he gets sufficient interval, extend his right arm, palm of the hand upwards, nails touching the shoulder of the man on his right; at the same time he will take up his dressing in line by moving, with short quick steps, till he is just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him; care must be taken that he carries his body backward or forward with the feet, without leaning forward, keeping his shoulders perfectly square in their original position.

Eyes — Front. On the words *Eyes—Front*, the head and eyes will be turned to the front, the arm dropped, and the position of *Attention* resumed.

Dressing by the left will be practised in like manner.

S. 4. *Turnings by Numbers.*—Plate VII.

In going through the turnings, the left heel must never quit the ground; but the soldier must turn on it as on a pivot, the right foot being drawn back to turn the body to the right, and carried forward to turn it to the left: the body must incline forward, the knees being kept straight.

In the first of all the following motions, the foot is to be carried back, or brought forward, without a jerk, the movement being from the hip; so that the body may be kept perfectly steady until it commences to turn.

Right— Turn. On the word *Turn*, place the hollow of the right foot smartly against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

Two. On the word *Two*, raise the toes, and turn a quarter circle to the right on both heels, which must be pressed together.

Left— Turn. On the word *Turn*, place the right heel against the hollow of the left foot, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

Two. On the word *Two*, raise the toes, and turn a quarter circle to the left on both heels, which must be pressed together.

Right about— Turn. On the word *Turn*, place the ball of the right toe against the left heel, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

Two. On the word *Two*, raise the toes, and turn to the right about on both heels.

Three. On the word *Three*, bring the right foot smartly back in a line with the left.

PLATE VII.—TURNINGS.

Fig. 1.

Right—Turn. *Two.*

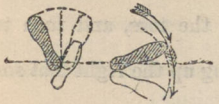


Fig. 2.

Two. *Left—Turn.*

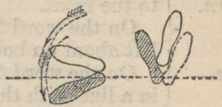


Fig. 3.

Right about—Turn. *Two.* *Three.*

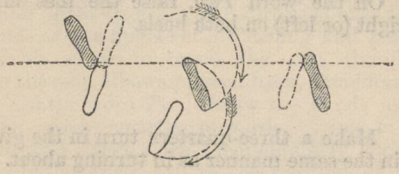


Fig. 4.

Half Right—Turn. *Two.*

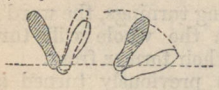


Fig. 5.

Two. *Half Left—Turn.*

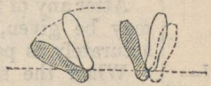
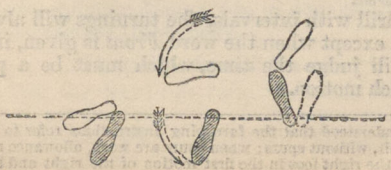


Fig. 6.

Three. *Two.* *Three Quarters Left about—Turn.*



Left about—Turn. On the word *Turn*, place the right heel against the ball of the left toe, keeping the shoulders square to the front.

Two. On the word *Two*, raise the toes, and turn to the left about on both heels.

Three. On the word *Three*, bring up the right foot smartly in a line with the left.

Half-Right (or Left)—Turn. On the word *Turn*, draw back (or advance) the right foot one inch.

Two. On the word *Two*, raise the toes and turn half right (or left) on both heels.

Three-quarters-Right (or Left) about—Turn. Two. Three. Make a three-quarters turn in the given direction in the same manner as in turning about.

Squad—Front. After any of the foregoing turnings, the word *Front* may be given, on which the whole will turn, as accurately as possible, to their former front.

When the soldier has previously turned about, he will always front by the right about. But if he has turned to the three-quarters right about, he will front by the three-quarters left about; and *vice versâ*.

At squad drill with intervals, the turnings will always be done by numbers, except when the word *Front* is given, in which case the soldier will judge the time, which must be a pause of slow time after each motion.

It will be understood that the foregoing instructions refer to the preliminary drill of the recruit, without spurs; when spurs are worn, allowance must be made for them in placing the right foot in the first motion of the right and left turn, and the right heel will be closed to the left on the completion of the second motion.

S. 5. Extension Motions.

In order to open his chest, and give freedom to his muscles, the soldier will be practised in the following extension motions.

Men formed in squads with intervals will be turned a half turn to the right before commencing these practices.

Caution,—*First Practice.*

One. On the word *One*, bring the hands, at the full extent of the arms, to the front, close to the body, knuckles downwards, till the fingers meet at the points; then raise them in a circular direction over the head, the ends of the fingers still touching and pointing downwards so as to touch the cap, thumbs pointing to the rear, elbows pressed back, shoulders kept down.

Two. On the word *Two*, throw the hands up, extending the arms smartly upwards, palms of the hands inwards; then force them obliquely back, and gradually let them fall to the position of "Attention," elevating the neck and chest as much as possible.

Three. On the word *Three*, raise the arms outwards from the sides without bending the elbow, pressing the shoulders back, until the hands meet above the head, palms to the front, fingers pointing upwards, thumbs locked, left thumb in front.

Four. On the word *Four*, bend over until the hands touch the feet, keeping the arms and knees straight; after a slight pause, raise the body gradually, bring the arms to the sides, and resume the position of "Attention."

N.B.—The foregoing motions are to be done slowly, so that the muscles may be exerted throughout.

Caution,—*Second Practice.*

One. On the word *One*, raise the hands in front of the body, at the full extent of the arms, and in line with the mouth, palms meeting but without noise, thumbs close to the forefingers.

Two. { On the word *Two*, separate the hands smartly, throwing them well back, slanting downwards; at the same time raise the body on the fore part of the feet.

One. { On the word *One*, bring the arms forward to the
Two. { position above described, and so on.

Three. { On the word *Three*, smartly resume the position of "Attention."

In this practice, the second motion may be continued without repeating the words *One*, *Two*, by giving the order *Continue the Motions;* the squad will then take the time from the right-hand man: on the word *Steady*, the men will remain at the second position, and on the word *Three* they will resume the position of "Attention."

Caution,—*Third Practice.*

The squad will make a second half turn to the right before commencing the third practice.

One. { On the word *One*, raise the hands, with the fists clenched, in front of the body, at the full extent of the arms, and in line with the mouth, thumbs upwards, fingers touching.

Two. { On the word *Two*, separate the hands smartly, throwing the arms back in line with the shoulders, back of the hand downwards.

Three. { On the word *Three*, swing the arms round as quickly as possible from front to rear.

Steady.—On the word *Steady*, resume the second position.

Four. { On the word *Four*, let the arms fall smartly to the position of "Attention."

S. 6. *Saluting.*

Soldiers will be practised in saluting, first by numbers, then judging the time.

1. Saluting to the Front.

Caution,—*Right-hand Salute to the Front, by Numbers.*

One. On the word *One*, bring the right hand smartly, and with a circular motion, to the head, palm to the front, point of the forefinger one inch above the centre of the right eye, thumb close to the forefinger; elbow in line, and square, with the shoulder.

Two. On the word *Two*, let the arm fall smartly to the side.

Caution,—*Right-hand Salute to the Front, judging the Time.*

Right-hand—Salute. On the word *Salute*, go through the two motions described in *One* and *Two*.

Soldiers will be taught to salute with the left hand in like manner.

2. Saluting to the Side.

Soldiers will next be taught to salute to the side by numbers, and then judging the time; being turned to the right for the right-hand salute, and to the left for the left-hand salute.

The cautions will be *Right-* (or *Left-*) *hand Salute to the Side, by Numbers* (or *judging the Time*).

The motions will be the same as in saluting to the front, with the addition that as the hand is brought to the salute the head will be slightly turned to the opposite flank, and as the arm is lowered the head will be turned to the front. In saluting to the left the right eye should be in line with the centre of the body, and *vice versâ*.

A soldier, if standing still when an officer approaches, will turn towards him and come to attention, saluting with the right hand when the officer is 3 paces from him, and lowering his hand after a pause of 6 paces of quick time; if sitting, he will rise, stand at attention, and salute. When a soldier approaches an officer to address him, he will salute with the right hand, making a pause of slow time between the first and second motions of the salute, and will halt at 2 paces from him. When a soldier

is about to pass an officer, he will salute (with the hand further from the officer) at the 3rd pace before reaching him, and will lower his hand at the 3rd pace after passing him. Recruits should be practised in marching, two or three together, round the drill ground, saluting points being placed on either side of them, care being taken that they always salute with the hand further from the point saluted: when several men are together, the man nearest to that point will give the time.

The methods of saluting when marching with arms are described in S. 33.

MARCHING.

S. 7. Length of Pace.

The length of a pace is 30 inches, except in "stepping out," when it is 33 inches, and in "stepping short," when it is 21.

In "double time" the length of a pace is 33 inches.

The length of the side pace is 12 inches.

S. 8. Cadence.

In slow time, 75 paces are taken in a minute. In quick time, 120 paces, making 100 yards in a minute, and 3 miles 720 yards in an hour. In double time, 165 paces, making 151 yards 9 inches in a minute, and 5 miles 275 yards in an hour.

S. 9. The Plummet and Pace Stick.

In order to ascertain whether the time is correct, a pendulum or a plummet must be used. When no pendulum is at hand, a plummet can readily be made by suspending a spherical ball of metal by a string, the length of which, measured from the point of suspension to the centre of the ball, must be as follows for the different degrees of march:—

	Inches.	Hundredths.
Slow time	24	96
Quick	9	80
Double	5	18

Thus arranged, the plummet will swing the exact time required. String being liable to stretch, the correctness of the plummet should frequently be tested by reference to a watch.

The length of the pace in marching will be corrected with the pace stick, the accuracy of which should occasionally be tested by measurement.

S. 10. *Position in Marching.*

In marching, the soldier must maintain the correct position of the head and body. He must be well balanced on his limbs. His arms and hands will swing naturally from the shoulder. The movement of the leg must spring from the haunch, and be free and natural.

Both knees must be kept straight, except while the leg is being carried from the rear to the front, when the knee must necessarily be a little bent, to enable the foot to clear the ground. The foot must be carried straight to the front, and, without being drawn back, placed softly on the ground, so as not to jerk or shake the body; the toes turned out as when halted.

Although several men may be drilled together in a squad with intervals, they must act independently and precisely as if they were being instructed singly. Each soldier must be taught to march in a straight line, and to take a correct pace, both as regards length and cadence, without reference to the other men of the squad.

Before the squad is put in motion, the instructor will take care that the men are square individually and in correct line with each other. Each soldier must be taught to take up a straight line to his front, by first looking down the centre of his body between his feet, then fixing his eyes upon some object on the ground straight to his front at a distance of about 100 yards; he will then observe some nearer point in the same straight line, such as a stone, tuft of grass, or other object, about 50 yards distant, and in marching will keep these two objects in line. Care must be taken that this is done by the movement of the eyes only, and that the head is still kept erect.

S. 11. *Balance Step.*

The object of the balance step is to teach the soldier the free movement of his legs, preserving at the same time perfect squareness of shoulders, and steadiness of body; no labour must be spared to attain this object, which forms the very foundation of correct marching. The instructor must be careful that the soldier keeps his body well forward, and his shoulders perfectly square, during these motions.

1. *Without advancing.*

Caution,—*Balance Step, commencing with the Left Foot.*

Front. On the word *Front*, the left foot will be raised from the ground by a slight bend of the knee, and carried gently to the front, without a jerk, the knee being gradually straightened as the foot is carried forward; the foot to be turned out at the same angle as when halted, the sole parallel to and clear of the ground, the heel just in advance of the line of the right toe.

Rear. On the word *Rear*, given when the body is steady, the left foot will be brought gently back without a jerk, till the toe is in line with the right heel, clear of the ground; the left knee to be a little bent.

Front. Rear. When steady, the words *Front* and *Rear* will be repeated several times, and the motions performed as above described.

Halt. On the word *Halt*, which should always be given when the moving foot is in rear, that foot will be brought to the ground in a line with the other.

The instructor will afterwards make the soldier balance upon the left foot, carrying the right foot forward and backward.

Standing on one leg and swinging the other backward and forward without constraint, is an excellent practice.

2. *Advancing.*

Caution,—*Balance Step, advancing on the word "Forward."*

Front. On the word *Front*, the left foot will be carried to the front, as described in 1.

Forward. As soon as the men are steady in the above position, the word *Forward* will be given, on which the left foot will be brought to the ground at 30 inches distance from heel to heel, toes turned out at the same angle as when halted; and the right foot will immediately be raised and held extended to the rear, toe in line with the left heel, the right knee to be slightly bent. Great care must be taken that the toes remain throughout at the proper angle; that the inside of the heel is placed on the imaginary straight line that passes through the points on which the soldier is marching; that the body accompanies the leg, and remains straight, but inclining forward; that the head is erect, and turned neither to the right nor left.

Front. On the word *Front*, the right foot will be brought forward, and so on, alternately.

Halt. On the word *Halt*, which should always be given when the moving foot is to the front, that foot will complete its pace, and the rear foot will be brought up in line with it.

S. 12. *The Slow March.*

The three most important objects in this part of the drill are cadence, length of pace, and direction.

Slow—March. On the word *March*, the left foot will be carried 30 inches to the front, as directed in S. 11; the right foot will then be carried forward in like manner, and so on, alternately.

The soldier must be thoroughly instructed in this step as an essential preparation for arriving at accuracy in the paces of greater celerity.

S. 13. *The Halt.*

Squad—Halt. On the word *Halt*, the moving foot will complete its pace, and the rear foot will be brought up in line with it.

It is a general rule in foot drill, that after the word *Halt*, the men, whatever their position, will stand perfectly steady, unless ordered to *Dress*.

S. 14. *Stepping Out.*

Step—Out. When marching in slow time, on the words *Step—Out*, the soldier will lengthen his pace to 33 inches by leaning forward a little, but without altering the cadence.

This step is used when a slight increase of speed, without an alteration of cadence, is required; on the words *Slow—Step*, the pace of 30 inches will be resumed.

S. 15. *Stepping Short.*

Step—Short. On the words *Step—Short*, the foot advancing will finish its pace, and afterwards each soldier will take paces of 21 inches until the word *Forward* is given, when the usual pace of 30 inches will be resumed.

This step is used when a slight check is required.

S. 16. *Marking Time.*

Mark—Time. On the words *Mark—Time*, the foot then advancing will complete its pace, after which the cadence will be continued, without advancing, by raising each foot alternately about three inches from the ground, keeping the body steady; on the word *Forward*, the usual pace of 30 inches will be resumed.

From the halt the word of command will be *Slow. Mark—Time.*

S. 17. *Stepping Back.*

Step Back. Slow— March. Halt. In stepping back, the soldier will take the pace of 30 inches straight to the rear, keeping his shoulders square to the front and his body erect. On the word *Halt*, the foot in front will be brought back square with the other.

A few paces only of the step back can be necessary at a time.

S. 18. *Changing Feet.*

Change —Feet. To change feet in marching, the advancing foot will complete its pace, and the ball of the rear foot will be brought up quickly to the heel of the advanced one, which will instantly make another step forward, so that the cadence will not be lost, two successive steps being taken with the same foot.

In "Changing Feet" the instructor should be careful to time his word of command correctly. For instance, if it is wished to change step on the right foot, the word *Change* should be given as the left foot comes to the ground, and the word *Feet* as the right foot completes its pace. Each man will then change at the same time.

This may be required when any part of a regiment, or a single soldier, is stepping with a different foot from the rest.

S. 19. *The Quick March.*

The cadence of the slow march having become perfectly familiar to the soldier, he will be taught to march in quick time.

Quick— March. On the word *March*, the squad will step off together with the left foot, observing the rules given in S. 10.

When a soldier is perfectly grounded in marching in quick time, all the alterations of step, marking time, and changing feet, laid down for the slow march will be practised in quick time.

S. 20. *The Double March.*

Double—March. On the word *March*, the men will step off together with the left foot; at the same time raising their hands as high as the waist, carrying back the elbows and clenching the fists, the flat part of the arm to the side; the head to be kept erect, and the shoulders square to the front; the knees being more bent, and the body more advanced, than in the other marches. The instructor will be careful to habituate the soldier to the pace of 33 inches.

Squad—Halt. As in S. 13, at the same time dropping the hands and extending the fingers.

The soldier will be taught to mark time in the double cadence in the same manner as in the slow and quick.

S. 21. *The Side or Closing Step.*

Soldiers will first be taught the side step by numbers, then judging the time.

1. *By Numbers.*

Caution,—*Right Close, by Numbers.*

One. On the word *One*, the right foot will be carried 12 inches to the right, the shoulders and face being kept perfectly square to the front, and the knees straight.

Two. On the word *Two*, the left foot will be closed smartly to the right foot, heels touching.

One. The word *One* being repeated, the right foot will be carried on 12 inches as before described, and so on.

Squad—Halt. When the word *Halt* is given, the left foot will be closed to the right, as on the word *Two*.

2. *Judging the Time.*

Caution,—*Right Close, judging the Time.*

Right Close. — *Quick—March.* On the word *March*, each man will carry his right foot 12 inches direct to the right, and instantly close his left foot to it, thus completing the pace; he will proceed to take the next pace in the same manner, and so on, each step being taken in quick time; shoulders to be kept square and knees not bent, unless on rough or broken ground. The direction must be kept in a straight line to the flank.

Squad—Halt. On the word *Halt*, the men will complete the pace they are taking, and remain steady.

Soldiers will be practised in closing to the left by Numbers, and judging the Time, in like manner.

Soldiers will also be practised in taking any given number of paces to either flank, and then halting without word of command; the command to be given thus, *Three paces Right Close, Quick—March.*

S. 22. *Turning when on the March.*

Soldiers will be practised in turning to the right or left, in making a half turn to the right or left, and in turning to the right or left about, on the march.

Right—Turn. 1. *Turning to the Right, and then to the Front.*—On the word *Turn*, which should be given as the left foot is coming to the ground, each soldier will turn in the named direction, and move on at once, without checking his pace.

Front—Turn. On the word *Turn*, which should be given as the right foot is coming to the ground, each soldier will turn again to the front, and move on without checking his pace.

Left—Turn. / *Front—Turn.*

2. *Turning to the Left and then to the Front.*—Soldiers will turn to the left in like manner, the word *Turn* being given as the right foot is coming to the ground; after which they will turn to the front, the word *Turn* being given as the left foot is coming to the ground.

A soldier will always turn to the right on the left foot; and to the left on the right foot. If the word *Turn* is not given as the proper foot is coming to the ground, the soldier will move on one pace more and then turn.

3. After turning either to the right or to the left, if any opening out and loss of distance have taken place between the men during the march, the instructor, before giving the words *Front—Turn*, will give the command *Mark—Time in Front*, on which the leading man will mark time, and the remainder will close up to their proper distance from the men in front of them, each in succession, as he gets his proper distance, marking time until the command *Front—Turn* is given, upon which all turn to the front and step forward with the ordinary full pace. This correction of distance after marching to a flank is necessary in order to ensure the intervals between the men being correct when the squad is formed again in line by being turned to the front.

4. *Making a Half Turn to the Right, or Left.*—Soldiers will also be practised in making a half turn to the right or left, and then moving on (without checking their pace) in a diagonal direction, taking up fresh points, at once, to march on.

5. *Turning to the Right, or Left, about.*—Soldiers will also be taught to turn about on the march, which must be done by each man on his own ground, in three paces, without losing the cadence. Having completed the turn about, the soldier will at once move forward, the fourth pace being a full pace as before.

SQUAD DRILL, IN SINGLE RANK AT CLOSE FILES.

S. 23. *Formation of the Squad in Single Rank.*

At this stage of the drill, a few soldiers will be formed in single rank at close files, that is, nearly touching each other, each man being allowed a lateral space of 24 inches.

The right-hand or left-hand man being first placed, the remainder will fall in, one after the other, in line with and closing lightly towards him, turning the elbow slightly outwards. Soldiers must be carefully instructed in the meaning of keeping "the touch," as, in this formation, it is the principal guide when marching. Each man, when properly in line, should be able to feel his right or left hand man at the elbow; the body being preserved in the position of attention.

When a squad in single rank is required to drill with intervals, the instructor will order the men to number off from the right, and will direct the odd numbers to take one pace forward, the even numbers to step back one pace.

From the Right—Number. The right hand man will tell off "one," the next "two," and soon, in a loud and even tone of voice, each man turning his head towards the next man while telling off, and at once turning it to the front again.

Even Numbers—Proof. The even numbers will smartly stretch out their right hands at the full extent of the arm, palm of the hand to the left, fingers extended and close together, thumb close to the forefinger and in line with the top of the shoulder.

As you were. The even numbers cut their hands smartly to the side, bending the elbow in doing so.

The odd numbers will be proved in a similar manner.

S. 24. *Dressing when Halted.*

Soldiers will first be taught to dress in succession, then together.

When ordered to dress on foot, each soldier will glance towards the flank to which he is ordered to dress, with a slight turn of

the head: he must carry his body backward or forward with the feet, moving to his dressing with short quick steps; bending backward or forward must be avoided; his shoulders must be kept perfectly square, and the position of attention retained throughout.

Two Men on the right, a pace and a half to the front. Quick—March

1. *Dressing up* (or *back*) *in succession.*—Preparatory to teaching a squad to dress by the right, the instructor will order the two men on the right to take a pace and a half to the front.

In succession, Eyes Right—Dress up.

The instructor, having ascertained that the two men are in line, will order his squad to dress up man by man. The third man from the right will thereupon take one pace to his front with the left foot, and shuffle up into line in the manner already described; as soon as he is steady, the next man will proceed in like manner, and so on to the left. The faces of the men, not their breasts or feet, are the line of dressing. Each man is to be able just to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him.

Eyes—Front.

When the instructor is satisfied that the line is correct, he will give the words *Eyes—Front*, on which the men will turn their heads and eyes to the front.

In similar manner the squad must be taught to dress up, man by man, by the left; also to dress back, man by man, by the right or left.

2. *Dressing up* (or *back*) *together.*—The men must next be taught to dress forward and backward, taking the pace together, but shuffling up or back in succession, the same points being given as in dressing man by man. The words of command will be *Squad, Eyes Right* (or *Left*)*—Dress up* (or *Dress Back*).

3. *Correction of Dressing.*—When soldiers are on the alignment they have to occupy, and their dressing is simply to be corrected, the words *Eyes Right* (*Left* or *Centre*)*—Dress*, or after the word *Halt*, the word *Dress* only, will be given, on which they will

shuffle up or back to their places successively, commencing with the second man from the point from which they are ordered to dress, or were dressing during the march.

It will be found most useful to accustom men to dress on an alignment not parallel or perpendicular, but oblique, to any well-defined adjacent line, such as the side of a square parade ground.

S. 25. *Turnings.*

The soldier will next practise in single rank, judging the time, the turnings he has been taught by numbers.

Men are never unnecessarily to stand turned to the rear.

S. 26. *Marching in Line.*

The soldier will next practise in single rank the different marches and varieties of step which he has learned singly, or in squad with intervals; the same general rules being observed.

Before a squad is ordered to march, the directing point must be indicated by the caution *By the Right*, *By the Left*, or *By the Centre*. With an even number of men, the man on the left of the right half squad will be the centre of the squad. It will be explained to the men that the direction and the pace of the squad depend upon the movements of the man at the directing point.

During the march, the soldier is to look straight before him and the head is not to be turned towards either flank; the dressing is to be kept merely by the touch, by taking the proper pace, and by an occasional glance of the eyes towards the man at the directing point, as a check on the pace; the shoulders are to be kept perfectly square, and the body steady.

The squad will first be taught to march straight to the front, by the right, centre, and left, in slow and quick time; it will then be practised in all the varieties of step, and in marking time, in both cadences; after which it will be exercised in double time. Squads of any size should as a general rule dress by the centre.

The soldier will be practised in changing the pace, without

halting, from slow to quick, and from quick to slow time; also from quick to double, and from double to quick. Before the executive word *Slow*, *Quick*, or *Double* the caution *Break into Slow* (*Quick* or *Double*) *Time* should be given. In breaking from double time into quick, on the word *Quick*, the arms will be dropped and the fingers extended.

The instructor should occasionally remain halted in rear of the man on the directing flank, in order to ascertain if the squad is marching straight to its front.

When a soldier finds himself a little behind, or before, the other men of his squad, he must be taught to recover his place in the rank gradually, and not to jump or rush to it, which would make him unsteady and spoil the marching of the rest of the squad.

S. 27. *Inclining.*

The incline or diagonal march will first be taught commencing from the halt, after which the squad when marching in line will be practised in moving diagonally to either flank, by making a half turn in the direction required.

It is only during squad drill that the men will make a half turn on receiving the word *Incline* while at the halt, it being necessary for instructional purposes that each man should be correctly placed in the diagonal direction before moving off. On all other occasions the turn will be made on the command *March*, as in mounted drill.

Right—Incline.
Quick—March.

1. *From the Halt.*—On the word *Incline*, the men will make a half turn to the right, and on the word *March*, each man will step off and move directly to his new front, no longer keeping the touch. The right-hand man will direct, and must therefore pay particular attention to his direction and pace. Each of the other men will glance occasionally towards the right, and will retain his relative position with respect to the next man on that side, keeping his right shoulder behind that man's left shoulder.

Squad, Halt—Front. On the word *Halt*, the squad will halt; and on the word *Front*, it will turn to its original front.

If the diagonal march has been properly performed, the squad when halted and fronted will be found to be on a line parallel to its original position.

Right—Incline. Forward. 2. *On the March.*—When the squad is marching to the front, and is required to move in a diagonal direction to the right, the word *Right—Incline* will be given, upon which the men will turn half right and move diagonally in that direction, as described from the halt; when it is intended to resume the original direction, the word *Forward* will be given, on which every man will turn to his front and move forward without checking his pace.

In like manner, the diagonal march will be practised to the left, from the halt and on the march.

The diagonal march will also be practised in quick and double time.

S. 28. *Wheeling as a Squad on a Fixed Pivot.*

Soldiers will first be taught to wheel from the halt, after which they will be instructed in changing the direction of the squad while on the march.

It will be explained to the squad that, in wheeling, the flank which is brought forward is termed the wheeling or outward flank, the other the standing, inward, or pivot flank; thus in wheeling to the right, the man on the left of the squad is called the outward flank man, the man on the right the pivot man.

Right Wheel. 1. *From the Halt.*—During the wheel dressing is to the wheeling flank, touch of files is preserved from the standing flank. On the word *March*, the pivot man marks time, turning gradually with his rank. The remainder step together, the whole glancing to the wheeling flank, except the outward flank man,

Slow—March. who looks to his rank, regulates the pace at which the wheel is made, stepping the usual pace of 30 inches, and conducts the flank so as to avoid crowding and increase of intervals in the rank; the other men regulate their length of pace according to their distance from the pivot flank, and all resist pressure from the outward flank, but give way to pressure from the inward flank.

Squad—Halt. Dress. On the word *Halt*, which may be given at any period of the wheel, the men will halt and turn their eyes to the front; on the word *Dress*, they will take up their dressing by the centre, or point to which they dressed before wheeling, as described in S. 24, para. 3.

Eyes—Front. On the word *Front*, the men will turn their heads and eyes to the front.

A squad will wheel to the left in like manner.

Nothing will sooner tend to enable the recruit to acquire the length of step proportioned to his distance from the pivot, than continuing the wheel without halting for several revolutions of the circle.

When men are required to wheel to the rear of the alignment they occupy, they can be turned about, and then wheeled as above directed, receiving the words *Halt*, *Front*, *Dress*, followed by *Eyes—Front*, when in position.

After wheeling has been taught in slow time, it will be practised in quick and double time.

Right—Wheel. 2. *On the March.*—On the word *Wheel*, the men will wheel to the right as explained above.

Forward. On the word *Forward*, the whole will turn their eyes to the front and step off at a full pace.

The instructor will give the word *Forward* when he sees that the men are commencing the pace that will bring the front of the squad perpendicular to the direction in which he intends it to move: this may be done at any degree of the circle.

In like manner, the squad will be taught to change direction to the left.

S. 29. *Marching as in File.*

Soldiers will first be taught to commence marching as in file from the halt; after which they will be taught, when marching in line, to turn to either flank as in file.

Right (or Left)—Turn.

1. *From the Halt.*—Soldiers when standing as in file, must be instructed how to cover each other exactly. The head of the man immediately before each soldier, when he is correctly covered, will conceal the heads of all the others in his front.

The strictest observance of all the rules for marching is particularly necessary when marching as in file.

Slow—March.

On the word *March*, the whole will step off together, at a full pace, and will so continue to step without increasing or diminishing the distance between each other.* No looking down, nor leaning back, is to be allowed. The leading man is to be directed to march straight forward on some distant objects, the remainder of the men covering correctly during the march.

Squad, Halt—Front.

On the words *Halt—Front*, the soldiers will halt and turn to their original front, and, if the marching has been properly performed, their dressing will be found correct.

If any opening out and loss of distance between the men have taken place during the march, the instructor, before giving the words *Squad, Halt—Front*, will give the command *Mark Time in Front*, on which the leading man will mark time, and the remainder will close up to their proper distance from the men in front of them.

Right—Turn.

2. *On the March.*—On the word *Turn* the soldier will turn to the right, and move on as in file.

* The foregoing instructions refer to the preliminary drill of the recruit, without spurs; when marching with spurs, the distance will be one pace.

Front—Turn. The original direction is resumed by giving the word *Front—Turn*, on which the soldier will turn to the front, and then move on steadily in line.

In like manner soldiers will be taught to turn to the left from line and march as in file, and, when marching as in file, to turn again to the front.

Marching as in file will also be practised in quick time, but never in double time.

S. 30. *Wheeling as in File.*

Right (or *Left*)—*Wheel*, or *Right-about* (or *Left-about*)—*Wheel.* The squad, when marching as in single file, will be taught to change its direction, by wheeling to the right or to the left, or to the right (or left) about. The leading man will move round a quarter, or half, of the circumference of a circle having a radius of 3½ feet, completing the wheel in two or four paces; the other men following on his footsteps in succession, without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the cadence, but lengthening the pace a little with the outer foot, as they wheel.

S. 31. *Men Marching as in File forming Squad.*

In squad drill, as in mounted drill, all formations are made on the move, whether they be executed from the halt or while marching. If it be desired to perform them to the halt, as will always be done in the earliest instructions, the caution "*To the Halt*" must be prefixed to the command for the formation.

The instructor will explain that when marching as in file to the right, the left is termed the inner flank, being the nearer to the original front; and the right is called the outer flank; and *vice versâ* when in file to the left. He will further explain that when a rank marching as in file receives the command *Halt—*

Front or *Front—Turn*, each man turns to the inner flank, that is, to the original front, as previously directed; but if the order be given to *form* to the front, the formation is made in the direction in which the men are facing.

1. Turning to the Inner Flank.

(The squad standing or marching as in file to the right.)

Front.
Front—Turn (or *Halt—Front*).
1. *From the Halt.*
2. *On the March.*
} As directed in S. 29.

2. Forming to the Front.

(The squad standing or marching as in file to the right.)

To the Halt—Form Squad. Quick—March.

1. *From the Halt.*—The leading man will advance 6 paces and halt; the remainder will with the first step make a half turn to the left, and each man, glancing to the right, will move at the usual length of pace by the shortest road to his place in the new line, taking up his dressing by the right as he arrives in line with the leading man.

Eyes—Front.

As soon as the squad is formed, the word *Eyes—Front* will be given, when heads and eyes will be turned to the front.

Form Squad, Rear—Double.

2. *On the March, without halting, in Double Time.*—The leading man will continue moving on; the remainder will make a half turn to the left, and each man, glancing to the right, will double by the shortest road to his place in the new line, taking up his dressing by the right and breaking into quick time as he arrives in line with the leading man.

Eyes—Centre (or *Left*). If the dressing is not to continue to the right, the word *Eyes—Centre* (or *Left*) will be given as soon as the squad is formed.

Form Squad. Mark Time—in Front. 3. *On the March, without halting, in Quick Time.*—The leading man will mark time; the remainder will make a half turn to the left and form upon him as previously directed, taking up the dressing by the right and marking time as they arrive in line with him.

Forward, Eyes—Centre (or *Left*). As soon as the squad is formed, the word "*Forward* will be given, followed by *Eyes—Centre* (or *Left*) if the dressing is not to continue to the right.

To the Halt—Form Squad. 4. *On the March, to the Halt.*—The leading man will advance 6 paces and halt; the remainder will make a half turn to the left and form upon him as previously directed.

Eyes—Front. As soon as the squad is formed, the word *Eyes—Front* will be given, when heads and eyes will be turned to the front.

3. Forming to the Outer Flank.

(The squad standing or marching as in file to the right.)

To the Halt—To the Outer Flank, Right Form Squad. Quick—March. *From the Halt.*—The leading man will wheel to the right, advance 6 paces and halt; the remainder will move straight on, along the rear of those already formed, and as each man arrives nearly opposite his place of formation he will wheel to the right and form on the left of those already formed, taking up the dressing by the right.

Eyes—Front. } As soon as the squad is formed.

This formation will also be practised on the march.

4. FORMING TO THE REAR.

As in mounted drill.

This formation will also be practised on the march.

In like manner the squad will be taught, when marching as in file to the left, to form to the front, to the outer flank (left), and to the left about.

S. 32. *The Side or Closing Step.*

The side or closing step will now be practised at close files, the men judging the time, as laid down on page 131.

S. 33. *Marching with Arms, and Paying Compliments.*

Recruits having been thoroughly instructed in the preliminary drills, will next be taught the carbine, sword, and lance exercises.

Squads with arms will be practised in the different marches, and variations of step, described in the foregoing sections. During these practices great attention must be paid to the position of the recruit.

When men parade with carbines, they fall in standing at ease, at the *Order*. Before the men are put in motion, carbines will

be brought to the *Shoulder*. On the command "*Quick March*," the men *Support* arms at the first pace without any special order; carbines are always at the *Support* when the men are moving in quick time, and at the *Shoulder* whenever they are halted. (In marching past, however, carbines are to be at the *Shoulder* on the passing line; and while merely wheeling by fours from the halt without further advancing, while inclining, and in turning about, carbines are also to be kept at the *Shoulder*.) In double time carbines are kept at the *Trail*, and the arm that does not carry the weapon is not raised.

When men parade with lances, they fall in standing at ease at the *Order*. On the command "*Quick* (or *Slow*) *March*," and on wheeling by fours from the halt, the men *Shoulder* lances at the first pace, without any special order; lances are always at the shoulder when the men are moving, and brought to the *Order* whenever they are halted.

Paying Compliments with Arms.

When a soldier with a carbine passes or addresses an officer, he will do so at the *Shoulder*.

When with a sword drawn, he will *Carry swords* on passing or addressing an officer.

When with a sword undrawn and not hooked up, he will always salute with the right hand, the sword scabbard being held in the left hand, irrespective of the side on which the officer may be passing.

When a soldier with a lance passes an officer, he will do so at the *Shoulder*; but if he halts to address him, he will come to the *Carry*.

In all cases of saluting while passing an officer, the head will be turned in his direction.

The compliments paid by sentries are described on page 437.

TROOP DRILL AND PREPARATORY INSTRUCTION FOR MOUNTED SQUADRON DRILL.

S. 34. *Formation in Two Ranks.*

1. The recruits, when thoroughly grounded in the foregoing instructions, will be practised in two ranks, as a troop, the rear rank being formed at 3 paces from the front rank, measuring from heel to heel, each man covering correctly and looking at the middle of the neck of his front rank man, to which point his attention must be directed in all marches and wheeling. The two men, of the front and rear rank, together form "a File."

The troop will be told off by fours from the right or left, and a steady soldier will be selected as centre guide, and posted in the front rank as the left hand man of the right half of the troop. The instructor will place one of his assistants as troop leader, 3 paces in front of the centre guide.

The centre guide will be cautioned to keep 3 paces exactly in rear of the troop leader (except in wheeling, as explained below), and his coverer must be directed to keep the same distance from the centre guide.

2. It will be explained to the men that the dressing, when formed in troop, is by the centre and is kept in the same way as when in squad (S. 26), except that each man's position at the halt, and his direction and pace when marching, depend upon the troop leader, and that each man of the front rank must keep the proper distance in rear of him. Rear rank men are to get their dressing by keeping the proper distance in rear of their file leaders; glancing occasionally towards the centre as a check on their position or pace.

3. The incline in two ranks is executed in the same manner as described previously, but the rear rank men must be cautioned to preserve their relative positions with regard to their own front rank men, so that they may cover correctly at the proper distance when fronted. The troop leader will observe that the man at the directing point moves in the proper direction,

will be careful to preserve his own relative position with regard to him, and will see that the centre guide retains his proper position, so that the front of the troop shall be parallel to its original alignment.

4. All wheels of the troop, both from the halt and on the move, are made on a fixed pivot, and executed by the front rank in the same manner as previously described. Rear rank men must be instructed not only to keep their proper distance from their front rank men, but also, by a combination of the incline and side step, to follow and cover them exactly, so that when the command *Halt* or *Forward* is given, they may be in their proper relative positions.

5. In file marching in two ranks, both ranks being turned to the right or left, the rear rank men must look to and regulate themselves by their front rank men, preserving the proper interval from them, and the distances must be accurately kept. If, when marching in file, the troop receives the command "*Head, Right* (or *Left*) *Wheel*," the pivot flank man of each file in succession wheels on a moving pivot, as described at p. 140, the wheeling flank men lengthening the pace.

6. The instructions in movements by fours will be carried out in accordance with directions for mounted formations.

S. 35. *Inspection and Formation of the Troop and Squadron.*

1. The troop falls in by sections in double rank as when mounted, standing at ease (from the *Order*, if armed with lances or carbines).

NOTE.—When troops parade on foot with carbines or lances, officers, and non-commissioned officers not carrying the carbine or lance, fall in with swords drawn, without any word of command.

"*Attention.*"—Carbines and lances remain at the *Order*.

"*Shoulder—Arms*" (with carbines).

2. The inspecting officer will then inspect the troop to see that the appointments, clothing, &c., are clean and in good order.

"*For Inspection, Port—Arms.*" When at the *Port*, the breech will be opened and the small of the butt grasped with the right hand.

The inspecting officer will go down the ranks to see that the block is free from rust, and otherwise clean; also, if necessary, to see that it is free in its action.

"*Examine—Arms.*" The carbine will be brought to the *Ready* (1st and 2nd motions) by both ranks, with the muzzle so inclined as to enable the inspecting officer to look through the barrel to see that it is clean and free from rust.

The soldier, when the officer passes the man next to him, will close the breech by easing springs as directed in the third motion of the *Present*, order arms, and stand at ease.

"*Attention.*"
"*Shoulder—Arms.*" } (with carbines).

3. The troop is then told off by fours.

"*From the right* (or *left*) *tell off—by Fours.*" In telling off from the right, the men tell off "one," "two," "three," "four," in succession; in telling off from the left, they tell off "four," "three," "two," "one," and so on.

"*Flanks of fours—Proof.*" Flanks of fours are to be complete files. "*As you were.*"

"*Even numbers—Proof.*" "*As you were.*"

"*Centre guide—Proof.*" "*As you were.*"

"*Fours—right.*" "*Fours—Right.*"

"*Guides going to the rear—Proof.*" "*As you were.*"

"*Fours—about.*"

4. The squadron is formed exactly as when mounted.

The posts of officers and others in squadron are described on page 197.

S. 36. *Dismissal off Foot Parade.*

1. With carbines.

"*Right—Turn.*" "*Dis—miss.*" — Take a side pace outwards by ranks, at the same time bringing the carbine to the *Port*. After a pause, break off, and at once bring the carbine to the *Shoulder*.

2. With lances.

Right—Turn." "*Dis—miss.*" — Take a side pace outwards by ranks, at the same time passing the lance smartly from the right to the left hand, the left hand meeting the lance in line with the mouth, arm close to the body, elbow down, lance upright, with the butt level with the point of the elbow. After a pause, break off, and at once lower the left hand, pass the lance to the right hand and bring it to the shoulder.

3. With swords.

"*Return—Swords.*" "*Right—Turn.*" "*Dis—miss.*" — Take a side pace outwards by ranks. After a pause, break off.

4. Without arms.

"*Right—Turn.*"
"*Dis—miss.*" As after returning swords.

When there is only one rank, it will act as a front rank.

In turning in a guard or piquet, the same mode is to be observed.

S. 37. *Sword Exercise.*

Introductory Remarks.

The following instructions are laid down as the surest and quickest mode of forming swordsmen; but drill instructors are to understand that when recruits have completed their preparatory and drill practices, without and with the sword, they need not be required to remember the precise order in which they are here given; nor need they repeat them, if sufficiently competent to go through the Review Exercises effectively. They ought, however, to be able to give each cut, guard, and point separately, or such of them combined as the drill instructor may require.

SWORD POSITION DRILL AND BALANCE MOTIONS.

Before proceeding to the following drill, the recruit should have been practised in the Extension Motions described in S. 5. The squad will be formed at open files or extended intervals (2 yards).

First Position in Three Motions.

One.—Move the hands smartly to the rear, the left grasping the right arm just above the elbow, and the right supporting the left arm under the elbow.

Two.—Turn half left on the heels, so that the back of the left heel touches the inside of the right, the head retaining its position to the front.

Three.—Bring the right heel before the left, the feet at right angles, the right foot pointing to the front, and the weight of the body resting on the left leg.

Second Position in Two Motions.

One.—Bend the knees gradually, keeping them as much apart

as possible, without raising the heels or changing the erect position of the body.

Two.—Step out smartly with the right foot about 18 inches in line with the left heel, the weight of the body remaining on the left leg, the right knee easy and flexible.

Balance Motions.

One.—Move the right foot about eight inches to the rear of the left heel, the toe lightly touching the ground, with the heel perpendicular to it, keeping the knees well apart.

Two.—Raise the body gradually by extending the left leg.

Three.—Bend the left knee, resuming the position previous to the *Second Motion.*

Four.—Advance the right leg, give a smart beat with the foot, and resume the *Second Position*, from which the *Balance Motions* commenced.

First Position.—Extending both knees, bring the right heel back to the left.

Third Position in Two Motions.

One.—Incline the right side to the front, so that the shoulder and knee are perpendicular to the point of the foot, keeping the body erect.

Two.—Step out smartly to the front, about 36 inches, the knee perpendicular to the instep; the left knee and foot kept straight and firm, the heels in a line, the body upright, and the shoulders square to the left.

Extension Motions.

One.—Bring the arms to the front of the body, with the hands closed and the knuckles uppermost, touching each other below the lower button of the jacket: raise them gradually until the wrists, by bearing inwards, touch the breast, the elbows being kept up; then, by forcing back the shoulders, the hands will be drawn apart, and the motion is completed by sinking the elbows, and smartly extending the arms and fingers in a diagonal line,

with the right wrist as high as the head, the shoulders kept down, and the thumbs inclined to the right.

For beginners, this motion may be divided by giving the word *Prepare* for the first part, and remaining perfectly steady, when the hands are brought to the breast, ready to separate; then giving the word *One* for the motion to be completed.

Two.—Raise the body by extending the right leg.

Three.—Bend the right knee, and advance the body so as to resume the *First Motion.*

First Position.—Spring up with the arms to the rear, and the right heel close to the left, which forms the *First Position*, as before described.

Front.—Come smartly to the position of *Attention*; bringing the hands and feet, in one motion, to their proper places.

In the foregoing instructions, the positions and movements preparatory to using the sword have been explained, giving a separate word of command for each motion respectively. The same positions must now be gone through, naming only (in the word of command) the position required, in order to practise the recruit in changing the positions readily, without losing his balance, and in quick time,—distinguishing them by the word of command; *First*, *Second*, and *Third.*

Positions.

First.—Raising the arms to the rear, and bringing the right heel to the front, come at once to the *First Position.*

Second.—Come to *Second Position.*

First „ *First Position.*
Third „ *Third Position.*
First „ *First Position.*
Second „ *Second Position.*
Third „ *Third Position.*
Second „ *Second Position.*

Single Attack.—Raise the right foot and beat it smartly on the ground.

Double Attack.—Raise the right foot as before, and beat it

twice on the ground—first with the heel, then with the flat of the foot.

Advance.—Move forward the right foot about six inches, and place it smartly on the ground ; then bring up the left foot lightly about the same distance.

Single Attack.—As before.

Retire.—Move the left foot lightly to the rear about six inches, the weight and balance of the body being, and continuing to rest, upon it ; then move the right foot back the same distance, and place it smartly on the ground.

Double Attack.—As before.

Front.—Resume position of *Attention.*

The object of the preceding positions and movements is to give a free use of the limbs preparatory to using the sword.

The Instructor should prove the firmness of the position by bearing equally and firmly upon the shoulders of the recruit during the changes in forming the *Positions* and *Balance Motions* ; by taking hold of his right wrist with both hands (when in the first position of the *Extension Motions*), and bearing upon it, in the direction of the left leg, upon the line of which the right arm should be, if properly placed ; and by making him also in each position move the fore part of the right foot up and down, without its motion affecting the body, which must be generally balanced, and rest upon the left leg, thereby giving greater flexibility to the right leg in moving forward to gain distance upon an adversary—or *vice versâ*, in retiring from his reach. No precise length can be assigned in moving the right leg to the front in the *Third Position*, as it depends upon the length and stride of the person ; but it should not be beyond what may allow of his returning to the *First* or *Second Position* with quickness and perfect facility.

When this section is practised as a drill for the limbs only, it should be performed with the left shoulder and left foot to the front, as well as with the right.

PREPARATORY DRILL ON FOOT.

The squad will be formed up at extended intervals (two yards) *Standing at Ease*, the sword hanging forward by the slings, the shoe of the scabbard resting on the ground close to the left foot and just in front of the heel, the palm of the left hand resting on the top of the hilt, the right arm hanging by the side, the right foot drawn back six inches, the left knee slightly bent.

"*Attention.*"—Bring the sword upright by the side, the shoe of the scabbard resting on the ground as before, the left arm extended, the hand round the scabbard, thumb in front, fingers in rear; at the same time bring the right foot smartly up in line with the left, and brace both knees.

"*Quick March.*"—Raise the sword smartly with the left hand at the first pace, without stooping or disturbing the position of the body, and grasp the scabbard at the point where the sword balances when held at an angle of 45°, the fingers round the scabbard, the thumb along the edge,* the arm fully extended, the hilt touching the back part of the arm.

"*Halt.*"—Lower the sword to the ground, as in the position of *Attention.*

"*Draw Swords.*"—The sword is drawn in three motions. (1) Raise the scabbard until the little finger of the left hand is in line with the elbow, grasping the back (for officers' swords, upper) ring with the thumb and forefinger, the remaining fingers closed in the hand, the thick part of the fore-arm against the side; at the same time pass the right hand smartly across the body to the sword knot, place it on the wrist, give it two turns inwards to secure it, and as the handle is grasped draw out the blade slowly until the hand is in line with the elbow, turning the edge to the rear and straightening the left arm in rear of the thigh, the right arm close to the body,

* For officers, substitute:—"and place the forefinger below the lower ring of the scabbard, the thumb and remaining fingers round it."

shoulders square to the front. (2) With an extended arm draw the sword slowly from the scabbard, edge to the rear, in rear of the left shoulder, and bring it to the *Recover*, that is, with the bar of the hilt in line with the bottom of the chin, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow close to the body ; at the same time bring the scabbard upright by the side as at *Attention*. (3) Lower the sword smartly to the *Carry*, that is, with the hand in front of the elbow and little finger in line with its blade perpendicular, edge to the front.

"*Slope Swords.*"—Relax the grasp of the last three fingers, and, without disturbing the position of the hand, allow the back of the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder, midway between the neck and point of the shoulder.

"*Stand at Ease.*"—Allow the scabbard to fall forward to the full extent of the slings, and place the palm of the left hand on the mouth of it, shoe of the scabbard resting on the ground, close to the left foot and just in front of the heel ; at the same time draw back the right foot six inches, and slightly bend the left knee.

This position of standing at ease is always to be adopted on foot with swords drawn, both in the ranks and at open files, as when formed for the Sword Exercise.

"*Attention.*"—Come smartly to the position of *Attention* as before described, the sword at the slope, the scabbard upright by the left side.

"*Carry Swords.*"—Resume the grasp of the last three fingers and bring the blade perpendicular, as in the third motion of drawing swords.

"*Return Swords.*"—The sword is returned in three motions. (1) Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow level with the shoulder at the same time bringing forward the mouth of the scabbard about three inches, grasping the back (for officers' swords, upper) ring with the thumb and forefinger ; then, by a quick turn of the wrist, drop the point in rear of the left shoulder into the scabbard and resume the position at the end of the first motion of *Draw*

Swords, shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion. (2) Let the sword fall smoothly into the scabbard, release the hand from the sword knot by giving it two turns outwards, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up, and bring the sword to the position of *Attention*. (3) Drop the right hand smartly to the side.

In marching with swords drawn, the scabbard is to be raised on the word *March*, and lowered to the ground on the word *Halt*, in the same manner as described for marching with sword not drawn.

On the march (except when on the passing line in marching past), or when manœuvring, the sword is to be at the "Slope," both on foot and mounted. When mounted the little finger is to be in rear of the hilt.

When the sword is at the *Carry* mounted (in parade movements and on complimentary occasions), the hilt is to rest on the right thigh, the blade perpendicular, the wrist rounded so as to incline the edge slightly to the left, the grasp of the lower fingers slightly relaxed, the little finger in rear of the hilt.

CUTS—GUARDS—POINTS.

The recruit having been instructed in drawing and returning his sword, will now be made acquainted with the strong and weak parts of it; the *Fort* (strong) being the half of the blade near the hilt, the *Feeble* (weak), the half towards the point; indeed, a knowledge of these distinctions is of importance in giving or guarding a cut. From the hilt upwards, in opposing the blade of an adversary, the strength of the defence decreases in proportion as the cut is received towards the point; and, *vice versâ*, it increases from the point downwards.

The same grasp of the sword is to be retained throughout the exercise; to ensure the edge leading, the middle knuckles are to be in the direction of the edge in all cuts and guards, the grip of the handle being held by the thumb and fingers around it.

FORMATION FOR SWORD EXERCISE.

The men being at close files in two ranks, the caution is given, "*From the Right of Fours to the Front, File.*"

"*Quick March.*"—Nos. 1 of the front rank march straight to the front, Nos. 2, 3 and 4 mark time till each in succession gets 4 paces distance from the man preceding him, when he inclines to the right and falls into file ; each rear rank section follows in the same way. Nos. 1 of the front rank preserve the interval (6 feet) from the centre, or other point of direction, and the dressing and distance, (3 paces) from the leader ; or, if there is no leader, march square to the front, dressing by the centre, or other point of direction. The remainder cover, dressing to the same point. "*Halt.*" (The mode of reforming ranks is described on p. 164.)

"*Prepare for Sword Exercise.*"—Carry the right foot out to the right 20 inches, turning on the left heel so as to bring both feet pointing to the front, at the same time place the left hand close in front of the centre of the body, fingers closed in the hand, little finger in line with the elbow, back of the hand to the front.

This is termed the *Mounted Position.*

"*Draw Swords.*"—As before directed : except that the left hand does not quit the body to grasp the ring of the scabbard, and that the scabbard, after the sword is drawn, is left hanging by the slings.

"*Slope Swords.*"—As before directed.

In the sword exercise dismounted, when acting on the right side (which should be drawn in), the weight of the body should be chiefly on the left leg, the knees bent and pressed well apart so as to be able to make the "single" or "double attack" with the right foot, and the reverse when acting on the left side.

"*Right Prove Interval.*"—This is done in two motions :

(1). Bring the sword smartly to the *Recover.*

(2). With an extended arm lower the sword cautiously to the

right, edge to the rear, point, hand and shoulders in line, shoulders square to the front, head turned to the right, bending both knees.

"*Slope Swords.*"—Bring the sword smartly to the *Slope.*

"*Front prove distance.*"—In two motions :

(1). Bring the sword smartly to the *Recover.*

(2). With an extended arm lower the sword cautiously to the front, edge to the right, point, hand and shoulder in line, knees braced, body leaning a little forward.

"*Slope Swords.*"—Bring the sword smartly to the *Slope.*

"*Engage.*"—The *Circular Engage* is completed in five motions :

(1). Carry the sword smartly to the right front, hilt over the right foot, back of the hand up and at the same height as at the slope, arm bent, elbow behind the hand, point of the sword advanced and in front of the left eye, the "fort" covering the centre of the body, head and body turned towards the right front, bending both knees. This is the position of *Right Engage* in the Sword Exercise.

(2). Carry the sword slowly to the right rear, keeping it the same height, turning on the hips.

(3). Pass the sword smartly by the front to the left rear, point leading, elbow raised as high as the shoulder, hand as high as the left breast, point in line with the hip, the "fort" covering the centre of the body, body turned towards the left, looking over the sword.

(4). With the sword in the same position, continue the guard slowly to the left front by bringing up the left shoulder. This is the position of *Left Engage* in the Sword Exercise.

(5). Resume smartly the *Right Engage.*

CUTS.

"*Assault.*"—Deliver a strong back cut with a straight arm as high as the neck, and place the back of the sword on the right shoulder, hand to the right and as high as the cheek, elbow under the hand, head and body turned towards the right front.

"*One.*"—Cut horizontally from rear to front at Cavalry, the height of the neck, and prepare for cut "Two," the sword resting flat on the left shoulder, edge to the left, hand in front of the shoulder and square with the elbow, elbow as high as the hand.

"*Two.*"—Cut horizontally from front to rear at Cavalry the height of the neck, and prepare for cut "Three," back of the hand down, arm extended to the rear on a line with the shoulder, sword horizontal, edge slightly turned down, point over the horse's croup, shoulders lowered to the right front.

"*Three.*"—Cut low from rear to front at Infantry, carrying the hand as high as the forehead in finishing the cut, and prepare for cut "Four," back of the sword resting on the left shoulder, point to the rear, hand as high as the left ear, elbow down, shoulders square to the front, and body well bent over to the right.

"*Four.*"—Cut low from front to rear at Infantry, and prepare for cut "One" on the left at Cavalry by turning the head and body towards the left, back of the sword resting on the right shoulder, hand in front of the shoulder and as high as the cheek, elbow under the hand.

"*One.*"—Cut horizontally from front to rear at Cavalry, the height of the neck, and prepare for cut "Two," the sword resting flat on the left shoulder, edge to the left rear, hand near the shoulder, elbow as high as the hand.

"*Two.*"—Cut horizontally from rear to front at Cavalry, the height of the neck, and prepare for cut "Three" at Infantry, arm bent, hand over the right shoulder, sword nearly horizontal, point direct to the rear, shoulders well bent over to the left.

"*Three.*"—Cut low from front to rear at Infantry, carrying the hand as far back as the hip, and prepare for cut "Four," hand just below the left knee and in front of it, sword horizontal, edge down, point to the rear, body well bent over to the left front.

"*Four.*"—Cut well up to the left front at Infantry, raising the body with the cut, and bring the sword to the *Slope*, at the same time bracing both knees.

Note.—If the recruit fails to carry the edge well in making the cuts, he should, in order to attain so essential a requisite for a swordsman, be practised in repeating each cut several times, preparing for the same cut again correctly, until ordered to prepare for the succeeding cut. The sword will thus travel in a circle, and the recruit will become accustomed to cutting with a straight arm.

GUARDS.

"*Right Defend.*"—Lower the point smartly to the right front in line with the hip, raising the hand and elbow as high as the top of the head, looking under the arm to the right front, the "fort" covering the head and neck, head and body turned towards the right front.

"*Second.*"—Carry the hand smartly to the right rear in line with the shoulder, elbow down, sword nearly perpendicular, the "fort" covering the head and neck.

"*Third.*"—Lower the point smartly to the right front, with the edge to the right front, point under the hilt, back of the hand to the left and in line with the hip, arm slightly bent, to defend the leg and horse's shoulder.

"*Fourth.*"—Carry the hand smartly to the right rear, keeping it the same height, edge to the right rear, to defend the leg and horse's flank, turning on the hips.

"*Left Defend.*"—Carry the sword smartly by the front, point leading, to the left rear, hand and elbow as high as the top of the head, looking under the arm to the left rear, point in line with the hip, the "fort" covering the head and neck, head and body turned towards the left.

"*Second.*"—Carry the sword smartly to the left front, edge to the left front, still looking under the arm, shoulders square to the front.

"*Third.*"—Lower the hand smartly to the left rear in line with the hip, arm slightly bent, edge to the left rear, point under the hilt, to defend the leg and horse's flank, turning on the hips.

"*Fourth.*"—Carry the hand smartly to the left front, keeping it the same height, edge to the left front, to defend the leg and horse's shoulder, turning on the hips.

"*Slope Swords.*"—Cut well up to the left front, raising the body with the cut, and bring the sword to the *Slope*, at the same time bracing both knees.

Words of Command.

"*Cuts*"		"*Guards*"
"*Right Engage*"		"*Right Defend*"
"*Assault*"		"*Second*"
"*One*"	Right.	"*Third*"
"*Two*"		"*Fourth*"
"*Three*"		
"*Four*"		
"*One*"	Left.	"*Left Defend*"
"*Two*"		"*Second*"
"*Three*"		"*Third*"
"*Four*"		"*Fourth*"

GUARDS AND POINTS.

All points are to be delivered direct from the guard, to the full extent of the arm, with the back of the hand up, and the hand is not to be drawn back before delivering the point.

"*Right Defend.*"—Form first guard on the right.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point to the right front at Cavalry, in line with the shoulder; a momentary pause, and return to first guard.

"*Second.*"—Form second guard on the right.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point to the right rear at Cavalry, in line with the shoulder; a momentary pause, and return to second guard.

"*Third.*"—Form third guard on the right.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point low to the right front at Infantry; a momentary pause, and return to third guard.

"*Fourth.*"—Form fourth guard on the right.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point low to the right rear at Infantry; a momentary pause, and return to fourth guard.

"*Left Defend.*"—Form first guard on the left.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point to the left rear at Cavalry, in line with the shoulder; a momentary pause, and return to first guard.

"*Second.*"—Form second guard on the left.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point to the left front at Cavalry, in line with the shoulder; a momentary pause, and return to second guard.

"*Third.*"—Form third guard on the left.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point low to the left rear at Infantry; a momentary pause, and return to third guard.

"*Fourth.*"—Form fourth guard on the left.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point to the left front at Infantry; a momentary pause, and return to fourth guard.

"*Slope Swords.*"—Slope swords as before directed, cutting up to the left front in doing so.

Words of Command.

"*Guards*" and "*Points*"

"*Right Defend*"—"*Point*"
"*Second*"—"*Point*"
"*Third*"—"*Point*"
"*Fourth*"—"*Point*"

"*Left Defend*"—"*Point*"
"*Second*"—"*Point*"
"*Third*"—"*Point*"
"*Fourth*"—"*Point*"
"*Slope Swords.*"

SWORD EXERCISE.

"*Right Engage.*"—Assume the first position of *Engage.*

"*Assault.*"—Prepare for cut "One" on the right.

"*One.*"—Cut "One," and form first guard.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point and prepare for cut "Two."

"*Two.*"—Cut "Two," and form second guard.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point and prepare for cut "Three."

"*Three.*"— Cut "Three," and form third guard.
"*Point.*"—Deliver point and prepare for cut "Four."
"*Four.*"—Cut "Four," and form fourth guard.
"*Point.*"—Deliver point and return to the guard.
"*Left Engage.*"—Assume the fourth position of "Engage," carrying the sword smartly over to the left front, point leading.
"*Assault.*"—Prepare for cut "One" on the left.
"*One.*"—Cut "One," and form first guard.
"*Point.*"—Deliver point and prepare for cut "Two."
"*Two.*"—Cut "Two," and form second guard.
"*Point.*"—Deliver point and prepare for cut "Three."
"*Three.*"—Cut "Three," and form third guard.
"*Point.*"—Deliver point and prepare for cut "Four."
"*Four.*"—Cut "Four," and form fourth guard.
"*Point.*"—Deliver point and return to the guard.
"*Slope Swords.*"—As before, cutting up to the left front.

Words of Command.

"*Sword Exercise*"
"*Right Engage*"
"*Assault*"
"*One*"—"*Point*"
"*Two*"—"*Point*"
"*Three*"—"*Point*"
"*Four*"—"*Point*"

"*Left Engage*"
"*Assault*"
"*One*"—"*Point*"
"*Two*"—"*Point*"
"*Three*"—"*Point*"
"*Four*"—"*Point*"
"*Slope Swords.*"

PURSUING PRACTICE.

"*Assault.*"—Prepare for cut "One" on the right.
"*One.*"—Make cuts "One" and "Two" in succession at Cavalry, and prepare for point to the right front, the hand in front of the shoulder, back of the hand up, elbow well raised.
"*Point.*"—Deliver point to the full extent of the arm to the right front, after a momentary pause turn the back of the hand down, head and body turned to the left front; point, hand

and shoulder in one line, ready for cut "One" at Cavalry on the left.

"*One.*"—Make cuts "One" and "Two" on the left in succession at Cavalry, and prepare for point to the left front as for the right front.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point to the full extent of the arm to the left front, withdraw the sword smartly across the front in a horizontal direction, edge leading, keeping the arm fully extended on a line with the shoulder, turn the back of the hand down, and prepare for cut "Three" on the right at Infantry.

"*Three.*"—Make cuts "Three" and "Four" on the right in succession at Infantry, and prepare to point low to the right front, elbow well raised, and hand a little below the shoulder.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point to the full extent of the arm, and prepare for cut "Three" on the left.

"*Three.*"—Make cuts "Three" and "Four" on the left in succession at Infantry, and prepare for point to the left front as for the right front.

"*Point.*"—Deliver point to the full extent of the arm, and remain steady.

"*Slope Swords.*"

Words of Command.

"*Pursuing Practice.*"
"*Assault.*"
"*One*"—"*Point.*"
"*One*"—"*Point.*"
"*Three*"—"*Point.*"
"*Three*"—*Point.*"
"*Slope Swords.*"

When the men become proficient in the sword exercise by word of command, they will go regularly through the exercise in the same manner as it will be shown at inspections, &c.

In performing the sword exercise and pursuing practice, the time will be taken from the right when acting to the right, and from the left when acting to the left.

Words of Command.

"*Right Prove Interval.*"
"*Slope Swords.*"
"*Front Prove Distance.*"
"*Slope Swords.*"
"*Sword Exercise.*"
"*Pursuing Practice.*"

Note.—If, while in the *Mounted Position* for Sword Exercise, the command *Stand at Ease* is given, bring the right foot in 6 inches behind the left heel, turn on the left heel so as to bring the left foot pointing to the left front, and, without removing the sword from the *Slope*, come to the position directed for *Stand at Ease* from *Slope Swords* at page 154. On the command *Attention*, resume the *Mounted Position*. The ordinary position with the heels together, as at close files, is resumed either on the command *Form Ranks* or *Return Swords*.

"*Return Swords.*"—(From the *Mounted Position.*) Return swords as at close files (p. 154) except that during the first two motions the left hand is kept across the body, and the scabbard, after the sword is returned, is left hanging by the slings, the right hand extended over the left; at the third motion bring the right foot in to the left, turning on the left heel so as to bring the left foot pointing to the left front, at the same time dropping both hands to the sides, and bringing the sword to the position of "*Attention.*"

"*Form Ranks.*"—(From the *Mounted Position.*) Bring the right heel smartly in to the left, turning on the left heel so as to bring the left foot pointing to the left front, at the same time dropping the left hand, and bringing the scabbard to an upright position at the left side, as at *Attention*; the sword remaining at the *Slope*.

"*Quick March.*"—Nos. 1 of the front rank remain halted; Nos. 2, 3, and 4 incline into their places. Nos. 1 of the rear rank march straight to their front and halt on getting their

proper distance from Nos. 1 of the front rank ; Nos. 2, 3, and incline into their places.

OFFICERS' SALUTE IN MARCHING PAST.

The Salute on the march is to commence when at ten and finish at six paces from the reviewing officer, taking the time from the officer on the right.

First pace : Carry the sword direct to the right to the full extent of the arm, hand as high as the shoulder, back of the hand to the rear, blade perpendicular.

Second pace : Bring the sword by a circular motion to the *Recover*, keeping the elbow as high as the shoulder.

Third pace : Still keeping the elbow the height of the shoulder bring the hilt to the right shoulder, hand as high as the elbow ; during this motion let the finger nails come in line with the edge of the sword.

Fourth pace : Lower the sword to the front to the full extent of the arm, the point in the direction of the right foot, about 12 inches from the ground, edge to the left, thumb extended in the direction of the point, hand directly under the shoulder.

The head is slightly turned towards the reviewing officer whilst passing him.

After passing the reviewing officer six paces the sword is brought to the *Recover* with the right foot, carrying it well to the front, and to the *Carry* at the following pace.

OFFICERS' SALUTE AT THE HALT.

The sword being at the *Carry* :—

(1). Bring the sword to the *Recover*, but with the thumb pointing upwards.

(2). Lower the sword to the front at the full extent of the arm, the point in the direction of the right foot, about 12 inches from the ground, edge to the left, thumb extended in the direction of the point, hand directly under the shoulder.

S. 38. *Single-Stick Practice.*

Instructions.

The squad will be formed up in two ranks; rear rank one pace from the front rank; sword at the slope, the right foot drawn back, the left hand by the side, standing at ease.

Attention. Both ranks come to attention.

Front Rank—Two Paces Forward—March—Open Interval from the Right—Left Close—Quick March. Right files stand fast, the remainder open out from the right; as the left foot moves, the sword is brought to the recover, and each front and rear rank man extends his arm to the right as he gets his distance, halting when the point of the sword is about 2 inches from the shoulder of the man on his right; back of the hand up edge to the rear, both ranks dressing by the right.

Slope Swords. The sword to be brought to the slope, eyes to the front.

Prepare for Stick-Practice. Raise the toes, and make a half turn to the left on the heels; two, bring the right heel in front the left, the right toe pointing to the front, the left to the left, eyes to the front; at the same time place the left hand behind the back, the thumb under the waist-belt, the fingers closed in the hand. The right hand will be full to the front, little finger and elbow in line, the elbow resting against the hip and in front of it, the edge of the sword to the front.

Engage. Bring the sword smartly across the front of the body, the point to the left front, and a few inches below the hilt. The right hand as high as the breast, the arm a little bent, elbow rather lower than the shoulder, edge of the sword to the right front, the "forte" of the sword covering the centre of the body. At the same time advance the right foot

to the front about 20 or 24 inches, according to the length of the limb; knees well bent, the right knee to be perpendicular over the instep, the left well bent over the toes, the weight of the body equal on both legs.

1st Guard. Raise the sword a few inches above the head, the hand about 6 or 8 inches in front of the brow, the "forte" of the sword covering the head and left side of the neck and face, the point of the sword to be well down and to the left front, edge up looking well under the guard. Care must be taken that this guard is formed correctly, as it is the defence for cut one, as well as against the cut made at the head.

2nd Guard. Raise the point of the sword above the hilt, and keep it well to the front; lower the right elbow close to the side, the forearm and sword to form one continuous line from elbow to the point of the sword, the "forte" of the sword covering the right side of the neck and face, the hand as high as the shoulder.

3rd Guard. Carry the hand across the body, turning the point of the sword down, and to the left front, the edge of the sword to the left front; the "forte" covering the left breast or side; the hand, elbow, and shoulder to be the same height; back of the hand to the left, looking over the arm.

4th Guard. Carry the hand and sword smartly across the body to the right, drawing the elbow back and raising it, bringing the hand a little higher than the breast, wrist slightly bent, forearm and sword nearly in line, the point kept well to the front; the "forte" covering the right side or breast, edge to the right.

Slope Swords. Bring the sword up to the slope, at the same time bring the right heel back to the left; knees straight.

Front. Draw the right foot back, raise the toe and turn on the heels coming to the front, at the same time drop the left hand to the side.

Stand at Ease, in two Motions. (First motion.) Carry the sword bringing the point perpendicular over the hilt. (Two.) Raise the left hand as high as the waist, let the sword-blade fall into the bend of the left arm, the basket, or hilt, to rest in the palm of the left hand; at the same time draw the right foot back 6 inches, bend the left knee, the weight of the body on the right leg.

Offensive Movements or Attacks.

The learner in his first lessons will be taught to make the cuts, remaining in the position of the engaging guard, that is to say, without lunging. After which he will be taught to execute them with the lunge, and in recovering to the second position, to show the corresponding guard, such as cut one, recover, and form the first guard, &c.

Attention. Bring the sword to the carry, the right heel up to the left, dropping the left hand to the side. (Second motion.) Let the sword fall on the shoulder to the slope.

Prepare for Stick-Practice. As before.

Engage. Come to the engaging guard, as before, in one motion.

Assault. Raise the sword smartly, and place it on the right shoulder, the back of the sword resting on the shoulder, edge up; the hand as high as the forehead, preparing for cut one.

One. Deliver the cut horizontally to the front as high as the neck or left side of an opponent's face, taking care to turn the back of the hand down in making the cut, so that the edge may lead; do not check the cut, but let it pass on to the left shoulder, placing the flat of the sword on the shoulder, back of the hand up, the hand and elbow square with the shoulder, looking over the arm, laying for cut two.

Two. Make the cut two horizontally at the right side of an opponent's neck or face, taking care to let the edge lead; pass the sword on to the right shoulder, and prepare for cut three, the same as for cut one.

Three. Make the cut three horizontally through the body as high as an opponent's left breast or side, turning the back of the hand down in making the cut; pass the sword on the left shoulder, and prepare for cut four; the position the same as for cut two.

Four. Make the cut four horizontally through the body as high as an opponent's right breast or side.

Engage. Come to the engaging guard, the same as before.

Slope Swords. As before.

Front. As before.

Stand at Ease. As before.

Attacks with the Lunge.

The cuts are now made with the lunge, teaching the learner that whenever he makes an attack he should lunge.

Attention. As before.

Prepare for Stick-Practice. As before.

Engage.	As before.
Assault.	As before.
One.	Make the cut one, as before, and at the same time lunge out to the front with the right foot, about 20 inches, or according to the length of the limb. When on the lunge, the right knee is perpendicular with the instep; the left knee is perfectly straight, the foot firm on the ground, the body kept upright. The cut will not pass on to the left shoulder to prepare for the following cut, but it will be checked as it reaches the part aimed at.
Prepare.	Remain steady on the lunge until the word "Prepare" is given. On the word "Prepare" spring smartly up to the second position; at the same time place the sword on the shoulder, preparing for cut two, as before.
Two. *Prepare.*	Make the cut two, and lunge as before, checking the cut to the front. On the word "Prepare," recover, and prepare for cut three.
Three. *Prepare.*	Make the cut three, and lunge, checking the cut in line with the body. On the word "Prepare," recover and prepare for cut four.
Four. *Engage.*	Make the cut four, and lunge, checking the cut as before. On the word "Engage," recover, and come to the engaging guard.
Slope Swords.	As before.
Front.	As before.
Stand at Ease.	As before.

Cuts and Guards Combined.

This practice is to teach the learner to cut at his opponent from any guard he may have formed without placing it on the shoulder, and preparing for the succeeding cut.

Attention. As before.

Prepare for Stick-Practice. As before.

Engage. As before.

One. Raise the point of sword over to the right front from the engaging guard, and make the cut one lunging as before, and checking the cut as in the preceding series. On the word

Guard. "Guard," recover, and form the 1st guard. Position of the feet the same as the engaging guard.

Two. Make the cut two, and lunge. On the

Guard. word "Guard," recover, and form the 2nd guard.

Three. Make the cut three, and lunge. On the

Guard. word "Guard," recover, and form the 3rd guard.

Four. Make the cut four, and lunge. On the word "Guard," recover, and form the 4th guard.

Engage. Bring the sword to the engaging guard.

Cuts, Guards, and Points.

One. Make the cut, with lunge. Recover, and form the 1st guard, as in preceding practice.

Point. Deliver point, with the back of the hand up, with a lunge. Recover, and lay for cut two.

Two. Make cut two, with lunge. Recover, and form the 2nd guard.

Point. Deliver point, with the back of the hand up, with lunge. Recover, and lay for cut three.

Three. Make the cut three, with lunge, Recover, and form the 3rd guard.

Point.	Deliver point, with the back of the hand up, with lunge. Recover, and lay for cut four.
Four.	Make the cut four, with lunge. Recover, and form the 4th guard.
Point.	Deliver point, with the back of the hand up, with lunge. Recover, and come to the engaging guard.
Engage.	
Slope Swords.	As before.
Front.	As before.

Front rank two paces Step Back, Slow march. On the right close; quick march. Right Turn. Dismiss.

Attack and Defence.

In the practices of attack and defence, the attacking files will lunge with their attack, and remain on the lunge until the attack is finished, and the word "Engage" is given, when both ranks will bring the sword to the engaging guard; the attacking files recovering from the lunge to the second position. The defending files remain in the second position, merely forming the defence, giving a return, and guarding a second return.

Attacking Files, Front or Rear Rank.	Defending Files, Rear or Front Rank.

Fall in as before, in two ranks, and in close file.

Attention.	As before.
Front Rank—Two paces forward—March.	As before.
Open Interval from the Right—Left Close—Quick March.	As before.
Front Rank—Right-about Turn.	Opponents now face each other.

Prepare for Stick-Practice. — As before.

Prove Distance. — Both ranks raise the sword to the recover, the basket or guard as high as the lower part of the face, the point perpendicular over the hilt, the edge of the sword to the left.

Two. — Extend the arms, the point of the sword to the front; edge to the right, back of the hand up. Rear rank take distance from the front rank. Point of sword about 2 inches from the basket or guard.

Slope Swords. — Both ranks bring the sword to the slope.

Engage. (Caution.) Front-rank will Attack. — Both ranks come down to the engage.

FIRST PRACTICE.

Head. — Attacking files cut at the head, the rear rank, or defending files, form the head or 1st guard. Attacking files lunging and remaining on the lunge until the word "Engage," is given.

Head. — Rear rank or defending files form return cut at the head. Attacking files form the head guard.

One. — Attacking files cut one. Defending files form 1st guard.

Engage. — Both ranks come to the engaging guard.

Head. — Attacking files cut at the head. Defending files form the 1st guard.

Head. — Defending files return cut at the head. Attacking files form 1st guard.

Two. — Attacking files cut two. Defending files form 2nd guard.

Engage. — Both ranks come to engage, as before.

Head. { Attacking files cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.

Head. { Defending files return cut at the head. Attacking files form 1st guard.

Three. { Attacking files return cut three. Defending files form 3rd guard.

Engage. Both ranks come to the engage as before.

Head. { Attacking files cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.

Head. { Defending files return cut at the head. Attacking files form 1st guard.

Four. { Attacking files return cut four. Defending files form 4th guard.

Engage. Both ranks come to the engage, as before.

Repeat the above practice, rear rank attacking.

Slope Swords. As before.

Inwards Turn. { Both ranks draw back right foot, turn on the heels inwards, so as to face each other.

Stand at Ease. As before.

Attention. As before.

Prepare for Stick-Practice. } As before.

Prove Distance. As before.

Slope Swords. As before.

Engage. As before.

SECOND PRACTICE.

One. { Attacking files deliver cut one. Defending files form 1st guard.

Head. { Defending files return cut at the head. Attacking files form 1st guard.

Head. { Attacking files cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.

Engage. Both ranks come to the engage, as before.

Two. { Attacking files deliver cut two. Defending files form 2nd guard.

Head. { Defending files return cut at the head. / Attacking files form 1st guard.

Head. { Attacking files return cut at the head. / Defending files form 1st guard.

Engage. Both ranks come to the engage, as before.

Three. { Attacking files deliver cut three. / Defending files form 3rd guard.

Head. { Defending files return cut at the head. / Attacking files form 1st guard.

Head. { Attacking files return cut at the head. / Defending files form 1st guard.

Engage. Both ranks come to the engage, as before.

Four. { Attacking files deliver cut four. / Defending files form 4th guard.

Head. { Defending files return cut at the head. / Attacking files form 1st guard.

Head. { Attacking files return cut at the head. / Defending files form 1st guard.

Engage. Both ranks come to the engage, as before.

Slope Swords. As before.

Inwards Turn. As before.

Stand at Ease. As before.

Repeat the above practice, rear rank making the attack

Attention. As before.

Prepare for Stick-Practice. } As before.

Prove Distance. As before.

Slope Swords. As before.

Engage. As before.

THIRD PRACTICE.

Head. { Attacking files deliver cut at the head. / Defending files form 1st guard.

One. { Defending files return cut one. / Attacking files form 1st guard.

Head.	Attacking files return cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.
Engage.	Both ranks come to the engage, as before.
Head.	Attacking files deliver cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.
Two.	Defending files return cut two. Attacking files form 2nd guard.
Head.	Attacking files return cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.
Engage.	Both ranks come to the engage, as before.
Head.	Attacking files deliver cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.
Three.	Defending files return cut three. Attacking files form 3rd guard.
Head.	Attacking files return cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.
Engage.	Both ranks come to the engage, as before.
Head.	Attacking files deliver cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.
Four.	Defending files return cut four. Attacking files form 4th guard.
Head.	Attacking files return cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.
Engage.	Both ranks come to the engage, as before.
Slope Swords.	As before.
Inwards Turn.	As before.
Stand at Ease.	As before.

Repeat the above practice, rear rank making the attack.

The Fourth Practice consists of feints, both with the point and edge of the sword. It must be understood that the attacking files do not lunge when they make their feints, but when the cut or attack is made. The feints must be made close, the defending files showing the guard for the feint, as well as for the attack.

Attention. As before.
Prepare for Stick Practice. As before.
Prove Distance. As before.
Slope Swords. As before.
Engage. As before.

FOURTH PRACTICE.

Feint One, and Cut Two. Attacking files feint one, and lunge with cut two.
Defending files form 1st and 2nd guards.
Head. Defending files return cut at the head.
Attacking files form 1st guard.
Head. Attacking files return cut at the head.
Defending files form 1st guard.
Engage. Both ranks come to the engage, as before.
Feint Three, and Cut Four. Attacking files feint three and cut four with a lunge.
Defending files form 3rd and 4th guards.
Head. Defending files return cut at the head.
Attacking files form 1st guard.
Head. Attacking files return cut at the head.
Defending files form 1st guard.
Engage. Both ranks come to the engage, as before.
Feint One and Point. Attacking files feint one, and point under the hand.
Defending files show 1st and 4th guards.
Head. Defending files return cut at the head.
Attacking files form 1st guard.
Head. Attacking files return cut at the head.
Defending files form 1st guard.
Engage. Both ranks come to the engage, as before.
Feint Four, and Point. Attacking files feint four, and deliver 1st point at the mouth or face.
Defending files form 4th and 1st guards

Head.	Defending files return cut at the head. Attacking files form 1st guard.
Head.	Attacking files return cut at the head. Defending files form 1st guard.
Engage.	Both ranks come to the engage, as before.

Repeat the above practice, rear rank making the attack.

The above practice may be varied at the discretion of the instructor, by combining the cuts and points, or the cuts alone, in any order desired.

Slope Swords.	As before.
Inwards Turn.	As before.
Front Rank—Two Paces Forward—March.	Front rank takes two paces forward and faces to the front.
Right Close—Quick March.	Both ranks close on their right.
Right Turn.	Both ranks turn to their right.
Dismiss.	Both ranks take a pace outwards.

CLASS LESSONS.

First Practice.

Head. Head. One.
Head. Head. Two.
Head. Head. Three.
Head. Head. Four.

Second Practice.

One. Head. Head.
Two. Head. Head.
Three. Head. Head.
Four. Head. Head.

Third Practice.

Head.	One.	Head.
Head.	Two.	Head.
Head.	Three.	Head.
Head.	Four.	Head.

Fourth Practice.

Feint One, and cut two.	Head.	Head.
Feint Three, and cut four.	Head.	Head.
Feint One, and point.	Head.	Head.
Feint Four, and point.	Head.	Head.

S. 39. *Lance Exercise.*

FORMATION FOR LANCE EXERCISE (DISMOUNTED).

The squad will fall in, standing at ease, in the usual manner, but with the butt of the lance on the ground, opposite the ball of the left foot and about 10 inches to the right of it, the right arm round the pole, which rests against the right shoulder. (This is the position of *Standing at ease* from the *Order*.)

"*Attention.*" Bring the right foot smartly up to the left, drop the hands to the sides, and hold the lance between the thumb and fingers of the right hand, at the full extent of the arm, thumb inside the pole, fingers outside, back of the hand to the right, butt close to the ball of the right foot. (This is the position of the *Order*.)

"*Form for Lance Exercise.*" Bring the lance to the *Shoulder*, that is, raise the arm from the elbow, still holding the lance as at the *Order*, the right elbow close to the hip, hand in front of and in line with the elbow, lance sloping backwards and resting on the right shoulder.

"*Quick March.*" The men file from the right of fours, as directed in the sword exercise, except that the front rank man who is centre of the line, marches straight forward, the other

front rank rights of fours extend until each man has an interval of four paces from the man on his flank nearest to the centre of the line, and the remainder follow in succession at a distance of four paces, dressing by the centre. Front rank rights of fours preserve the dressing and distance from the leaders, or, if there are no leaders, dress by the centre of the line. The instructor will indicate the centre of the line, who will be a front rank right of fours.

"*Halt.*" The lance is at once lowered to the *Order*. (The mode of reforming ranks is described on p. 189.)

Proving Interval and Distance by Numbers.

"*Carry Lance.*" Raise the hand by the front and grasp the pole, thumb inside the sling and level with the top of the shoulder, back of the hand to the front, elbow down.

"*Engage.*" Let the hand slide smartly down the pole to the full extent of the sling, keeping the thumb inside the sling, and the lance upright.

"*Two.*" Raise the butt about six inches from the ground [out of the bucket when mounted], still keeping the lance upright.

"*Three.*" Lower the point direct to the front, catching the pole smartly under the arm, point level with the butt, hand holding the lance at the balance and close to the body; at the same time carry the right foot out to the right 20 inches, turning on the left heel so as to bring both feet pointing to the front, place the left hand close in front of the centre of the body, fingers closed in the hand, little finger in line with the elbow, back of the hand to the front.

In the lance exercise, dismounted, when acting on the right side (which should be drawn in), the weight of the body should be chiefly on the left leg, the knees bent and pressed well apart, so as to be able to make the "single" or "double" attack with the right foot, and the reverse when acting on the left side.

"*Right Prove Interval.*" Carry the point smartly round direct

to the right, keeping the pole firmly under the arm, turning the body to the right on the hips, bending both knees and pressing them well apart, the weight of the body being chiefly on the left leg.

"*Two.*" Extend the arm slowly to the right, back of the hand to the front, arm, point and butt in line with the shoulder, pole outside the arm. If the interval be insufficient, close [or passage, when mounted] to the left.

"*Engage.*" Withdraw the lance smartly to the first position of *Right Prove Interval.*

"*Two.*" Carry the point, and turn the body, smartly to the front and brace both knees.

"*Front Prove Distance.*" Extend the arm slowly to the front, back of the hand to the left; arm, point and butt in line with the shoulder, pole outside the arm, body inclined a little forward. If the distance be insufficient, step backwards as much as may be required.

"*Engage.*" Withdraw the lance smartly to the third position of the *Engage.*

"*Carry Lance.*" Bring the right foot in to the left, turning on the left heel so as to bring the left foot pointing to the left front, and drop the left hand smartly to the side; at the same time raise the point and bring the lance perpendicular, on the right side to the position of *Carry.* [When mounted, the butt is placed in the bucket.]

PROVING INTERVAL AND DISTANCE BY WORD OF COMMAND.

The lances being at the carry :—

"*Engage.*"
"*Right Prove Interval.*" "*Engage.*"
"*Front Prove Distance.*" "*Engage.*"
"*Carry Lance.*"

Lance Exercise by Numbers (Dismounted).

In performing this exercise the hand is not to shift up and down the pole, but the same general grasp of the weapon is to be retained throughout, as at the *Engage*.

Lances being at the *Carry* :—

"*Engage.*" In three motions, as before directed.

"*Round Wave, First Point.*" Carry the point smartly round direct to the left, keeping the pole firmly under the arm, bending both knees, the weight of the body on the right leg.

"*Two.*" Carry the point smartly round in the same line direct to the right, changing the weight of the body on to the left leg.

"*Three.*" Carry the point smartly to the front, and brace both knees.

"*Four.*" Deliver the point with force, to the full extent of the arm, direct to the front in line with the shoulder, back of the hand to the left, pole outside the arm.

"*Five.*" Withdraw the lance quickly to the *Engage*.

[When mounted, the seat must be kept steady in the saddle during the *Round Wave*, the body moving from the hips.]

"*Right Front, Second Point and Thrust.*" Lower the lance, point directed to the right front, withdrawing the hand about six inches in rear of the hips, arm bent, elbow over the hand, body inclined a little forward, right shoulder thrown back, bending both knees, weight of the body chiefly on the left leg.

"*Two.*" Deliver the point with force to the full extent of the arm, to the right front in line with the shoulder, back of the hand to the front, pole outside the arm.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance quickly to the first position.

"*Thrust.*" Raise the hand above the head and circle the point round by the left to the rear, arm extended to the rear, hand in line with the shoulder, back of the hand down, butt directed to the right front, lance horizontal.

"*Two.*" Deliver thrust with force, to the full extent of the arm, to the right front the height of the breast, leaning the

upper part of the body well over to the right front, to give force to the blow.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance quickly to the first position.

"*Parry.*" Bring the lance perpendicular by the right side hand on a line with and about six inches from the right shoulder, which is to be well thrown back, elbow raised the height of the hand.

"*Two.*" Deliver a strong parry to the front, to the full extent of the arm, keeping the lance perpendicular.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance to the first position.

[This parry is intended to ward off a sword point or bayonet thrust aimed at the right side, and a similar one can also be used on the left side.]

"*Right Rear, Third Point.*" Lower the point to the right rear [raising the butt so as to clear the horse's head, when mounted], draw the right hand smartly in to the left, back of the hand down, pole resting on the bridle hand, upper part of the body turned to the right rear.

"*Two.*" Deliver the point with force, to the full extent of the arm, to the right rear, back of the hand down; point, butt and arm in line with the shoulder, leaning the body well over and throwing back the right shoulder.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance quickly to the first position.

"*Left Rear, Fourth Point.*" Raise the lance horizontally over the head by straightening the arm, circling the point smartly to the left rear, and lower the lance until it rests, horizontal, on the bridle hand, the right hand drawn back about 18 inches from the left, elbow well raised; at the same time change the weight of the body from the left to the right leg, the body well turned on the hips to the left.

"*Two.*" Deliver the point with force to the left rear, catching the butt firmly under the arm.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance quickly to the first position.

"*Thrust.*" Raise the lance horizontally over the head by straightening the arm, circle the point by the rear and extend the arm to the right in line with the shoulder; shoulders square

to the front, butt resting against the left breast, head turned to the left.

"*Two.*" Deliver the thrust with force, to the full extent of the arm, to the left, leaning the body well over to the left, to give force to the blow, the lance resting on the right shoulder.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance quickly to the first position.

"*Left Front, Fourth Point.*" Give the butt a sharp cant off the breast, circle the point above the head smartly round by the rear to the left front, and lower the lance until it rests, horizontal, on the bridle hand, the right hand drawn back about 18 inches from the left, elbow well raised.

"*Two.*" Deliver the point with force to the left front, catching he butt firmly under the arm.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance quickly to the first position.

"*Carry Lance.*" As before directed, from the *Engage.*

LANCE EXERCISE BY WORDS OF COMMAND.

The lances being at the *Carry* :—

"*Lance Exercise.*"
"*Engage.*"
"*Round Wave, First Point.*"
"*Right Front, Second Point and Thrust.*"
"*Parry.*"
"*Right Rear, Third Point.*"
"*Left Rear, Fourth Point.*"
"*Thrust.*"
"*Left Front, Fourth Point.*"
"*Carry Lance.*"

First Divison, by Numbers. (Dismounted.) (Against Cavalry.)

"*Engage.*" In three motions, as before directed.

"*Right Front Wave, Second Point, and Thrust.*" Carry the point smartly to the right front, bending both knees ; the weight of the body on the left leg.

"*Two.*" Make the wave short and quick to the right and left, about 18 inches each way, that is, 18 to the right, 36 to the left, and 18 back to the first position, and withdraw the lance for *Second Point*, as directed in the *Lance Exercise.*

"*Three.*" Deliver the point,
"*Four*" Withdraw the lance, } As directed in the *Lance Exercise.*

"*Thrust.*" Lay for the thrust,
"*Two.*" Deliver the thrust,
"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance. } As directed in the *Lance Exercise.*

[The motions of the wave should follow each other rapidly, as the object is to agitate the flag in order to alarm the adversary's horse and deceive the opponent as to the precise spot at which the point will be delivered. In independent practice, the waves may be repeated *ad libitum* without stopping between each.]

"*Left Front Wave, Fourth Point, and Thrust.*" Raise the hand above the head, circling the point round by the rear to the left front, and lower the lance to *Engage*, with the point to the left front, changing the weight of the body on to the right leg.

"*Two.*" Make the wave short and quick to the left and right, as before directed, and withdraw the lance for *Fourth Point*, as directed in the *Lance Exercise.*

'*Three.*" Deliver the point,
"*Four.*" Withdraw the lance. } As directed in the *Lance Exercise.*

"*Thrust.*" Raise the hand above the head and circle the point round by the left to the rear, arm extended to the rear, hand in line with the shoulder, back of the hand down, butt directed to the left front, lance horizontal.

"*Two.*" Deliver the thrust with force to the full extent of the arm to the left front the height of the breast, the lance resting on the right shoulder.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance to the first position.

"*Right Rear, Third Point.*" Lower the right hand, drawing it in smartly towards the left, and lay for the point as directed in the *Lance Exercise*, changing the weight of the body on to the left leg.

"*Two.*"
"*Three.*" } As directed in the *Lance Exercise.*
"*Left Rear, Fourth Point.*"
"*Two.*"
"*Three.*"
"*Carry Lance.*" } As directed in the *Lance Exercise*

FIRST DIVISION, BY WORDS OF COMMAND.

The lances being at the *Carry* :—

"*First Division.*"
"*Engage.*"
"*Right Front Wave, Second Point, and Thrust.*"
"*Left Front Wave, Fourth Point, and Thrust.*"
"*Right Rear, Third Point.*"
"*Left Rear, Fourth Point.*"
"*Carry Lance.*"

SECOND DIVISION, BY NUMBERS. (DISMOUNTED.) (AGAINST INFANTRY.)

"*Engage.*" In three motions, as before directed.

"*Right Front, First Point, and Thrust.*" Lower the point smartly to the right front, making a sharp parry outwards in order to parry off the point of a bayonet or other weapon, and bend both knees, the weight of the body on the left leg.

"*Two.*" Deliver the point with force downwards, to the full extent of the arm, to the right front, back of the hand to the front, pole outside the arm.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance quickly to the first position.

"*Thrust.*" Carry the point upwards over the left shoulder [clearing the horse's head], extend the arm to the right rear, hand 12 inches higher than the shoulder, butt directed downwards to the right front.

"*Two.*" Deliver the thrust with force downwards, to the full extent of the arm, to the right front, lance resting on the right shoulder.

"*Three.*" Circle the butt to the rear by the right, and bring the lance smartly under the arm to the position of *Engage*, both knees braced.

"*Left Front, First Point, and Thrust.*" Raise the point [so as to clear the horse's head], and lower it smartly to the left front making a sharp parry outwards, and bend both knees; the weight of the body on the right leg.

"*Two.*" Deliver the point with force downwards, to the full extent of the arm, to the left front, back of the hand to the left, pole outside the arm.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance to the first position.

"*Thrust.*" Carry the point upwards over the left shoulder extend the arm to the right rear, hand 12 inches higher than the shoulder, butt directed downwards to the left front.

"*Two.*" Deliver the thrust with force downwards, to the full extent of the arm, to the left front, lance resting on the right shoulder.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance quickly to the first position.

"*Right Rear, Third Point.*" As directed in the *Lance Exercise* but with the point directed downwards to the left rear.

"*Two.*" As directed in the *Lance Exercise*, but the point delivered downwards.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance to the first position.

"*Left Rear, Fourth Point.*" As directed in the *Lance Exercise*, but with the point directed downwards to the left rear.

"*Two.*" As directed in the *Lance Exercise*, but the point delivered downwards.

"*Three.*" Withdraw the lance to the first position.

"*Carry Lance.*" As directed in the *Lance Exercise.*

SECOND DIVISION, BY WORDS OF COMMAND.

The lances being at the *Carry*:—

"*Second Division.*"

"*Engage.*"

"*Right Front, First Point, and Thrust.*"

"*Left Front, First Point and Thrust.*"
"*Right Rear, Third Point.*"
"*Left Rear, Fourth Point.*"
"*Carry Lance.*"

"*Order Lance.*" (From the *Carry.*) Let the right hand slide down the pole to the full extent of the arm, and hold the lance between the thumb and finger, thumb inside the pole, fingers outside, back of the hand to the right, lance resting against the right shoulder, butt close to the ball of the right foot.

"*Stand at ease.*" (From the *Order.*) Stand at ease as without arms, but with the right arm round the pole, which rests against the right shoulder, the butt remaining in its previous position.

"*Attention.*" As directed on page 179.

Grounding Lance by Numbers.

"*Ground Lance.*" (From the *Order.*) Seize the lance at the position of the hand at the *Order*, lower the point to the front until it touches the ground, keeping the body erect.

"*Two.*" Sink the body by bending both knees, without separating the heels, place the lance gently on the ground at the right side, make a short pause, and spring up to *Attention.*

"*Take up Lance.*" Sink the body by bending both knees, seize the lance with the right hand in line with the right foot, which will be the point where it is held at the order, and resume the erect position, the point resting on the ground.

"*Two.*" Raise the point smartly and bring the lance upright by the side to the position of the *Order.*

Supporting Lance by Numbers.

"*Support Lance.*" (From the *Order.*) Raise the hand to the balance, placing the thumb in front, and the fingers in rear of the pole.

"*Two.*" Raise the arm from the elbow, back of the hand down, so that the butt is brought across the body to the left front, the lance resting on the right forearm the butt about six inches lower than the point.

"*Order Lance.*" Lower the butt and resume the first position of the "Support."

"*Two.*" Shift the hand to the position of the "Order."

REFORMING RANKS AFTER LANCE EXERCISE. (DISMOUNTED.)

Lances being at the *Order*, the squad is reformed by the command—

"*Form Ranks.*" The men make a half turn inwards towards the centre.

"*Quick March.*" The front rank man who is centre of the line moves up four paces and halts, the remaining rights of fours of the front rank move up with him, correcting the interval on their flank to six feet, and the front rank forms on them; the centre rear rank man marches straight on, the remaining rights of fours incline so as to correct their intervals from him, and the rest of the rear rank incline so as to form on them, the whole halting at their proper distance from the front rank.

LANCE MANUAL EXERCISE.

MANUAL, FIRST PART, BY NUMBERS. (DISMOUNTED.)

Lances being at the *Carry*:—

"*Engage.*" As directed in the *Lance Exercise.*

"*Manual, first part.*" As directed for the first motion of the *Round Wave* in the *Lance Exercise.*

"*Two.*" Carry the point smartly round to the right rear, straightening the arm in line with the shoulder, back of the hand up, butt touching the left shoulder blade; at the same time change the weight of the body from the right to the left leg.

"*Three.*" Raise the hand well above the head and circle the lance once, then lower it until the back of the right hand rests on the forepart of the bridle arm, point direct to the left; at the same time change the weight of the body from the left to the right leg.

"*Two.*" Straighten the arm above the head and circle the lance back to the second position.

"*Three.*" As before directed.

"*Two.*" As before directed.

"*Three.*" As before directed.

"*Engage.*" Raise the hand well above the head, and circle the lance once, bringing it smartly under the arm to the *Engage.*

"*Carry Lance.*" As in the *Lance Exercise.*

MANUAL, SECOND PART, BY NUMBERS. (DISMOUNTED.)

"*Engage.*" As in the *Lance Exercise.*

"*Manual, second part.*" Carry the point smartly down to the right rear, hand as high as the hip, arm straight, butt touching the left shoulder blade ; weight of the body on the left leg.

"*Two.*" Bring the point round to the front, still directed downwards, the pole lying against and under the forearm ; at once give the lance a sharp cant off the forearm, and circle it by the right side, straightening the arm well above the right shoulder, the lance upright, point directly above the butt.

"*Three.*" Lower the point to the front, keeping the hand well up, and circle the lance back to the first position.

"*Two.*" Repeat the second motion.

"*Three.*" As before directed.

"*Two.*" As before directed.

"*Engage.*" Lower the point to the front, circling the lance once, and bring it smartly under the arm to the *Engage.*

"*Carry Lance.*" As directed in the *Lance Exercise.*

FUNERAL EXERCISE.

"*Reverse—Lance*" (from the *Carry*).	Lower the right hand until the little finger is in line with the elbow. Carry the hand and lance to the hollow of the left shoulder, pole perpendicular, and drop the point to the rear, placing the pole

under the left arm and grasping it with the left hand in front of the right between the forefinger and thumb, palm of the hand to the front, butt as high as the forehead; then seize the pole behind the back with the right hand, back of the hand down.

"*Order—Lance*" (from the *Reverse*). Bring the right hand to the front and seize the lance between the left hand and the body, back of the hand up. Raise the point and carry the lance to the right side, placing the butt on the ground at the *Order*.

Note.—Further instructions in the use of the lance are to be found as follows:—

Riding with the Lance, page 79.
Paying Compliments, Mounted, page 83.
Post Practice and Mounted Combat, pages 85 to 95
Marching with Arms and paying compliments on Foot, pages 143–144.
Dismissing a Troop off Parade, page 148.

FOOT PARADE OF THE REGIMENT.

S. 40. *Parade Movements.*

The Regiment is formed in squadrons with intervals of 8 paces.

The adjutant and other staff officers form at close files on the right of the front rank, at three paces interval from it, and in the following order, from the right:—Medical Officer, Paymaster, Quartermaster, Veterinary Officer, Riding Master, Adjutant. The band is on the right of the staff at a similar interval, formed in two ranks.

During the parade movements on foot, the squadron commanders do not repeat the cautions.

The troops fall in standing at ease with carbines or lances at the *Order*. Troops with carbines will be ordered to shoulder arms before the caution "*Take Order*" is given.

"*Take Order.*" "*March.*" On the word "*March,*" officers carry swords, and serrefile officers (if any) come to the front and place themselves on a line with the leaders. Non-commissioned officers with swords always carry swords when the officers are directed to do so, but do not salute. The officers are dressed from the right by the second in command, and when the dressing is completed, the commanding officer gives the word "*Eyes Front.*"

On the general or reviewing officer arriving in front of the centre of the regiment, the word is given "*General Salute,*" "*Present Arms;*" (in Lancer Regiments, "*Carry Lance*"). Officers recover swords with the first motion of the carbine, and lower the sword with the second. In Lancer Regiments officers salute in the same manner, the first motion being timed with the *Carry Lance*. The Band plays according to regulation.

"*Shoulder Arms.*" (In Lancer Regiments, "*Order Lance.*") Officers recover swords with the first motion of the carbine, and carry them with the second. The inspection of the ranks by the reviewing officer will then follow, the commanding officer accompanying him, and the band playing during the inspection.

"*Close Order.*" "*March.*" On the word "*March,*" the serrefiles resume their places, as at close order. Officers slope swords, and the staff, with the exception of the adjutant, fall out, and do not again fall in. They must, however, remain on the ground till the conclusion of the parade, and place themselves in rear of the saluting point.

Marching Past.

"*March past By Squadrons.*" "*Troops Right Wheel.*" "*Quick —March.*" Points will be fixed by the adjutant for the several wheelings of the troops; the "Passing line" will be four paces from the spot where the reviewing officer is to be placed: the marker B at 30 paces, and C at a similar distance from that spot, the markers A and D outflanking the original "Parade

Line" by a short distance according to the size of the ground. The adjutant will dress the line of markers from the point A.

Carbines are brought to the *Support*, and each troop, when its flank arrives nearly opposite the marker A, receives the signal "*Left Wheel*," from its leader, who then leads it so that the centre of the troop is directed on the marker A. During the wheel, carbines are brought to the *Shoulder*. When within wheeling distance of A, each squadron commander gives the command "*Left Wheel into Line.*" Carbines remain at the *Shoulder* in the passing line. When each squadron arrives at the marker B, the squadron commander gives the command "*Carry Swords*," "*Eyes Right*," on which the squadron dresses by the right and continues to do so until opposite marker C. The leaders and serrefiles dress by the right.

The band,* 6 paces in front of the commanding officer, begins to play just after the first squadron has wheeled on to the passing line at A, and after passing the reviewing officer wheels to the left, clears the flank of the column, wheels to the left about, so as to take up a position opposite to the saluting point, and plays until the rear of the column has passed. It remains posted in this position until the regiment has marched past, after which it takes post 9 paces in rear of the centre of the regiment, moving round its left flank.

The officers salute when they arrive within 10 paces of the reviewing officer, except that the leaders of the 1st squadron take the time from the commanding officer; and the troop leaders of other squadrons take the time from their squadron commanders. Serrefile officers take the time from the officer on the right of the serrefile rank. After having passed the reviewing

* This distance may be increased if necessary.

officer by 6 paces, officers recover and carry swords, taking the time as before.

The commanding officer after he has saluted places himself on the right of the reviewing officer, carrying his sword, and remains there until the rear of the column has passed.

When the front rank of each squadron arrives at marker C, the squadron commander gives the command "*Slope Swords*," "*Eyes Front.*"

When each squadron arrives at D, its commander gives the word, "*Troops, Left Wheel*;" squadron commanders and squadron serrefiles resume their places as in column of troops. Carbines are brought to the *Support* on leaving the passing line.

When the column has arrived again on the parade line, the words are given, "*To the Halt*," "*Left wheel into line.*" The markers now rejoin the regiment, the troop leaders dressing upon those of the squadron of direction. "*Dress.*" The troops dress by the centres of squadrons.

The word "*Eyes Front*" is then given by the commanding officer, and the squadron commanders resume their usual posts in line.

If the carbine manual exercise is to be performed, an officer selected by the Inspecting Officer will put the regiment through it, officers remaining in front with sloped swords.

A selected officer will similarly put the regiment through the sword or lance exercise, if required.

Formation for Sword Exercise, Dismounted.

"*From the Right of Fours to the Front, File.*"

"*Quick—March.*" The men file from the right of fours as directed in the Sword Exercise, the left hand right of fours of each right troop being the centre of squadron. Squadron commanders and troop leaders place themselves in front of the front rank rights of fours; serrefiles following lefts of fours of the rear rank. The dressing and distance of front rank rights of fours are preserved from the leaders, intervals from the centres of squadrons.

"*Halt.*" The alignment of the officers is taken from the squadron of direction.

[When parading with carbines or lances :—

"*Order Arms.*" } (In Lancer Regiments,
"*Ground Arms.*" } "*Ground Lance.*")

"*Stand at Ease.*"

"*Unhook Swords.*"

"*Attention.*"]

"*Prepare for Sword Exercise.*"

"*Eyes Right.*" "*Draw Swords.*"

"*Slope Swords.*"

"*Right Prove Interval.*"

"*Slope Swords.*"

"*Front Prove Distance.*"

"*Slope Swords.*"

"*Sword Exercise.*"

"*Pursuing Practice.*"

[When parading with carbines or lances :—

"*Carry Swords.*"

"*Eyes Right.*" "*Return Swords.*" The whole come to the position of "Attention,' as at close files, with the heels together.

"*Stand at Ease.*"

"*Hook up Swords.*"

"*Attention.*"

"*Take up Arms.*" } (In Lancer Regiments, "*Take up Lance.*")]
"*Shoulder Arms.*" }

"*Form Ranks.*" If still in the mounted position for Sword Exercise (as will be the case when swords have not been returned), the whole come to the ordinary position, as at close files, with the heels together. If swords have been returned, this position will have been already resumed at the command "*Return Swords.*"

"*Quick—March.*" The whole reform squadrons, as directed in the *Sword Exercise.*

FORMATION FOR LANCE EXERCISE.

"*Form for Lance Exercise.*" Lances are brought to the *Shoulder.*

"*Quick—March.*" The men file from the right of fours as directed in the *Lance Exercise.*

The centre of the line in the case of four squadrons is the left hand front rank right of fours of the 2nd squadron ; in three squadrons, the left hand right of fours of the right troops, 2nd squadron ; in two squadrons, the left hand right of fours of the 1st squadron ; in one squadron, the left hand right of fours of the right troop.

"*Halt.*"
"*Stand at Ease.*" "*Unhook Swords.*" "*Attention.*"
"*Carry Lance.*"
"*Engage.*"
"*Right Prove Interval.*"
"*Engage.*"
"*Front Prove Distance.*"
"*Engage.*"
"*Carry Lance.*"
"*Lance Exercise.*"
"*First Division.*"
"*Second Division.*"
"*Order Lance.*"

[If the Sword Exercise is to be performed, lances will be grounded and the words of command laid down on the last page will be given. After "*Take up Lance*" :—]

"*Form Ranks.*" Squadron commanders and troop leaders move up three paces ; the men make a half turn towards the centre of their squadron.

"*Quick—March.*" The front rank centre men of squadrons (left hand rights of fours of right troops) moving up four paces, halt three paces in rear of the line of leaders, the remaining rights of fours move up with them, correcting the interval on their flank to six feet, and the front rank forms on them ; the rear rank of each squadron forms as directed in the *Lance Exercise.* Squadron intervals are then corrected by order of the Commanding officer.

S. 41. *Posts of Officers, &c., on Foot.*

The following are the posts of officers, &c., in parade movements on foot.

In Line at Close Order.

Commanding Officer.—6 paces in front of the centre of the line of leaders.

2nd in Command.—On the right flank of the line of leaders and at 3 paces from the flank of the regiment.

Adjutant.—On the right of the front rank, at 3 paces interval from it.

Squadron Commanders.—6 paces in front of the centre of their squadrons.

Squadron 2nd in Command.—3 paces in front of the right file —in line with troop leaders.

Troop Leaders.—3 paces in front of the centre of their troops.

Squadron Serrefiles.—3 paces in rear of the centre of their squadrons.

Troop Serrefiles.—3 paces in rear of the centre of their troops.

In Line at Order.

All officers except squadron and troop serrefiles are in the same positions as at close order.

Squadron Serrefiles.—In line with troop leaders, and in rear of squadron commander.

Troop Serrefiles (in parade movements).—In front of the 2nd files from the outward flanks of their troops, in line with the troop leaders.

In Marching Past.

Commanding Officer.—6 paces in front of the squadron commander of the leading squadron.

2nd in Command.—3 paces in rear of the adjutant.

Adjutant.—3 paces in rear of the 2nd file from the right flank of the rear squadron.

Squadron Commanders.—3 paces in front of their troop leaders.

Squadron 2nd in Command.—In rear of the centre of the squadron, 3 paces behind the serrefile rank.

Troop Leaders.—3 paces in front of the centre of their troops.

Squadron Serrefiles.—3 paces in rear of the centre of their squadron.

Other Serrefiles (if any).—3 paces in rear of the centre of their troops.

S. 42. *Calculation of Extent of Front on Foot.*

The number of paces of 30 inches, comprised in the front of any troop, or other body, is nearly four-fifths of the number of files of which it is composed. Troop leaders should, on all occasions, know the number of paces that are equal to their front. It will be useful to remember that 10 files require 8 paces, 20 files 16, and so on. A simple rule for calculating approximately the frontage in paces required for any body of men is to multiply the number of files by 8, and cut off the last figure.

Number of paces corresponding to a given number of Files.

Number of files in a squad or troop, each occupying 24 inches.	5	10	12	14	15	16	18	20	30	40	50	100
Front of squad or troop in paces of 30 inches.	4	8	9–18	11–6	12	12–24	14–12	16	24	32	40	80

PART III.—DRILL.

PRELIMINARY REMARKS.

S. 1. *Fundamental Principles of Instruction in Drill.*

All cavalry exercises have for object the training of leaders, men, and horses for war, so that the several elements of a force may be fit to confront an enemy under the best conditions.

Discipline and perfect order are the most important characteristics which a cavalry force should possess, leaders must consequently seek in the training of their troops to develop those qualities to the utmost.

In war only what is simple can attain success, therefore what is simple must alone be taught and practised during peace time. The principles of drill and manœuvre contained in the regulations must be so thoroughly mastered, and the necessary evolutions so practised, that they shall be capable of execution with certainty and precision. No exercise should be learnt on the drill ground which is impossible of execution on the field of battle.

The first principle for the execution of any movement is that EACH UNIT IS TO BE LED TO ITS POSITION IN THE NEW FORMATION BY THE SHORTEST ROUTE, IN THE SIMPLEST MANNER, AND AS RAPIDLY AS POSSIBLE, compatible with the preservation of good order in the ranks.

The object to be kept in view by all commanders when training any body of cavalry is so to exercise it that it shall be able to manœuvre by following its leader without commands or trumpet sounds.

Constant repetition of the same movement should be avoided, and the length and character of exercises should be suited to the strength of men and horses.

The following are the principal tests by which the general drill efficiency of any body of cavalry can be judged :—

(*a*) That commands and trumpet sounds are obeyed simultaneously and exactly, and that no movement takes place after the command or sound "*Halt.*"

(*b*) That pace and direction are correctly maintained.

(*c*) That distances and intervals are correctly kept, wheels accurately made ; the "March in Line," "Attack," "Rally," "Pursuit," and "Retreat," efficiently performed, words of command distinctly given, trumpet sounds blown readily at the right time, and that signals are well understood, quickly taken up, and accurately repeated.

(*d*) That there is a complete absence of noise and confusion.

When any movement or formation is ordered it must be understood that it is to be performed on the move (*i.e.*, the troops are to continue in movement after it is completed) unless the order is preceded by the words "*To the halt.*"

S. 2. Terms of Formation and Manœuvre.

A DIVISION.—The largest tactical body in which cavalry is formed, usually two brigades.

A BRIGADE consists of two or three regiments.

A REGIMENT consists of three or four squadrons.

A WING.—The half of a regiment or larger body. Wings are termed "Right" and "Left" when in line, and "Leading" and "Rear" when in column or échelon. When a regiment is formed in wings, the first and second squadrons form the right

or leading wing, and the third (and fourth) squadron the left or rear wing.

A SQUADRON is the tactical unit of cavalry, and is composed of three or four troops depending on its strength. Squadrons are numbered from the right when in line or échelon, and from the front when in column. Troops are similarly numbered in each squadron.

A TROOP.—One of the sub-divisions of a squadron.

FOURS.—Eight men abreast; four front rank and four rear rank.

A SECTION.—One of the sub-divisions of a troop; it numbers from six to eight men (4 in front rank, including a N.C. officer in command, and 2, 3, or 4 men in rear rank), according to its position and the strength of the squadron.

A FILE.—Two men: a front rank man and his rear rank man.

SINGLE FILE.—One front rank man or his covering rear rank man.

FILES.—The term used to denote the strength of the front rank of a body of troops in double rank; but it is also applied to the frontage of a body in single rank.

A RANK.—Two or more men in line side by side.

FRONTAGE.—The space occupied by a body of troops from one flank to the other.

DEPTH.—The space occupied by a body of troops from front to rear.

DISTANCE.—The space between men or bodies of troops from front to rear.

INTERVAL.—The space between men or bodies of troops from flank to flank.

ORDER (OR ORDER OF FORMATION).—The mode of disposition of bodies, or fractions of bodies, laterally, in depth, or diagonally, *i.e.*, in line, column, or échelon.

A LINE.—Bodies of troops placed on the same alignment.

A COLUMN.—Bodies of troops formed on parallel and successive alignments. When troops or squadrons are at a distance from one another equal to their own frontage, the formation is known as *open column.*

COLUMN OF SQUADRONS.—Squadrons in open column.

COLUMN OF TROOPS.—Troops in open column.

SQUADRON COLUMN.—A squadron with its troops in open column.

MASS.—Line of squadron columns, closed to two horses' length interval.

CLOSE COLUMN.—Troops or squadrons in column at one horse's length from one another.

BRIGADE (OR DIVISIONAL) LINE OF MASSES.—A line of two or more regiments each formed in mass with deploying interval plus 16 yards between them. "Brigade Mass" or "Divisional Mass" indicates a brigade or divisional line of regimental masses at close interval.

COLUMN OF MASSES.—A column of two or more regiments each formed in mass, one behind the other at such distance that a Brigade or Divisional Mass can be formed to a flank by shouldering.

ÉCHELON.—A step-like order of bodies of troops.

DIRECT ÉCHELON.—A line broken into several parts which move direct to the front or rear in succession, and therefore do not overlap or alter their intervals from one another.

DOUBLE ÉCHELON.—A form of direct échelon in which, in the case of squadrons, the centre squadron of a regiment is advanced to open column distance beyond the flank squadrons.

OBLIQUE ÉCHELON.—A line broken into several parts, as by wheels from line or column of more or less than the quarter circle, so that they are oblique to the former front, parallel with

one another, and either overlapping or less than their proper intervals from one another.

HALF-COLUMN.—A form of échelon, in which the several bodies composing it (whether troops, squadrons, or heads of columns, &c.) are placed exactly half-way between line and open column, so that a half-wheel to one flank brings them into line with the proper intervals (if any), while a half-wheel to the other flank brings them into open column.

Half-column formed to the front from line or column is distinguished as direct half-column, while that produced by wheeling troops, &c., half-right (or left) from line or column is termed oblique half-column.

FRONT.—In a general sense, the direction towards which a body of troops or a single man is facing ; with reference to an alignment, the direction of the real or supposed enemy.

FLANK.—Either lateral extremity of a rank, line, or column ; also the direction to either hand of a body, at right angles to its front. Flanks are distinguished as "right" or "left," according as they are on the right or left of the men who compose the body, when facing to the front.

HALF-FRONT.—The direction between the front and flank of a line or column.

INNER FLANK.—That to which the column is working, and in the case of a wheeling body, the flank which serves as a pivot.

OUTER FLANK.—The flank opposite to the inner flank.

PIVOT.—The flank on which a body wheels. The man on that flank is termed the "pivot man," or simply the "pivot."

FIXED PIVOT.—The term applied to the pivot, when during the wheel the pivot man is halted and turns upon his own ground.

MOVING PIVOT.—The term applied to the pivot, when during the wheel the pivot man moves on the arc of a circle without halting.

ALIGNMENT.—The straight line on which the front of a body of troops is formed or is to form.

NEW ALIGNMENT.—The line on which a body of troops is marching, after it has changed its direction, or on which troops are to be formed.

DEPLOYMENT.—The formation of line to the front from column.

DEPLOYING INTERVAL.—The interval between contiguous columns necessary to enable them to form line to the front.

CHANGE OF FRONT.—A new alignment either meeting or intersecting the former alignment.

CHANGE OF POSITION.—A movement by which a body of troops moves altogether off its ground, either to the front flank or rear, and reforms on a new alignment.

CLOSE ORDER.—The ordinary distance between front and rear rank when formed in line.

ORDER.—The increased distance taken by the rear rank on some occasions of parade.

BASE.—Two points marked by officers, non-commissioned officers or men, placed at a distance apart, to indicate a line by the prolongation of which the proper alignment of a line, or the covering of a column, is, in certain cases, regulated. In the former case it is termed an "alignment base," in the latter a "covering base."

BASE BODY.—That on which a formation is made, or on which the alignment is at the halt, *e.g.*, "base regiment," "base squadron."

DIRECTING BODY.—The body on which the direction, pace, and alignment of a line, or the direction, pace, and relative positions of the several parts of a column or échelon, depend, *e.g.*, "squadron of direction," "directing troop."

DRESSING.—The act of taking up an alignment correctly.

COVERING.—The act of a body placing itself correctly in rear of another.

COUNTERMARCHING.—A movement by which a body of troops faces in the opposite direction to its original front.

OBLIQUE MARCH AND INCLINING.—Movements by which ground is gained to the front and flank simultaneously, while a general direction is observed parallel to the original alignment.

WHEELING.— A movement by which a body brings forward a flank on a fixed or moving pivot.

SHOULDERING.—Wheeling on a moving pivot; but the term is only used in certain particular cases.

TROOP GUIDES.—N.C. officers placed in the centre or on the flanks of the front rank of each troop.

SERREFILES.—Such officers, N.C. officers, and others, as may be detailed to ride in rear of the rear rank of a squadron when in line.

MARKERS.—Certain serrefiles employed in certain cases to give bases, or mark points on which to march.

GROUND SCOUTS.—Men employed in reconnoitring the ground over which a body of troops is to move.

COMBAT PATROLS.—Generally a complete section or half section detached from a body of troops during manœuvre, or when within the sphere of action of an enemy, to guard it against surprise, and to ascertain the position, strength, and movements of the enemy.

OPEN FILES.—Files in line at 2 yards interval from one another.

HALF EXTENDED FILES.—Files in line at 4 yards interval from one another.

EXTENDED FILES.—Files in line at 8 yards interval from one another.

PARADE MOVEMENTS.—The movements laid down for the inspection of a regiment or body of troops.

PARADE LINE.—The line on which troops form for review, and from which the reviewing officer is received and saluted.

PASSING LINE.—The line on which the troops march past at a review, and at the centre of which is the reviewing officer's post.

PACE.—The denomination of different degrees of speed ; also a measurement of distance (30 inches) on foot.

A HORSE'S LENGTH.—A term of measurement (8 feet).

A HORSE'S WIDTH.—Three feet, which includes 3 inches outside the rider's knee on either side.

S. 3. Intervals, Distances, &c.

Intervals.

Intervals are measured as from knee to knee :—

Line	Between Files	6 inches.
,, ...	,, Open files	2 yards.
,, ...	,, Extended files... ...	8 yards.
,, ...	,, Half extended files ...	4 yards.
,, ...	,, Squadrons	8 yards.
,, ...	,, Regiments	16 yards, exclusive of band and staff.
,, ...	,, Brigades	16 yards.
Line of squadron columns ...	,, Squadrons	Frontage of all the rear troops of one squadron, plus 8 yards.
Mass	,, ,, ...	2 horses' lengths.
Any line of columns	,, Regiments	Deploying interval, plus 16 yards.
,, ,, ...	,, Brigades	,, ,, ,,
,, ,, (at close interval)	,, {Regiments	16 yards.*
	{Brigades	16 yards.*
Column of fours	,, Front and rear rank ...	½ horse's length.†
Sections	,, Knee to knee	6 inches.
Ranking past by sections ...	,, ,, ,, ...	1 horse's length.

* May be reduced to 8 yards or even 1 horse's length in rendezvous formation.
† No interval when a troop, in column of troops, takes ground to a flank by fours.

Frontage.

The extent of front of a force of cavalry in line is as many yards as it contains files, plus the intervals between the several bodies.

Distances.

Distances are measured as from head to croup :—

		Mounted.		On foot.
		Horses' Lengths.	Yards.	Paces.
Line	Front to rear rank, close order	1	2⅔	3
,, ...	Front to rear rank, order	3	8	3
,, ...	Troop leaders to front rank and rear rank to serrefiles at close order and order	1	2⅔	3
Open column	One body to another	Such distance that a wheel to either hand would bring the bodies into line, with the proper intervals.		
Column of troops	Front to rear rank	½	1⅓	3
Close column	One squadron or troop to another ...	1	2⅔	3
Brigade or divisional column of troops	One regiment to another	Such distance that a wheel to either hand would bring the bodies into line, with the proper intervals.*		
	One brigade to another			
Column of masses such distance that brigade or divisional mass can be formed to either flank by shouldering.		—	—	—
Filing from the right of fours	One horse or man to another	1	2⅔	4
Column of fours and sections	One horse or man to another	½	1⅓	3
Column of files and single file	One horse or man to another	½	—	1½
Column of fours	One squadron to another†	3¾	9⅔	about 15
Column of sections	One squadron to another (unless increased distance is ordered)†	½	1⅓	3
When ranking past by sections	One squadron to another	4	10⅔	—
Column of files and single file	One squadron to another†	½	1⅓	1½
Ranking past by sections ...	One horse to another	1	2⅔	—
	One regiment to another	9½	25⅓	—
Ranking past by single file...	One horse to another	½	1⅓	—
	One regiment to another	9½	25⅓	—

* May be reduced at discretion in rendezvous formation.

† In brigade, the distance from one regiment to another is such that when regiments are wheeled or shouldered into line the intervals will be correct (16 yards); this distance may be increased at discretion. When troops of other arms march in column of route with a cavalry regiment, the distance to be kept from the cavalry is 25 yards.

When troops of other arms march in column of route with a cavalry regiment, the distance to be kept from the cavalry is 25 yards.

DEPTHS.

		Horses' lengths.	Yards.
Line	Two ranks, close order	3	8
,, ...	Two ranks, close order (including troop leaders and serrefiles)	7	18⅔
,, ...	Two ranks, order	5	13⅓
,, ...	Two ranks, order (including troop leaders and serrefiles)	9	24
Open column	Excluding leader at head and serrefile (if any) at rear of column	Same as frontage in line before wheeling into column, less difference between frontage and depth of rear body.	
Squadron of 48 files, in 4 troops of 12 files (flank guides not covered)	In fours	17½	46⅔
	In sections	35¼	94⅓
	In files	71½	190⅔
	In single file	131¼	350⅔

If fours, sections, &c., are closed up, half a horse's length must be deducted from the above figures for every distance between successive fours, &c.

S. 4. Commands, Trumpet Sounds, and Signals.

Commands.

The way in which a word of command is given has a great influence on the manner in which the movement ordered will be executed. The executive part must be clearly distinguished from the cautioning part and must not follow it too quickly.

Leaders will accompany their commands with the corresponding signals.

When in squadron, troop leaders, as a rule, give no words of command unless, owing to dust, mist, darkness, or any other cause, their troops are unable to distinguish their signals ; in that event they give the necessary word, but no louder than is requisite to enable their own troop to hear it. When under instruction, troop leaders will give words of command at the discretion of the instructor.

When troops, the squadron being in line, are to act in the same manner and at the same moment, so that the squadron moves as a single body (as, *e.g.*, in inclining), troop leaders do not make use of signals ; when, however, they are to act separately (as, *e.g.*, in wheeling troops to a flank, advancing in squadron column from line, in changing the direction of the head of a squadron column, or in the incline of a squadron column), each troop leader makes the corresponding signal and directs his troop by the direction and pace of his horse.

The commands of brigade and division commanders will be conveyed by gallopers. When the general calls the gallopers, they will place themselves in front of him so that they will not have to cross one another when starting. They should invariably repeat their messages before leaving.

The leader of every unit must ride in such a position that he can readily hear the command or trumpet sound, and he is responsible that these are passed on correctly to the leaders next to him.

TRUMPET SOUNDS.

During field movements each squadron commander is to be accompanied by a trumpeter. The squadron trumpeters are, however, to repeat no other sounds than those for the "Charge," "Halt," and "Rally," except when in column of route at a distance from the enemy, then all sounds will be repeated.

The authorised field and regimental calls are contained in the book of instruction entitled "Trumpet and Bugle Sounds." Trumpters, when sounding, must hold the trumpet turned towards the body of troops for whom the call is intended, and and keep the bell up. All trumpeters will use the field bugle when sounding field calls.

The sound "*Line to the Front*" is only used for forming the squadron, &c., in line; the formation of squadron columns is indicated by the sound "*Squadron Columns.*"

If "*Line to the Front*" is sounded when the regiment is in column of troops, line will be formed on both flanks of the head of the column; if the regiment is in line of squadron columns, squadrons will form front on both flanks of their heads.

In direct échelon and half-column movements, if "*Line to the Front*" is sounded, and the squadrons are in squadron columns, it indicates that each squadron is to form front on both flanks of its head. If repeated, line will be formed. The same principle will apply to larger bodies of the same line.

If "*Squadron Columns*" is sounded when the regiment is in échelon of squadron columns, or in wing échelon of squadron columns, regimental line of squadron columns will be formed; if it is sounded when the regiment is in échelon of wing column of troops, each wing will form line of squadron columns, and regimental line of squadron columns can be formed by repeating the sound.

If "*Squadron Columns*" is sounded when the regiment is in line, or in échelon of squadrons, each squadron will advance in squadron column from the right; if the regiment is in column of troops, line of squadron columns will be formed on both flanks; if in mass, deploying intervals will be taken from the squadron of direction.

If the sound "*Squadron Columns*" is preceded by one or two C's, it indicates that heads of squadrons are to be wheeled to the right or left respectively.

The sound "*Mass*" indicates the formation of mass on the directing squadron from whatever formation the regiment may be in. If preceded by one or two C's, it indicates that mass is to be formed to the right or left respectively.

If "*Troops, Right (or Left) Wheel*" is sounded once, it indicates that all troops are to wheel half right or left; if sounded twice, a whole wheel is indicated.

If "*Head of the Column (or of Columns) change Direction to the Right (or Left)*" is sounded when the regiment is in column of troops (or wing column of troops), it will refer to the head of the regiment (or heads of wings); if the regiment is in line of squadron columns, it will refer to the head of each squadron. If sounded once, it indicates a half wheel of the head (or heads); if sounded twice, a whole wheel. The initial one or two C's will not be repeated.

Signals.

The following signals are to be employed to represent the words of command mentioned :—

(*a*) "*Advance*" or "*Forward.*"—Arm swung from rear to front, along side of the horse, finishing with the hand pointing to the front.

(*b*) "*Walk.*"—Hand open and raised, elbow bent, hand in line with the shoulder.

(*c*) "*Trot.*"—Clenched hand moved up and down between the thigh and the shoulder.

(*d*) "*Gallop.*"—Circular movement of the hand below the shoulder in a vertical plane.

(*e*) "*Halt.*"—Arm raised perpendicularly.

(*f*) "*Incline.*"—Arm extended horizontaliy in the required direction.

(*g*) "*Shoulders*" or "*Wheel.*"—Circular movement of the extended arm in line with the shoulder in the required direction.

(*h* "*Troops* (or '*Heads of Squadrons*') *Right* (*or Left*) *Wheel.*"—Arm waved from perpendicular to horizontal position in the required direction.

(*i*) "*Retire*" or "*Troops, Right about Wheel.*"—Arm circled above the head.

(*j*) "*Squadron Columns, from the Right,*" or "*Form Line of Squadron Columns.*"—Cuts "One" and "Two" on the right, and "Point."

(*k*) "*Form Squadrons*" (from Line of Squadron Columns).—Same as (*j*).

(*l*) "*Dismount.*"—Two or three slight movements of the open hand below the knee towards the ground.

(*m*) "*Mount.*"—Squadron leaders mount when the commanding officer mounts. The commanding officer then makes two or three slight movements of the open hand (palm uppermost) upwards.

(*n*) "*By Sections, with Carbines, Dismount.*"—Arm raised as for "*Halt,*" and then pointed to the ground.

The officers using these signals should, as far as possible, face the same way as those to whom the signals are made.

Signals of position, such as "*Halt*" or "*Incline,*" should be maintained. Signals of movement, such as "*Advance*" or "*Shoulder,*" should be repeated until it is clear that they are understood.

In order to prevent the signal "*Shoulder*" being mistaken for "*Advance,*" it is most important that in the former the hand should be kept level with the shoulder.

For the purpose of calling attention to their signal, officers will use a whistle.

Before giving a signal, commanders above the rank of troop leader will blow their whistle. Troop leaders, on hearing their squadron commander's whistle, will look for *his* signals (not for that of the regimental commander or brigadier); squadron commanders in their turn will look towards the regimental leader. The same principles apply to the leading of lines and working of a division.

S. 5. *Pace and Direction.*

Evenness of pace is the foundation of all cavalry efficiency in manœuvre.

In line, care must be taken not to diminish the pace, and in column not to increase it.

In all changes of pace it must be a fixed rule that before the new pace is taken up 3 horses' lengths will be passed over at the pace the body was moving before the change was ordered. The commander of every unit is responsible for the correct leading of his command. The direction, if necessary, will be indicated either by naming an object on which the directing officer is to lead, or by the commander riding in the direction required and ordering the officer of direction to follow in his track.

When a change of direction is made, leaders should at once turn their horses and point in the new direction.

S. 6. *System of Instruction.*

1. To prepare troops to manœuvre against an enemy in the field it is necessary :—

(*a*) That all leaders should have an accurate knowledge of the various orders of formation and the uses to which they are put.

(*b*) That all should be familiar with the evolutions laid down in the regulations.

(*c*) That they should be thoroughly drilled to the "Attack," "Rally," "Pursuit," and "Retreat."

2. To meet these requirements instruction of the tactical units (viz., the squadron, regiment, brigade, and division) in drill is divided under three headings :—

Orders of formation. Their description and uses.
Evolutions.
Drill of the "Attack," "Rally," "Pursuit," and "Retreat."

TROOP DRILL.

S. 7. *General Remarks.*

Before any movement can be properly carried out each troop must have been thoroughly trained under its leader to take its place in the squadron, and the following points must have been assured :—That—

(*a*) Every man knows the regulation paces of manœuvre.

(*b*) Can quietly leave the ranks, take up any given direction and march straight at the pace ordered.

(*c*) Can readily cross all kinds of obstacles.

(*d*) Can cut and thrust at objects with precision, and use his weapon (sword or lance) effectively in single combat.

Troops will be drilled by their leaders (under the general superintendence of the squadron commander) in the March in Line, Wheeling, Inclining, Passaging, Reining Back, Movements by Fours, Increasing and Diminishing the Front, &c. Leaders and guides will be instructed in their duties, whilst proficiency in pace and direction will be confirmed. The Drill of the Attack, Break up, Rally, Pursuit, and Retreat, and elementary instruction in dismounted action will also be practised.

For purposes of instruction in troop drill the troop commander will detail a N.C. officer to take his place as troop leader.

Whilst in this preliminary stage of their training much elementary instruction in squadron and regimental drill may be given to young officers and N.C. officers by means of "rope" drill on foot. A rope about 5 or 6 yards long can be used to represent the front of a troop, the end being held by two men, who act as flank guides.

Before carrying out the following exercises in two ranks the troop will be drilled in single rank. All movements will first be performed at a walk, then at the trot, and finally at the gallop.

Formation of the Troop.

The troop will be formed with 16 N.C.O.'s and men in the front rank, and be divided into four sections, numbered *right*, *right centre*, *left centre*, and *left* respectively. When there are not sufficient men for four sections three only will be formed.

Commanders of sections will ride in the front rank.

The left-hand man of the right half of the troop is called the Centre Guide. The senior N.C.O. in the troop will be posted as centre guide. He will take the place of the troop leader if the latter is disabled, and in this case his coverer, who must be the second senior N.C.O., will replace him.

The commanders of the right and left sections will be posted as flank men of the front rank and are termed Flank Guides. In troops of 12 men in front rank, the flank guides will not be covered, except when 23 men are present, then one flank guide may have a coverer.

The rule regarding the leaving of BLANK FILES in the rear rank is that No. 2 will first be left without a coverer and then No. 3.

The troop will always fall in in two ranks (see plate facing page 230). Each man must know his number and place in his section, and fall in accordingly.

When it is required to tell off a troop the following words of command will be employed:—

"*From the right, tell off by Fours.*"—The flank guides and centre guide are included in the telling off.

"*Flanks of fours, Proof.*"—While the men are proving, the commander sees that flanks of fours of the front rank are covered. In the case of a troop of 12 files, the files next to the flank guides must be complete. The farrier, ground scouts, signallers, trumpeter, and pioneers should not be flanks of fours if it can be avoided, and the scouts are to be placed in the flank sections. On service it is advisable to post the worst shots and men who are not required to shoot as No. 3 in both front and rear rank.

"*As you were.*"

"*Even numbers, Proof.*" "*As you were.*"

"*Centre guide, Proof.*" "*As you were.*"

"*Fours—Right.*"

"*Fours—Right.*"

"*Guides going to the rear—Proof.*"—The coverer of the centre guide and the two men on the flanks of the rear rank prove.—"*As you were.*"

"*Fours—About.*"

Serrefiles will be posted as shown in Plate, page 252.

S. 8. *Instruction of Leaders, Guides, and Centre Files.*

Before any attempt is made to drill troops in the field leaders and guides must be thoroughly instructed in their duties, first theoretically in quarters, then on foot, and finally mounted.

In the instruction of troop leaders the following points must be insisted upon :—

(*a*) The leader must never move himself until he has given the executive word of command or signal.

(*b*) He must, by strict attention to pace and direction, always be in his proper place, so that if the centre file follows him his troop is always in the proper position.

The guides must be thoroughly grounded in principles—subsequently laid down—which regulate the march in line, wheeling, inclining, &c.

S. 9. Practice of Pace.

Paces.

The rate of walk is 4 miles an hour, at which rate 117⅓ yards are passed over in one minute.

The rate of trot is 9 miles an hour as the general pace of manœuvre, at which rate 264 yards are passed over in 1 minute, or ¼ mile in 1 minute 40 seconds.

The normal rate of gallop is 15 miles an hour, at which rate 440 yards (¼ mile) are passed over in 1 minute.

The rate may be increased at the discretion of the officer leading an attack when under fire or just before breaking into the charge, or it may be diminished at discretion.

The rate of charge should not exceed the utmost speed that the body can sustain in good order.

In every exercise ground used by cavalry, a quarter of a mile, or shorter distance if necessary, is to be accurately measured and marked, and the troops are to be constantly practised in walking, trotting, and galloping over the distance so marked, at a uniform rate of movement, in the times indicated above. Commanding officers will satisfy themselves from time to time as to the accuracy of measurement of the marked distance.

Men and horses are to be trained to maintain the regular rate of trot and gallop for considerable distances.

Officers and non-commissioned officers are not to be considered fit to lead troops until they have acquired proficiency in riding at the regulated rates of manœuvre over the measured distance. They should further be accustomed to estimating distances of several miles, which can afterwards be verified by the map, or from the length of time required to traverse them.

S. 10. *Dressing, Passaging, and Reining Back.*

Dressing.

The dressing of a troop consists in the perfectly square position of every horse and rider with regard to the front, in the preservation of the correct intervals between files, and in the maintenance by the front rank of their proper distance from the troop leader, and by the rear rank of a similar distance from the front rank. On the move it consists in riding smoothly and perfectly square to the front at the pace ordered or led, in the maintenance of correct intervals between neighbouring files, and in the front rank keeping their proper distance from the troop leader, and the rear rank from the front rank.

The dressing is not to be obtained by the men looking to the centre or other directing point in the rank.

The proper interval between files is in all cases to be taken from the directing point. The men give to pressure from that point, but resist it from the flanks. "Passaging" and "Reining back" are necessary for the opening or closing of ranks, or for the correction of squadron intervals.

On the word "*Right (or Left) Pass—March*" the whole body moves together until it receive the word "*Halt.*"

The horses must be kept straight to the front, and not bent, and the proper interval between files maintained.

In reining back, the whole look to the front. The movement is never to be hurried, and the horses are to be kept straight.

S. 11. *The March in Line.*

On the command "March," or the signal of the troop leader, the whole troop moves off together, at the pace taken by the troop leader.

The following principles regulate the march in line :—

(*a*) Strict uniformity of pace.

(*b*) Correct and steady direction.

(*c*) Riding with correct intervals and distances *looking straight to the front* without crowding.

Any change of direction of the troop leader is conformed to by the centre guide turning his horse the same degree when he arrives at the point where the troop leader made the change, and by the front rank men gradually but quickly placing their horses in the same direction, and keeping the front of the troop square to the leader's front. Rear rank men cover their front rank men as accurately as they are able.

If, owing to the restiveness of his horse or difficulty of ground, the troop leader's pace should at any time be very irregular, the centre guide will regulate the pace, so as to ensure the advance of the troop being smooth and uniform.

If, during the advance, any of the men are stopped by an obstacle, they will, without waiting for orders, drop back into the serrefile rank until it be passed, when they will at once resume their places in the ranks at an increased pace.

Should the troop encounter a passage narrower than its front, the defile may be passed in the following manner :—On the command "*Break*," the centre and flank guides move up on the same alignment as the leader, and such front rank men

towards the centre as there is room for place themselves between the leader and the flank guides; the remainder drop back, rapidly ranging themselves in three or four ranks as may be necessary, with sufficient intervals from knee to knee, but closed up nose to croup, and with their horses' heads opposite the intervals in front. As soon as the defile is passed, the leader gives the command "*Form Ranks*," when the centre and flank guides drop back, and the men resume their original places.

If the width of the passage is not less than half the frontage of the troop, the depth of this formation will not be greater than the distance between troops in squadron column, so that even when formed in squadron column or regimental column of troops, there should not be any lengthening of the column; the head of each troop being kept at its usual distance from the head of the next troop.

If the troop is required to march over difficult ground which cannot be crossed in good order at close files, or with the ranks at the usual distance from one another, the commander may adopt any of the formations indicated by the following words of command, according to the necessities of the case, and the space available:—

(*a*) "*Advance by open* (*half-extended, or extended*) *Files.*" The front rank men maintain a general alignment, and each rear rank man covers the interval on the left of his front rank man. On the command "*Close*," files close to the centre.

When in squadron columns, there is only space for "open" files.

(*b*) "*Take Order.*"

When acting singly, the troop may be able to turn the difficult ground by diminishing its front to sections, &c.

The troop should be practised in making long advances at the trot and gallop, with only occasional changes of direction.

S. 12. *Inclining and Wheeling.*

Inclining.

The incline of a troop is executed as follows :—On the command "*Right (or Left) Incline,*" if on the move, or "*Right (or Left) Incline, March,*" if at the halt, the troop leader places his horse and employs the signal, each man causes his horse to turn on its fore feet in the same direction, so that his knee comes behind the knee of the next man on the flank inclined to, and the whole look towards that flank and dress by it.

The rear rank, which moves in the same manner, is regulated by the front rank, each horse being so placed that it would cover the corresponding front rank horse if both were turned to the front.

The flank guide on the directing flank, having ascertained his new front, marches steadily forward, and each man moves parallel to him, and preserves the same direction and position with regard to the next man on the hand towards which the incline is made, as when he turned his horse.

The troop leader controls the direction of the troop both by means of the correctness of his own position and by regulating that of the directing flank guide. He is to be careful to maintain his place opposite the centre guide, so that the latter shall exactly cover him on the troop resuming the original direction.

On the command or signal "*Forward,*" which is to be given when the centre of the troop is opposite its desired position, each man *at the same instant* turns his horse to the former front, when the body should be perfectly parallel to the original front, and the men dress to the former dressing point, closing rapidly but steadily to the centre of their troop, if they had opened out.

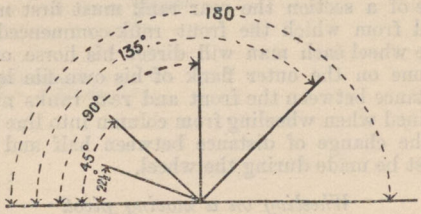
The incline of bodies smaller than a troop will be executed in the same manner, but it is to be understood that when there is no troop leader in front, the direction is to be taken from the flank man on the hand inclined to.

WHEELING.

The following are the words of command for the different degrees of wheel :—

"*Quarter right (or left).*" "*Half right (or left).*" "*Right (or left) Wheel.*" "*Three-quarters right (or left) about Whee'.*" "*Right (or left) about Wheel.*"

The degrees of wheel are represented on the followin diagram :—



Wheeling on a Fixed Pivot.

All wheels of a troop from the "Halt" or at a walk are made on a fixed pivot except when a column changes direction.

On the command "*Troop right (or left) Wheel*" the leader makes the corresponding signal and (if from the halt) moves off, bending his horse in the required direction, on the word "*March.*" He rides on the arc of a circle which has a radius equal to half troop frontage. On completion of the wheel he makes the signal for "*Halt*" or "*Forward*" as required. The front rank moves up the distance it has from the troop leader and the guides will act as follows :—

The centre guide rides in the track of the troop leader and maintains his distance.

The inner flank guide halts, glances to the wheeling flank, and comes gradually round with his rank, turning his horse on his fore feet. The outer flank guide trots round on the arc of a circle with radius equal to troop frontage, he must glance towards the troop leader and regulate his pace so as to conform to the latter's movements, but at the same time he must ride so as to prevent either opening out or crowding in the ranks.

Each front rank man must look to the troop leader and increase or decrease his pace so as to be correctly placed in rear of him. The touch is to be taken from the centre of the troop. Pressure from that point must be yielded to, whilst pressure from the flanks must be resisted.

As soon as the front rank begins to wheel, rear rank men must gain ground towards the outer flank by inclining or passaging. In the case of a section the rear rank must first move up to the ground from which the front rank commenced the wheel. During the wheel each man will direct his horse on the next man but one on the outer flank of his own file leader. The proper distance between the front and rear ranks must always be maintained when wheeling from column into line or line into column; the change of distance between half and one horse's length must be made during the wheel.

Wheeling on a moving pivot.

Wheels at the trot or gallop, and at all paces when a column changes direction are executed on a moving pivot.

The troop leader moves on an arc with a radius as follows :—

16 file troop	....	...	....	12 yards.
12 „	....	....	....	8 „

In other respects the same general principles are to be observed as in wheels on a fixed pivot.

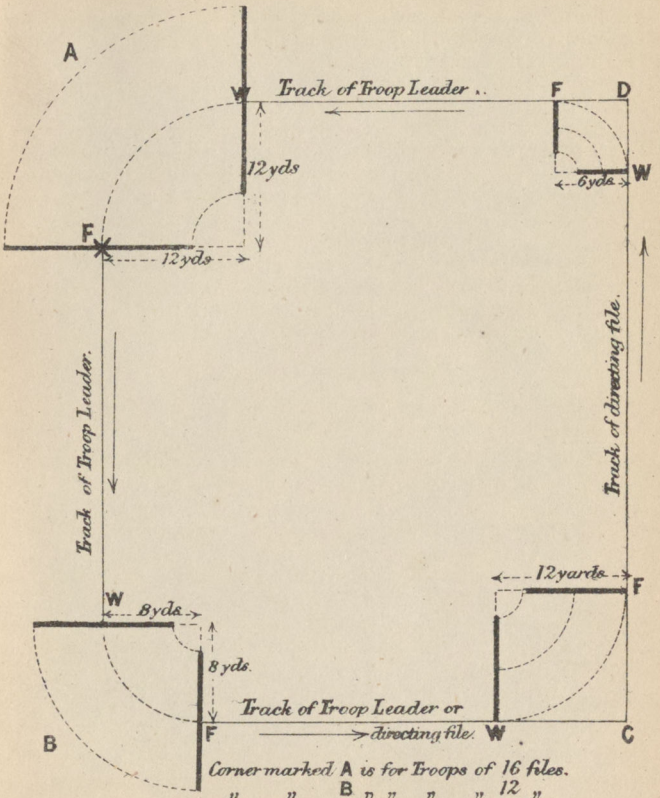
The troop leader continues, during the wheel, the same pace the troop was moving at before the wheel was ordered.

In the case of bodies smaller than a troop the outer flank man will direct, and will move on an arc with a radius as follows :—

Column of fours	....	....	....	12 yards.
„ sections	....	....	6	„
„ files	....	....	3	„

His pace during the wheel should be half as fast again as that at which the body is marching, and the original pace will be resumed on completion of the wheel.

Marks should be placed as in the Sketch marked **W. F.**
The wheel is to be commenced at **W** *and completed at* **F.**



Corner marked **A** *is for Troops of 16 files.*
" " **B** " " " " 12 "
" " **C** *for a Column of fours.*
" " **D** " " " " *Sections.*

Wyman & Sons, Ltd. Lith. 9312·10·97

In the case of a column of single files, the leading man will move on an arc with a radius of 3 yards.

The inner flank man will check to three-fourths the pace; the men in the rear rank must regulate their pace so as to maintain the alignment between the flank men.

On the completion of all wheels all must be careful to at once put on the inner leg and square their horses in the new direction.

It should be observed as a general rule that whenever a change of direction is ordered by an officer who is not personally guiding the troops concerned by the command "*Right (or Left) Shoulders,*"* or an indefinite degree of wheel by the command "*Right (or Left),*" the word "*Forward*" will be given by the officer who gave such command, as soon as the required change has been effected, and leaders concerned will make the prescribed signal; but when a definite degree of wheel has been ordered, such as "*Quarter Right*" or "*Right about Wheel,*" the word "*Forward*" will not be given, except during the earlier instruction of officers and men, the leaders concerned making the usual signal and placing themselves in the proper direction when they have completed the wheel ordered.

For instruction in wheeling at the trot or gallop a square should be laid out in the drill ground with the corners rounded off as in Plate, page 224.

S. 13. *Movements by Fours, &c.*

A body of men is told off by fours as follows:—

The men being in line, the command is given, "*From the right tell off by Fours,*" on which the right hand man tells off "*one,*" the second, "*two,*" the third, "*three,*" the fourth, "*four,*" and the fifth, "*one,*" and so on, in a loud but even tone of voice,

* No definite radius is laid down to be observed by the leader when a body of troops is "shouldering." It must, however, be such as will prevent undue crowding, and at the same time avoid passing over an unnecessary extent of ground.

each man when telling off turning his head towards the next man, and at once turning it again to the front. Telling off from the left can be done in a similar manner, the left man telling off "*four*," the second, "*three*," and so on.

The tellings off are then proved by the following commands :—

"*Flanks of Fours, Proof.*"—The men who told off "one" and "four" smartly stretch out their right hands at the full extent of the arm, palm of the hand to the left, fingers extended and close together, thumb close to the forefinger and level with the top of the shoulder. If swords are drawn the men prove by carrying swords ; men with lances push them forward to the full extent of the arm (first bringing the hand to the position of "Carry" if at the "Order").

"*As you were.*"—The men drop their hands smartly to the usual position. Swords are sloped, and lances brought to the "Carry" (or "Order").

"*Even Numbers, Proof.*"—Numbers 2 and 4 prove, as above.

"*As you were.*"

When in two ranks, the front rank men only tell off, but the rear rank men take up and prove their telling off with their front rank men.

The words of command are, "*Fours, Right,*" "*Fours, Left,*" "*Fours, About,*" and "*Fours, Left About.*" In all cases when the above commands are given, fours wheel at once (*i.e.*, each) front and rear rank fours wheel on their inner flank men—(*see* Plate) without the word "*March.*" If they are given at the halt, the men halt on completing the wheel. If given while on the move the men continue in movement after wheeling and do not receive the word "*Forward.*"

After wheeling "*Fours, About,*" the dressing continues to the same point as before going about.

In column of fours, sections, or files, the dressing is to the inner or directing flank on which the troop leaders are posted ; and the men on that flank are responsible for preserving their distances and covering. If the right of the troop, &c., be in front, the left is the inner flank, and *vice versâ*.

If for any very special purpose it be required to reduce the depth of a column of route, the command may be given, "*Close up,*" whereupon each rank closes up until the horses' heads are in line with the croups of the next rank in front, the men covering the interval on the right and left alternately of the corresponding men in the body next in front.

If a still closer column be necessary for any temporary purpose, the command, "*Overlap,*" may be given, whereupon the horses, placed as above, are pressed forward into the intervals.

These formations are only to be adopted when urgently required at the halt, or at the walk.

MARCHES TO THE FLANKS, FRONT, AND REAR, BY FOURS, &c.

The following marches are described as made from the right; they can, however, be carried out in a precisely similar manner from the left, the words "*Left*" and 4, 3, 2, 1, and "*Right*" and 1, 2, 3, 4, being substituted for each other in the explanations and commands.

The marches by fours, &c., can be executed either to the halt or on the move.

Taking ground to the Right.

By Fours.

"*Fours, Right.*"—The whole wheel fours right.
"*March.*"—The whole move off together.

By Sections.

"*Sections, Right,*" "*March.*"—The right hand section wheels to the right and marches to the flank. The remaining sections move in succession in the same manner, so as to follow in column at the proper distance.

By Files.

"*Files, Right,*" "*March.*"—The right hand men of both ranks turn to the right (the rear rank man closing to his proper interval, 6 inches) and march to the flank; the remainder move

off in succession in the same manner so as to follow in column at the proper distance.

In the case of two blank files coming together the rear man of the two will move up abreast of the man in his front in the proper order.

By Single File.

"*Single File, Right,*" "*March.*"—As for sections, substituting the word "*File*" for "*Section.*"

Advances from the Right.

By Fours.

"*Advance by Fours from the Right,*" "*Fours, Right.*"—The whole wheel fours right.

"*Head, Left Wheel,*" "*March.*"—The leading fours wheel to the left, receive the word or signal, "*Forward,*" and march to the front, the remainder move up to the ground from which the leading fours wheeled, wheel to the left, follow and cover.

By Sections.

"*Advance by Sections from the Right,*" "*March.*"—The right hand section marches to the front, the remaining sections wheel to the right in succession, advance nearly to the ground from which the right section advanced, wheel to the left, follow and cover.

By Files.

"*Advance by Files from the Right,*" "*March.*"—The right hand man of the front rank advances. The right hand man of the rear rank inclines to his right, at an increased pace, and places himself abreast of his front rank man at the proper interval. The remainder act as in taking ground to the right by files and follow in column at the proper distance.

By Single File.

"*Advance by Single File from the Right,*" "*March.*"—As for sections, substituting the word "*File*" for "*Section.*"

Retirements from the Right.

The instructions for retiring from right (or left) are the same as for taking ground to the right (or left), the head of the column changing direction as soon as it has completed the first wheel.

FORMATIONS TO THE FRONT, FLANKS, AND REAR.

The following formations are described as made from columns right in front; they can, however, be carried out in a precisely similar manner if the columns be left in front, the words "*Right*" and "*Left*" being substituted for each other in the explanations and commands.

When done to the halt, the whole of the men move during the formation at the pace ordered, or continue the pace at which they are moving; but when the formation is to be made without halting, the rear fours, &c., must be ordered to move at an increased pace, and the command for the formation will be followed by the words "*Rear, Trot (or Gallop).*"

For the first explanations, the formations will invariably be made from and to the halt, and the leading fours, &c., may then be moved up separately and placed on their ground.

In the first instructions, the leading men, as they form, are to be placed perfectly square to the front or flank; but when the men have acquired some proficiency, the base body should occasionally be placed obliquely to the original front, so that the troop or squadron can be formed in any direction required.

No fault requires to be corrected with more care than the hurrying up of the rear during a formation. The men are never to be allowed to move up in the least degree faster than the regular pace ordered, but they must be accustomed to forming squadron and troop in any direction at the gallop while the head is at the walk, so as to be prepared for any sudden emergency.

The modes of executing the formations in various directions described below, are to be thoroughly learnt by all ranks and

frequently practised; when the men are able to execute them with accuracy at all paces, they are to be occasionally exercised in forming line in two ranks in every direction, viz., to the front on the right or left of the leading body, to either flank, and to the rear, without regard to their proper positions in troop or fours; and special importance should be attached to the ability to form oblique line to the half front.

Formations to the Front.

(The columns being right in front and halted.)

From Fours.

("*To the Halt*") "*Form Troop,*" "*March.*"—The leading four men of the front rank advance six horses' lengths and halt; all the rear rank check their pace until the front rank men of fours next behind come up abreast of them: the whole then incline to the left, at the pace ordered, until opposite their places in line, when they move forward and form in the ranks to which they belong, the leading four men of the rear rank halting at their proper distance from the front rank.

If done on the move, the rear bodies take up the original pace as they form in line, *e.g.*, "*Form Troop,*" "*Rear Trot.*"

From Sections.

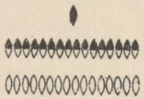
"*To the Halt,*" "*Form Troop,*" "*March.*"—The leading section advances six horses' lengths and halts; the remaining sections incline to the left, until opposite their places in line, when they move forward and form up in their proper places.

From Files.

"*To the Halt,*" "*Form Troop.*"—The leading man front rank advances six horses' lengths and halts. The leading rear rank man, when he has room to move, inclines to his left and forms up in his proper place in rear of his front rank man. The remainder incline to their left until opposite their places in line, when they move forward and form up in their proper places.

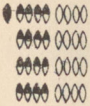
THE TROOP.

A Troop in Line
(16 Files.)

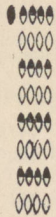


The Column of

Fours.

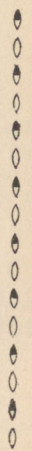


Sections.



Files.

Single Files.



Wyman & Sons, Ltd., Lith. 9312 · 10 · 97

From Single File.

"*To the Halt*," "*Form Troop*."—As for sections, substituting "*File*" for "*Section*."

In formations to the front to the halt immediately on issuing from narrow ways or streets, the formation of all but the head of the column becomes the same as laid down for "Formations to the Outer Flank," since all excepting the leading man must turn to the left as they come out of the defile and march along the rear of those already formed until they come opposite their places in line.

Formations to the Inner Flank.

(The column being right in front and halted.)

From Fours.

"*Fours Left*."—The whole wheel fours left into line.

From Sections.

"*To the Halt*," "*Left Form*," "*March*."—The leading section wheels to the left, moves up six horses' lengths, and halts. The remaining sections move on until nearly opposite their places in line, when they wheel to the left and form in the ranks to which they belong.

From Files.

"*To the Halt*," "*Left Form*," "*March*."—As from sections, except that the men turn instead of wheel, rear rank checking and inclining till there is room.

From Single File.

"*To the Halt*," "*Left Form*," "*March*."—As from section substituting the word "*File*" for "*Section*."

Formations to the Outer Flank.

(The column being right in front and halted.)

From Fours.

"*To the Halt*," "*To the Outer Flank, Right Form*," "*March.*" —The leading four men of front rank advance half a horse's length, wheel to the right, advance six horses' lengths beyond the right flank of the column, and halt; all the rear rank stand fast until the front rank men next behind come up abreast of them, and they have room to advance. As soon as the leading four men have cleared the front of the column, the remainder advance, and as each four arrives nearly opposite its place in line it wheels to the right, and the men form up in the ranks to which they belong.

From Sections.

"*To the Halt*," "*To the Outer Flank, Right Form*," "*March.*" —The leading section wheels to the right, advances six horses' lengths, and halts. The remaining sections advance until nearly opposite their places in line, when they wheel to the right and form in their proper places.

From Files.

As for fours, substituting the word "*Man*" for "*Four Men.*"

From Single File.

"*To the Halt*," "*To the Outer Flank, Right Form*," "*March.*" —As for sections, substituting the word "*File*" for "*Section.*"

Formations to the Rear.

Any formation of fours, &c., to the rear is to be executed by wheeling about fours, sections or single files, and in the case of files wheeling outwards about ("*Files About*"), and then executing the formation required, or the head of the column can be wheeled and the formation made to a flank.

On the command "*Files About*" each man halts, turns his horse on his haunches outwards about, and when square to the rear moves forward at the same pace as before he went about.

Diminution and Increase of Front.

In the following instructions the column of fours, &c., are supposed to be right in front. If the column be left in front, the words "*Left*" and "*Right*" must be substituted for each other in the explanations and commands.

In the first instructions, the movements will always be executed from and to the halt, as described below, but the mode of diminishing and increasing the front here laid down is equally applicable to columns on the move; in the case of columns of fours, sections, and files, the rear must be ordered to halt when diminishing the front on the move, and to increase the pace when increasing the front; in the latter case, too, the leading body will continue to advance instead of moving up six horses' lengths and halting.

Thus, in diminishing from fours to sections while on the move, the command will be "*Form Sections*," "*Rear Halt*," when all but the front rank of the leading fours will halt, and, in increasing the front from sections to fours while at the walk, the command will be "*Form Fours*," "*Rear Trot*," on which all but the front rank of the leading fours will take the increased pace, resuming the walk on arriving at their proper place in column.*

Diminishing the Front.

From Troops to Fours.

"*Advance by Fours from the Right*," "*Fours Right*," followed by "*Heads, Left Wheel*" ("*March*").

* When diminishing the front on the move on foot the rear mark time instead of halting, and when moving off from the halt the remainder mark time till it comes to their turn to move off.

From Troop to Sections, &c.

"*Advance by Sections from the Right*" ("*March*").

From Fours to Sections.

"*Advance by Sections*" ("*March*").—The leading four men of the front rank advance, the leading four men of the rear rank, as soon as their flank is clear, incline to the left, follow and cover. The remainder move off in succession in the same manner.

From Fours to Files.

"*Advance by Files*" ("*March*").—The leading Nos. 1 front and rear rank advance, the rear rank men closing to their proper interval. Nos. 2 front and rear rank incline inwards, cover and follow; then Nos. 3; then Nos. 4. The remainder move off in succession in the same manner.

From Fours to Single File. (Right in Front.)

"*Advance by Single File*" ("*March*").—The leading No. 1 of the front rank advances. The leading No. 1 of the rear rank inclines to the left, follows and covers. The remainder of the leading section move off in succession, first a front rank man, then a rear rank man, so as to follow in column. The remainder move off in succession in the same manner.

From Sections to Files. (Right in Front.)

"*Advance by Files*" ("*March*").—The leading No. 1 of the front rank advances. The leading No. 1 of the rear rank inclines to the right at an increased pace, closing to his proper interval; Nos. 2 front and rear rank incline to the right, follow and cover, then Nos. 3, then Nos. 4, rear rank men closing to the proper interval. The remainder move off in succession in the same manner.

From Sections to Single File. (Right in Front.)

"*Advance by Single File*" ("*March*").—The leading Nos. 1 front and rear rank advance; Nos. 2 front and rear rank, as soon as their flanks are clear, incline to the right, follow and cover, then Nos. 3, then Nos. 4; the remainder move off in succession in the same manner.

From Files to Single File.

"*Advance by Single File*" ("*March*").—The leading No. 1 of the front rank advances; the leading No. 1 rear rank inclines to the left, follows and covers; the remainder move off in succession in the same manner.

Increasing the Front.

From Single File to Files. (Right in Front.)

"*To the Halt,*" "*Form Files*" ("*March*").—The leading No. 1 of the front rank advances six horses' lengths and halts. The leading No. 1 of the rear rank inclines to his right, closing to his proper interval; the remainder form in the same manner as it comes to their turn.

From Single File to Sections. (Right in Front.)

"*To the Halt,*" "*Form Sections*" ("*March*").—The leading Nos. 1 front and rear rank advance six horses' lengths and halt; the leading Nos. 2, 3, and 4 front and rear rank incline to the left and form on the left of Nos. 1; the remainder form in the same manner as it comes to their turn.

From Single File to Fours. (Right in Front.)

"*To the Halt,*" "*Form Fours*" ("*March*").—The leading No. 1 of the front rank advances six horses' lengths and halts. Nos. 2, 3, and 4 of the front rank incline to their left and form up in

their proper places. The leading No. 1 of the rear rank inclines to the right and forms on the right of his front rank man, leaving room for his own Nos. 2, 3, and 4 to form on his left and interval between ranks. Nos. 2, 3, and 4 of the rear rank form on the left of their No. 1. The remaining fours form in the same manner as it comes to their turn.

From Files to Sections.

"*To the Halt*," "*Form Sections*" ("*March*").—The leading No. 1 front rank advances six horses' lengths and halts. The leading No. 1 rear rank checks his pace, inclines to his left, and places himself at his proper distance in rear of and covering his front rank man. All the remainder of the leading section incline to their left when they have room and form in sections on the left of their Nos. 1. The remaining sections form in like manner as it comes to their turn.

From Files to Fours.

"*To the Halt*," "*Form Fours*" ("*March*").—The instruction is the same as from single file to fours.

From Sections to Fours. (Right in Front.)

The leading four men of the front rank advance six horses' lengths and halt; the leading four men of the rear rank incline to the right and form on the right of their front rank men, *plus* the interval between ranks; the remainder form in the same manner as it comes to their turn.

S. 14. *Sword and Lance Exercise.*

Troops will be exercised by their leaders in Sword and Lance exercise.

For this purpose they will be formed up as follows:—On the command, "*From the Right of Fours to the Front File*," all halt except Nos. 1 of the front rank, who continue to march straight forward. Nos. 2, 3, and 4 of the front rank incline to the right in succession as they get room and fall into file, each at one horse's length distance in rear of their own No. 1.

Each rear rank section follows its front rank section in the same way. Nos. 1 of the front rank preserve the interval of 3 yards, dressing from the centre. The troop leader places himself in front of the centre (or right centre) fours.

On the command "*Form Ranks*," Nos. 1 of the front rank move straight on, the remainder increasing the pace. Nos. 2, 3, and 4 of the front rank incline to the left and form on the left of their Nos. 1.

Nos. 1 of the rear rank march straight on at an increased pace and form in rear of their file leaders, when Nos. 2, 3, and 4 incline to the left and form on them.

The troop leader then places himself in front of the centre guide.

S. 15. *Drill of the Attack.*

The charge is the culminating point of cavalry instruction. Rapidity and vehemence at the point of attack must be united with perfect order and cohesion.

The troop must be trained to pass over long distances at the fastest pace without loss of order.

Whenever possible the attack should be practised over a space of 1,200 to 1,800 yards, of which about a third should be passed over at the trot and the remainder at a gallop, except the last 50 or 70 yards which will be at the charge, *i.e.*, the highest speed at which the troop can move in good order. When the ground is not sufficiently extensive to admit of these distances being passed over, or when changes of direction are practised,

the portion passed over at the trot may be shortened, as it is most important to accustom the troop to riding in perfect order at the gallop; at the same time, long advances at the trot are most valuable for getting the horses in wind.

In order to accustom the troop to charge with effect on a particular point the enemy will always be represented by two troopers, with an interval equal to the frontage of a troop between them. At first these will be directed to remain halted, but finally, as the troop becomes more mobile, an officer (or N.C. officer) will be placed in command of the marked enemy and ordered to move at a trot in accordance with a definite plan, which will always be explained to the troop before execution.

When about 500 yards from the enemy the command will invariably be given, "*The Line will Attack.*" Upon this the pace may be slightly increased. When about 100 yards from the marked enemy the command "*Charge*" will be given, whereupon the marked enemy will retire direct or obliquely to the rear.

On the command "*Charge,*" swords or lances are brought to the Engage by the front rank only, each man slightly advances his body, increases the grip of his knees, and feels that his feet are well home in the stirrups. Care is to be taken that the full interval between files is preserved, so that the horses may have perfect freedom of movement.

It is from the uniform velocity of a force that its greatest effect is to be derived; the pace, therefore, must on no account be so rapid as to prevent the preservation of two distinct and well-defined ranks, nor should it be so much hurried as to bring up the horses to the attack blown or even distressed.

In practising the charge, after covering 50 or 70 yards at the most rapid pace that the troop can bear in good order, the commands "*Trot*" and "*Walk*" will be successively given; the pace will thus be gradually decreased, and a distance of 30 or 40 yards will be allowed before the final halt. No attempt is ever to be made to halt abruptly in practising the charge.

On the command "*Trot*" swords are sloped and lances carried.

Rear rank men are to be instructed to hold back to a good horse's length during the charge, but as it is necessary that the front rank should be complete at the moment of the shock they are to fill up any gaps immediately in front of them which may occur during or just before the actual charge, and are at all times to replace casualties in the front rank.

If there is much dust the rear rank should be ordered to hold back 50 or 60 yards.

In action the shock will of course be followed by a melée in which the ranks will become broken and the men more or less dispersed.

It is, therefore, of importance that troops should be constantly practised in the "Rally."

This is carried out as follows :—

After the trot has been ordered the command will immediately be given "*Break up,*" on which the troop will break up into disorder, the men circling round each other for a few minutes at the walk executing the sword or lance exercise without reference to their proper place in the troop; but even in this exercise the men are to be accustomed to gain ground gradually to the front as they would endeavour to do during the actual hand-to-hand fight. On the command and trumpet sound "*Rally,*" the men will at once form with the utmost rapidity at close files in two ranks, regardless of their proper position in them, in rear of their troop leaders.

The sound "*Rally*" means "*Rally to the Front to the Halt*"; if followed by one "G"—"*Rally to the Right,*" if followed by two "G's"—"*Rally to the Left.*"

The sound "*Forward*" after "*Rally,*" means a rally on the move.

As soon as the majority of the men are together the commander will advance at the gallop for 200 or 300 yards and execute, if necessary, another attack.

Rallying towards the rear should occasionally be practised in the following manner :—

The command "*Retire*" will be given followed by the

trumpet sound, upon which the troop leader, in the case of a single troop, will move towards the rear at a trot followed by the men in dispersed order. On the command and trumpet sound "*Rally*" all will turn *left* about and rapidly form two ranks behind the leader without attempting to regain their former places in troop. A short advance will be made as soon as the majority have reformed as prescribed when rallying towards the front.

For the attack in extended order.—The troop is to be practised to get into the formation described at (*a*) on page 221, rapidly and silently, and to extend from the centre or a flank as required. When in extended order a general alignment must be kept with the centre guide. Section leaders are responsible for the riding of their sections.

S. 16. *Passage of Obstacles.*

The troop commander will train his troop to cross all kinds of fences, ditches, &c., first by sections and then as a troop. In this exercise chief attention is to be paid to training the troop to pass obstacles as smoothly as possible without lengthening the column.

When about 20 yards from the obstacle the leader will give the word "*Hedge*," "*Ditch*," &c., and, followed by the front rank, will ride as the nature of the obstacle requires. The coverer of the centre guide will direct the rear rank and pass the obstacle as shown by the troop leader. The men are to ride with their feet home in the stirrups when jumping.

An important principle to be observed by all bodies of cavalry when approaching a defile, to pass which it is necessary to diminish the front, is that the leading body or bodies should trot on, cross the defile, and clear such a distance beyond it as will obviate any delay or obstruction, and halt, if necessary, for the remaining squadrons. The same applies to each successive body in rear.

S. 17. *Elementary Instruction for Dismounted Service.*

For first instruction in dismounted service the men will parade on foot; subsequently, when they have become familiar with the methods of forming up for firing from line and columns of route, they will carry out the exercises in conjunction with mounted drill.

Instruction in taking advantage of ground, trees, hedges, walls, &c., must be given to the men individually and afterwards in sections and troop, the men being accustomed to advance, extend, close, &c., on the signal or word of command of the section leader, in accordance with the directions of the troop leader.

In all dismounted work it must be borne in mind that control over fire is of vital importance; consequently, no firing should ever be permitted at drill except by word of command.

Method of dismounting and forming on foot.—Dismounted duties are divided into those of a temporary nature, for which three-fourths or half the men dismount and those of a more permanent character, in which all the men dismount and the horses are linked.

When it is required to dismount three-fourths of the men the command is given, "*By Sections, with Carbines—Dismount,*" on which the troop leader advances two horses' lengths, the front rank one horse's length; the odd numbers of both ranks then advance one horse's length and the whole dismount, except No. 3 of each rank. (In Lancer regiments the lance is to be placed in the off bucket through a loop attached to the off girth, the lance is then fastened to the off wallet by a hook supplied for the purpose.)* Even numbers of both ranks as

* When Serjeants dismount they will hand their lances over to No. 3, who will sling them on the bridle arm. No. 3 will hand his carbine to the serjeant whose lance he has taken.

soon as dismounted dress up their horses into the intervals; No. 1 of each rank takes his bridoon reins over, passes them under the backstrap of No. 2's headcollar, and hands them to No. 3, who meanwhile takes the reins of Nos. 2 and 4. The dismounted men, with carbines at the trail, then double to the front and form in line at close files three horses' lengths in front of the troop leader's horse, rear rank men coming round the flanks and forming on the left of their front rank men; the troop leader takes post three paces in front of the troop.

If it is required to dismount only half the men when in line the command is given, "*Odd (or Even) Numbers, with Carbines—Dismount,*" on which the troop leader advances two horses' lengths, the front rank one horse's length; the odd (or even) numbers of both ranks then advance one horse's length, dismount, and form as laid down in the preceding paragraph.

As rapidity of action is the most important consideration, the men, after being instructed in the modes of formation hereafter described, should be exercised in forming in any position and order under the directions of the troop leader. In all such exercises, however, the men of each section should be together.

A column of fours or sections can dismount by sections or by odd or even numbers, as in line, the necessary room being obtained by passaging to the right or left instead of advancing. In column of files either right or left men can be dismounted, but the latter dismount somewhat quicker than the former; the command for this is, "*Left (or Right) Men, with Carbines—Dismount.*"

If the men are then required to form to the front the leading sections form at a sufficient distance in front of the column to leave room for the sections in their rear.

They are thus ready formed in column of sections, and can be marched off in that formation, or at once form line to the front or to either flank.

If the men are required to act to the flank from the spot they stand on, the command for fours and sections is:—"*By Sections, To act on the Right (or Left), with Carbines—Dismount,*"

or "*Odd (or even) Numbers, To act on the Right (or Left) with Carbines—Dismount*"; for files the command is "*Left (or Right) Men, To act on the Right (or Left), with Carbines—Dismount.*" In all these cases the men form in line on the named flank, opposite their horses, and not more than three horses' lengths from them.

Should only a few carbines be required when in fours or sections, it is preferable to dismount one or two sections, so that the men may have their own section leaders.

Whenever the command (or trumpet sound) "*Mount*" is given to men on dismounted service, they turn about and double straight to their horses. If the troop is in line, rear rank men pass between the ranks, and to facilitate this the whole front rank will already have been moved up a horse's length more than the usual distance, and troops may be passaged so as to leave small openings between them. When the troop has dismounted by sections odd numbers move up one horse's length, Nos. 1, 2, and 4 mount, and the even numbers dress up into the intervals; if the men had dismounted by odd or even numbers, the dismounted men move up their horses one horse's length and mount, and the mounted men dress up into the intervals; in either case the rear rank when fully formed dresses up to its proper distance.

If the troop stands in fours, sections, or files, the men on arriving at their horses passage them so as to get sufficient room to mount; in this case they must not move them up, as they might delay the mounting of other men.

If the command "*Stand to your Horses*" is given to men on dismounted service, they double to their horses and stand to their heads.

If the "*Mount*" is sounded by the commander when not personally with the dismounted party, it is to be understood that this is the signal for the men to make for their horses, but the movement must be carried out on the command of the officer in charge of the dismounted men, and he will order it to be executed in quick or double time, as he thinks best.

"*To Link Horses*," "*Prepare to Dismount*."—The odd numbers of both ranks move up one horse's length, and, on the command "*Dismount*," the whole dismount in the usual manner, and the even numbers move their horses up into line. Each man then takes a pace to the front and turns about, unfastens his head rope, passes it down between the reins, and then (from the right to the left) passes it up between the reins of the horse next to him, and after passing it through the collar ring of that horse, knots the end of it in the collar ring of his own horse. The men then form up as directed.

A sufficient guard will be invariably left in charge of the horses. The ropes should be fastened so that when linked the horses' heads are not more than a yard apart. The best knot for fastening the rope to the collar ring is that called a "fisherman's bend."

On the command "*Prepare to Mount*," the men move to their horses, each man unfastens his head rope, disengages it from the collar ring of the next horse, puts it over his horse's neck to the off side, and fastens it ; the odd numbers then move up their horses one horse's length, and the whole prepare to mount in the usual manner. On the command "*Mount*," the whole mount, and the even numbers dress up.

Dismounted Men.—The men are to be deployed in such a manner as to be able to bring an effective fire to bear, while being as far as possible under cover.

No attention need therefore be paid to dressing or interval beyond what is necessary to keep the men in hand ; they can fire lying down, kneeling, sitting, or standing, exactly as is most suitable in each individual case. As a rule, however, the men when extended will not be more than a yard apart.

Troop leaders are in rear of the firing line, when deployed, except in changes of direction and advances under fire, when they must be in front.

All movements are to be carried out rapidly but deliberately, and the double will only be employed when necessary. Carbines are always to be kept at the trail, except in loading and firing.

Leaders will use a whistle for the purpose of calling attention to their signals and commands. The only trumpet calls to be used are "*Mount*" and "*Charge*."

Troop leaders regulate and control the fire, and indicate the object, range, and description of fire to be employed. Independent firing will, as far as possible, be carried out by files. The men of a file to fire and load alternately. In the case of volley firing, volleys will generally be fired by troops, but with troops of 16 files they may sometimes be fired by half troops.

All movements of the led horses are to be executed as mounted; they must always maintain an orderly formation. The movement of led horses is a most important point in the practice of dismounted service. They should be accustomed to move at the fastest pace with perfect order and precision.

THE SQUADRON.

S. 18. *Posts and Duties of Officers.*

Squadron Commander.

When the squadron is formed up for parade or inspection, the commander's place is one horse's length in front of the line of troop leaders, and opposite the centre of the squadron. In column his normal position is four horses' lengths from the inner flank, and in column of route on the inner flank of his leading fours, section, &c., outside the troop leaders.

Great independence must be allowed to the squadron commander with regard to his position. He must ride where he can best superintend and lead his squadron. When personally conducting his squadron, he will be well placed when riding at the distance of about half squadron frontage in advance of the directing troop leader.

Captain Second in Command.

When formed up for inspection or parade, the normal place of the captain second in command is in front of the right file in line with the troop leaders. In column, half a horse's length from the outer flank in line with the front rank of the leading troop; in column of fours or sections, &c., on the outer flank in rear of the squadron. His duty being to assist the squadron commander as much as possible, great latitude must be allowed to him as to where he rides. These remarks do not apply to a subaltern who may be temporarily second in command, who will lead his troop.

Troop Leaders.

When in line, troop leaders ride one horse's length in front of the centre file of their troops. In column, half a horse's length. In column of route, on the directing flank of the leading fours, &c. They are responsible to their squadron commanders for correct pace and direction, alignment, and covering in column, and for the maintenance of correct intervals and distances.

Serrefiles.

Officers.—In line, one horse's length in rear of the centre of the squadron; in column, on the outer flank, opposite the centre, and one horse's length from the flank.

Non-Commissioned Officers.—(Squadron serjeant-major and quartermaster-sergeant only). In line, one horse's length in rear of the flanks; in column they move up in line at 6 inches interval on the flank of the rear rank man behind whom they stood when in line.

Trumpeters.

If with squadron commander, half a horse's length in rear of, and on his left.* If not, he is in the rear rank.

---

* Always the place of trumpeters accompanying officers.

S. 19. *Orders of Formation: their Description and Use.*

The following are the orders of formation of a squadron :—

(*a*) The Line.
(*b*) The Squadron Column
(*c*) The Squadron Half-Column*

See Plates, page 252.

(*a*) The Line.

In line, the troops are placed side by side with the usual interval of files between their contiguous flanks, and one horse's length distance between ranks, and are numbered from the right, as 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th, as they stand in line at any time.

The line is the order of formation for the attack.

(*b*) The Squadron Column.

In squadron column the troops are placed parallel to each other; one in rear of the other at a distance equal to their frontage from front rank to front rank; the centres of troops covering, rear rank closed up to half a horse's length. The troops are numbered from the front 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th, as they stand in column at any time.

The squadron column is the order of formation for manœuvre

(*c*) The Squadron Half-Column.

In squadron half-column, the troops are placed parallel to one

* A "Half Squadron" formation may sometimes be found useful when (if under fire) less depth than a squadron column is desirable or where a single squadron has to form for attack against infantry. It can be formed from squadron column by the 2nd and 4th troops respectively forming line on the 1st and 3rd.

another, one in rear of the other, and every rear troop outflanks the one in front of it; rear rank closed up to half a horse's length from the front rank.

The distance (6 feet from rear rank to front rank in troops of 12 files; 13½ in troops of 16 files) and interval must be such that a half-wheel of troops to the inner flank will bring the squadron into line; a half-wheel to the outer flank into squadron columns. With troops of 12 files the outer flank guide covers the interval between the 3rd and 4th files from the inner flank of the preceding troop, and in troops of 16 files the interval between the 4th and 5th files.

S. 20. *Evolutions.*

The following evolutions are to be practised by the squadron:—

From Line:—
The march in line.
Changes of direction.
Formation of squadron column.
Formation of half-column.

From Squadron Columns:—
The march in squadron columns.
Changes of direction, position, &c.
Formation of line, &c., in any direction.
Formation of half-columns.

From Half-Column:—
Formation of line to front or flank or to right (or left) rear in any direction.

From Fours, Sections, &c.:—
Movements by fours, sections, &c., and formations, have been laid down in Troop Drill, and the movements are performed in squadron in exactly the same manner.

In advancing from squadron column by fours, sections, &c., the advance will be made from the outer flank of the leading troop. Retirements from the inner flank of the rear troop.

When a squadron moving in fours, &c., has to form squadron column on the move, the rear of each troop will be ordered by its commander to increase its pace (rear, trot, or gallop), and as soon as the troop is formed it will be led, in the case of sections, &c., at an increased pace into its position in the column.

FROM LINE.

The March in Line.

On the command "*March*," or the signal of the squadron commander, the whole squadron moves off together, each troop acting in every respect as laid down for the advance of a single troop, the general alignment and cohesion of the squadron being secured by the troop leaders riding on the same alignment, and at the proper intervals.

The leader of the centre (or right centre) troop is termed the directing troop leader. He is responsible to the squadron commander for the direction and pace of the squadron. The other troop leaders, riding at a uniform rate, and looking principally to the front, align themselves on him, and take their intervals from him or from the next troop leader towards him.

The squadron commander indicates to the directing troop leader on what object or in which direction he is to ride.

All troop leaders, while looking principally to the front, are to be attentive to any indication the squadron commander may make for their guidance. Before making any such indication, the squadron commander should attract the attention of troop leaders by whistle. They are especially to avoid fixing their attention on the directing troop leader for the purpose of main

taining their alignment, as such a proceeding would probably cause them to lose their interval.

Obstacles are passed as in the case of a troop, viz., by files breaking off from the flanks or dropping back into the serrefile rank; by diminishing the front; or by advancing by open half-extended or extended files.

In advancing in any extended formation, the extension is made from the centre of the squadron; after the extension has been obtained, the troop leaders, in front of the centre of their troops, maintain the alignment, the men of each troop dressing to the centre of their own troop. On rallying, the troop leaders and men close towards the centre of the squadron.

In filing from the right of fours, the dressing of each rank is to the centre of the squadron, until the ranks are reformed.

If an obstacle presents itself before the front of a whole troop, its leader halts it and leads it by the incline in rear of one of the other troops of the squadron, again leading it into its place in line, when the obstacle is passed.

The squadron should be practised in making long advances at the trot and gallop.

Change of Direction, &c.

Any change of direction ordered by the squadron commander is to be carried out gradually by the directing troop leader, due regard being had to the pace at which the advanced flank will have to move. The other troop leaders will conform rapidly, but without sudden check or hurry, and will be careful to retain their proper intervals.

Formation of Squadron Column.

Column to a flank.—"*Troops, Right Wheel—(March).*" Each troop wheels to the right.

Column to the front.—"*Squadron Column from the Right (1st Troop, 'Advance')—(March).*" The right troop advances, the remainder incline.

Column to the rear.—The squadron retires in column of troops from either flank, by first wheeling troops about to the hand from which the retirement is to be made, and at once advancing in column of troops.

Formation of Half-Column.

"*Half-Column from the Right* (*1st Troop*, '*Advance*')—(*March*)."—The right troop advances, the remainder incline to the right in succession.

Half-Column (Oblique).—"*Troops*, *Half-Right*—(*March*)." Each troop wheels half right.

Half-Column to the right rear.—"*Troops*, *Three-quarters Right About—March*." Each troop wheels three-quarters right about.

FROM SQUADRON COLUMN.

The March in Squadron Column.

The march of each body is conducted on the same principles as the march in line, the leading troop leader being responsible for the pace and direction.

Change of Direction and Position.

Wheeling the head of the column.—"*Head*, *Right Wheel* (*or* '*Half-Right*')—(*March*)." The leading troop wheels; the remainder wheel in succession on arriving at the point where the leading troop wheeled.

Change of Position.—The squadron column can change its position by changing the direction of its head, by wheeling troops into half-column or line to either flank, or by inclining. The incline is only to be used for short distances.

Formation of Line.

Line to the front.—"*Form Squadron* (*1st Troop*, '*Advance*'; *2nd Troop*, '*Right Incline*'; *3rd and 4th Troops*, '*Left*

Incline")—*March.*" The leading troop advances; the rear troops incline, taking the next quicker pace (gallop) when they have moved a distance equal to troop frontage; they are fronted ("*Forward*") when their centres are in rear of the point where they will be when in line, and take the pace of the directing troop on arriving in line with it ("*Trot*"—).

The squadron will always be formed in the above manner when the trumpet sound, "*Line to the Front,*" is used.

If a line is required on the right or left of the leading troop, the command will be "*On the Right (or Left), Form Squadron.*"

"*Right Wheel into Line—March.*" The troops wheel to the right together on a fixed pivot, and on coming into line move forward. Line to the half front. An oblique line to the right (or left) front can be formed by wheeling troops half right (or left), and ordering "*Form Squadron.*"

Formation of Half-Columns.

Half-column to the front. "*On the Left, Form Half-Column*" (*1st Troop, "Advance"—Rear Troops, "Left Incline"*). The leading troop advances, the remainder incline at an increased pace until they reach their respective positions in half-column ("*Forward*").

Half-column to the half-front.—"*Troops, Half-Right—(March).*" Each troop wheels half-right.

Troops can be wheeled three-quarters about.

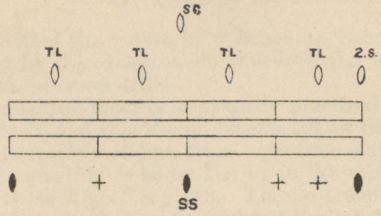
FROM HALF-COLUMN.

Formation of line from half-column must be frequently practised, it is often required during manœuvre. Explanations as to methods are needless, as they are obvious.

A "*Change of Direction*" should never be made from this formation.

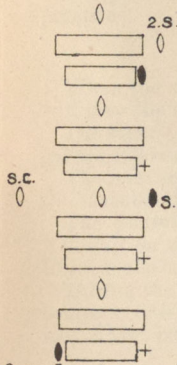
THE SQUADRON.

The Squadron in Line.



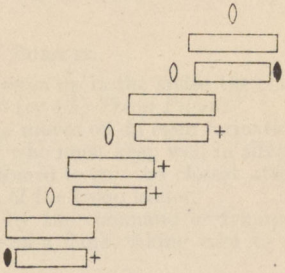
e Squadron Column.

Troops 12 Files.



The Squadron half Column

Troops 12 Files.



Squadron Commander
2nd in Command of Squadron
Troop Leader.
Serrefiles. S.S. *Squadron Serrefile.*
Extra men posted as serrefiles.

Wyman & Sons, Ltd., Lith., 83/2-10

S. 21. *Drill of the Attack, &c.*

The drill of the "Attack," "Break up," and "Rally" will be practised by the squadron on precisely the same principles as laid down in troop drill.

The squadron must be constantly practised in rallying to the right or left, and this should be effected on the same principles as the formation of line from squadron columns. Thus, supposing a squadron to be broken up in the melée and the order "*Rally to the Right*" is given. The 1st troop would rally direct to the right, the 2nd on the right of the 1st, the 3rd on the left of the 1st. The same principle will apply to the regiment or larger body. Squadrons are to be trained to rally in squadron column (which is more quickly done) as well as in line.

In squadron the drill of the pursuit and retreat must also be practised.

Pursuit.

When the squadron is broken up in the melée the commander will give the command "1*st* (*or* 4*th*) *Troop Pursue.*"

The named troop at once moves off in open formation at the gallop, following the leader who must keep well in advance.

The men are to be accustomed to pay the closest attention to the movements and signals of the troop leader.

The pursuit is stopped by the command or trumpet sound "*Rally*," on which all rally on a flank, taking care to clear the front of the squadron.

During the pursuit the main body of the squadron follows in compact order as a support to the pursuers. The commander may direct both flank troops in pursuit if he sees occasion.

Retreat.

Similarly, after breaking up, the command "*Retire*" will be given, repeated by all officers, on which the captain and serrefiles will lead the men to the rear, keeping them in hand. On the

command and trumpet sound "*Rally*," which will be repeated by all officers, the troop leaders will turn left about, face in the direction indicated by the squadron commander, and continue on the move ; the men will turn left about, and form with the utmost rapidity in two ranks, in any order, in rear of the troop leader.

A short advance should then be made in order to accustom the squadron to renew the attack upon a real or feigned retreat.

The retirement should always be carried out at the trot.

Ground Scouts.

Although every man in the squadron is to be instructed in the duties of ground scouts, a sufficient number of men must be selected for their superior intelligence and good horsemanship, and especially trained as the scouts of the squadron, and one or two of these men are to be placed in the rear rank of each troop.

The duties of scouts are to ascertain whether the ground in the immediate vicinity, in front of the squadron (and on its flanks in column), is suitable for cavalry, to point out obstacles, and to indicate the best points of passage.

Scouts must be careful not to expose themselves unnecessarily to view on the high ground, or against the sky line.

Single troops should always throw out scouts in difficult ground ; a squadron should never manœuvre over unknown or broken ground without being preceded by a ground scout.

The number of scouts employed, and the distance to which they are to go out, must depend upon the nature of the ground and the rapidity with which the body is moving ; they must not, however, be more numerous than is absolutely necessary, and must be sufficiently in advance to give ample warning of obstacles, but never out of sight of their squadrons.

Under ordinary circumstances, one man per squadron is sufficient, and, as a general rule, ground scouts should not be less than 200, nor more than 500 yards at the outside away

from their squadrons ; if on a flank, they must know what sort of ground intervenes between them and the column.

Squadron commanders are responsible (without any order) that one scout from each squadron gallops out to a point at a suitable distance, as explained above, in front of the centre of his squadron if in line, or line of squadron columns, or opposite the exposed flank of the squadron ; in the latter case also, the leading squadron sends out an additional scout ahead of the column. After reaching this point, each scout conforms as far as possible to the pace and to any change of direction of his squadron.

When moving fast over very difficult ground, two scouts may with advantage be sent out by each squadron ; one man can then halt to point out a passage, while the other explores the nature of the ground.

The following signals are to be used by ground scouts :—If the ground is boggy, or otherwise impassable, they will halt and raise their swords or lances perpendicularly ; they will then make for whatever point appears practicable, pointing towards it with sword or lance. If the ground within view in front and on either side is quite impracticable, a scout will face his squadron, raise his sword or lance, and ride in to the squadron to report.

At drill, scouts can be recalled by the command or sound "*Rally.*"

As the duties of ground scouts in broken ground take a good deal out of the horses, squadron commanders will be careful to equalise the work among their scouts, and to save all unnecessary galloping ; thus, if a line retires by the wheel about of troops over ground not previously traversed, fresh scouts will be sent out to the new front, and those already out will rejoin their squadrons.

Drill of Squadron for Dismounted Action.

This will be carried out on the principles contained in "Dismounted Service," under "Manœuvre."

When dismounting in column of troops, troop leaders fall out on the inner flank. Front ranks and odd numbers advance half a horse's length, and when dismounted form in column of troops in single ranks in front of the led horses, unless required to act on a flank.

THE REGIMENT.

Note.—The following sections are laid down for regiments of three squadrons, but they are equally applicable to the regiments of Indian Cavalry, which are composed of four squadrons. In the latter the squadron of direction will be the 2nd, unless otherwise ordered, and when working by wings, the rear wing will comprise two squadrons.

S. 22. Posts and Duties of Officers.

Commanding Officer.

No precise place can be assigned to the commanding officer, or second in command. The former must at all times avoid keeping too close to his regiment, as in such a situation he cannot exercise proper supervision over its movements. His position generally should be where he can best superintend his regiment, make his words of command heard, and his signals seen by the squadron commanders. When personally guiding his regiment he will be well placed if he rides about 30 yards in front of the directing squadron commander.

Second in Command.

Will generally assist the commanding officer.

Squadron Commanders.

See Squadron Drill, page 245. They must always be in a position to hear easily the orders, or receive the directions of the commanding officer.

Troop Leaders.

The direction and pace of the regiment when in line depend upon the movements of the directing troop leader of the squadron of direction, who is termed the officer of alignment. He moves according to the orders of his squadron leader. The directing troop leader of every other squadron regulates his pace and direction in accordance with the movements of the squadron of direction. In line of squadron columns, leading troop leaders preserve the general alignment and the proper interval between squadrons. In column or half column, they preserve the distances of their squadrons.

The Adjutant.

During drill and manœuvre he rides near the commanding officer.

Markers.

The regimental sergeant-major acts as the regimental marker, assisted by a squadron serrefile. When the regiment is in line or line of squadron columns he will ride in rear of the squadron of direction. When in column on the outer flank of the leading troop.

Standard Bearer and Escort.

In all field movements the escort is posted at close files on each flank of the standard, which is always in line with the front rank, unless otherwise directed.

In line and line of squadron columns, the position of the standard and escort is between the 1st and 2nd squadrons, half a horse's length from the right flank of the latter.

In any échelon of squadrons; on the inward flank of the 2nd squadron (*i.e.*, the flank nearest the centre of the regiment).

In column and échelon of troops; on the outer flank of the leading troop of the 2nd squadron.

In fours and column of route ; in rear of the 2nd squadron.

When a regiment is composed of three squadrons, the positions of the standard are modified as follows :—

In line and line of squadron columns ; between the 1st and 2nd squadrons, half horse's length from the right flank of the latter.

In any échelon of squadrons ; on the right flank of the 2nd squadron.

In column and échelon of troops ; on the outer flank of the leading troop of the 2nd squadron.

In fours and columns of route ; in rear of the 1st squadron.

S. 23. *Orders of Formation : their Description and Use.*

The orders of formation are as follows :—

(*a*) The Line
(*b*) The Line of Squadron Columns
(*c*) Mass
(*d*) Column of Troops
(*e*) Half-Column

See Plates, pages 264 and 268.

From these any échelon in any desired direction can be formed.

(*a*) The Line.

In line, the squadrons, each formed in line, are placed side by side in the same line, at intervals of 8 yards.

The various échelon orders are described in "Terms of Formation, &c.," page 202.

The line is the order of formation for the attack.

(*b*) The Line of Squadron Columns.

Squadrons, each formed in squadron column, are placed side

by side, with their heads in the same line at intervals of 8 yards, plus the frontage of all the rear troops.

For description of échelon and half-column orders, *see* pages 202 and 203.

These orders are used during the second or manœuvring phase of manœuvre. Squadrons are more independent in such formations, they are adapted to various conformations of ground, losses from fire are reduced, and changes of direction are easily executed.

(*c*) Mass.

For description, *see* page 202.

Mass is the order of formation generally adopted by smaller bodies in the first (or reconnoitring) phase of manœuvre. It is useful for purposes of concealment, and yet favours deployment to front or flank. In the larger bodies it is the formation used by the reserve.

(*d*) The Column of Troops.

In column of troops, the squadrons, each in squadron column, are placed one in rear of the other, covering by the centre, the troops being at open column distance from each other.

The column of troops may be useful at various stages of manœuvre, or when it is necessary to advance on a narrow front.

(*e*) Half-Column.

A regimental half-column has the same relation in every respect to a regimental column of troops as a squadron half-column has to a squadron column. It may be either direct or oblique. It is often useful during manœuvre.

S. 24. *Evolutions.*

The following evolutions are to be practised by the regiment. It is to be distinctly understood that they are only to be taken as *examples*, and do not furnish an exhaustive list of all the movements a regiment is capable of executing :—

From Line :—
The march in line.
Changes of direction.
Advance and retirement in échelon, of wings or squadrons.
Formation of squadron columns.
„ mass.
„ column of troops.

From Line of Squadron Columns :—
The march in line of squadron columns.
Changes of direction, &c.
Formation of line.
Advances or retirements in échelon, or by succession of wings.
Formation of half-column.
„ mass.
„ column of troops.

From Mass :—
The march in mass.
Changes of direction and position.
Formation of line or line of squadron columns.
„ column of troops.

From Column of Troops :—
The march in column of troops.
Changes of direction, &c.
Formation of line or line of squadron columns.
„ mass.

From Half-Column :—
Formation of line.

FROM LINE.

The March in Line.

In the march in line, which must be constantly practised, the march of each squadron is conducted in the same manner as when marching singly, except that the directing leaders select such points in their front to lead upon as will ensure their preserving sufficient interval from the squadron of direction (or the centre squadron unless another is named), and ride on the same alignment as the corresponding leaders of that squadron.*

The squadron interval is only intended to allow, at the halt, for the expansion which must necessarily take place when the squadron moves, and which increases as the pace gets faster. As the pace increases the intervals gradually disappear. The preservation of intervals is no criterion of excellence in the "Charge."

When the regiment is to move off in line, the commanding officer gives the caution, "*The Regiment will Advance*," followed by "*March*" ("*Walk*," or "*Gallop*," "*March*"), and the squadrons are put in motion on the squadron commanders repeating that command.

If an obstacle presents itself before the front of a squadron it may be turned or passed over by adopting some of the formations mentioned in squadron drill, or the squadron may be placed in rear of a neighbouring squadron until clear of the obstacle. If two squadrons have to pass through a narrow opening, the one nearer to it, or, if the distance is about the same, the one nearer the centre of the regiment, should have the precedence.

Change of Direction.

A change of direction can be effected by the directing troop

* When the object upon which the regiment is leading is some distance off, all leaders should be directed to look to it and lead on it.

leader gradually circling into the direction indicated to him; or the command or signal "*Right (or Left) Shoulders*" can be given, on which the directing troop leader of the squadron of direction gradually circles into the new direction according to the instructions of his squadron commander, without altering his pace, the rate at which he brings up his shoulder being regulated so as to prevent the pace of the flank that is to be brought forward being too hurried; the directing troop leaders of other squadrons increase or diminish their pace so as to preserve their alignment on the directing troop leader of the squadron of direction. The word or signal "*Forward*" is given when the desired alteration of direction is completed.

Advance and Retirement in Échelon.

"*Advance in Échelon of Squadrons from the Right.*"

The 1st squadron advances; the remainder advance in succession as each gets a distance equal to its frontage and interval from the front of the preceding squadron.

"*Advance in Échelon of Wings from the Right.*"

This is executed by the rear wing being held back to a distance equal to its frontage and the interval between wings.

"*Retire in Échelon of (Squadrons or) Wings from the Right.*"

This movement is executed on the same principle as advances, troops being wheeled right-about if the retirement is from the right, left-about if from the left.

"*Advance in Double Échelon from the Centre.*"

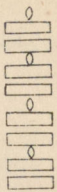
The centre squadron (or squadrons) advances, the flank squadrons following at open column distance, unless any other distance be ordered.

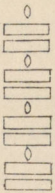
In all échelon movements the leading body (squadron, wing, &c.), directs.

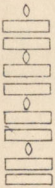
To face p. 262.

THE REGIMENT.

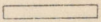
In Echelon of Squadron Columns.







In Echelon of Squadrons.



Wyman & Sons, Ltd. Lith, 9312·10·97.

Formation of Line of Squadron Columns.

Squadron column can be formed in any direction, as in squadron drill.

Formation of Half-Column.

See Squadron Drill, pages 251 and 252.

FROM LINE OF SQUADRON COLUMNS.

The march in line of squadron columns is conducted on the same principles as the march in line.

Change of Direction and Position.

A change of direction may be effected by altering that of the directing troop leader, and the regiment should be constantly practised in changing direction to the extent of the quarter circle, the rear troops of squadrons covering as rapidly as possible. When followed by a halt, this movement constitutes a change of position. A change of position to the rear is executed in a similar manner, the front being first reversed by the wheel-about of troops, and the squadrons being again fronted on reaching the new alignment.

A rapid change of direction (*e.g.*, half-right) is best executed by wheeling heads half-right ("*Heads, Half-Right*"), followed by "*Squadron Columns*"; the 1st squadron marches straight on, the remainder are conducted into their places in line at an increased pace, by changing the direction of their heads.

A change of direction to the right can be executed by wheeling heads half-right and giving the command "*Squadron Columns, Left Forward*"; in this case the 1st squadron changes direction half-right, or as much as may be necessary, and the remainder march straight on at an increased pace until they get the full interval from the next squadron on the right, when they change direction and form on the alignment of the 1st squadron.

If followed by a halt, these movements constitute a change of position, and are equally applicable for throwing a flank back.

"*Advance in Échelon of Squadrons from the Right.*"

Changes of front are made and oblique line of squadron columns formed by wheeling the heads of squadrons.

Oblique line to the left is formed by giving the command, "*Troops, Half-Left,*" followed by "*Form Squadrons,*" "*Form Line.*"

Advances in double échelon and in wing échelon of squadron columns, and retirements in échelon and wing échelon of squadron columns, are executed as from line.

"*Advance in Half-Column of Squadrons from the Right.*"

The 1st squadron advances; the remainder incline (or change direction) to the right in succession so as to get into half-column.

The exact position of rear squadrons depends on the strength and number of the troops; in the case of 4 troops of 12 files, the head of each squadron should be the depth of squadron column in rear of the head of the next squadron in advance of it (*i.e.*, practically level with the rear of the rear troop of the preceding squadron), and the intervals between squadrons should be about $2\frac{1}{2}$ times troop frontage.

"*Retire in Succession of Wings from the Right.*"

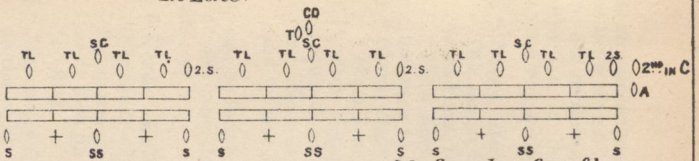
The right wing retires by the wing leader's command, "*Right Wing,*" "*Troops, Right-About Wheel,*" the executive word "*March*" being, for this first retirement only, given by the commanding officer, and after retiring 150 yards, or such distance as the commanding officer may direct, is fronted by the command, "*Troops, Right-About Wheel,*" "*Halt.*" The left wing then retires by the command, "*Left Wing,*" "*Troops, Left-About Wheel,*" given by the commanding officer or senior squadron commander, and on reaching the alignment of the right wing is formed on it by the command, "*Troops, Left-About Wheel, Halt.*"

Formation of Line.

"*Form Squadrons.*"—Each squadron forms on both flanks, as in squadron drill.

THE REGIMENT.

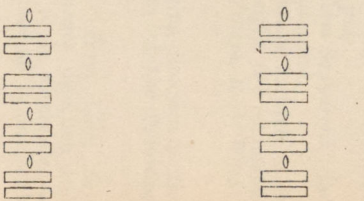
In Line.



C.O. *Commanding Officer.*
2ND IN C *Second in Command.*
S.C. *Squadron Commander.*
2.S *Second in command of Squadron*
T.L. *Troop Leader*
A. *Adjutant*
T *Trumpeter.*

S.S. *Squadron Serrefile.*
S. *Serrefile.*
\+ *Position if extra men in Serrefile rank.*

In Squadron Columns.



To face p 264

Wyman & Sons, Ltd, Lith, 9312-10-97.

The movement will be performed in this way on the sound "*Line to the Front.*"

Line can be formed to the half-front by shouldering or changing direction in line of squadron columns, and forming line when required, or by any of the following methods :—

(*a*) "*Troops, Half-Right,*" followed by "*Form Squadrons.*"—This causes the regiment to be formed in half-column of squadrons, from which line is formed by the command "*Form Line,*" the 1st squadron advancing, the remainder inclining to the left at an increased pace.

(*b*) "*Heads, Half-Right,*" followed by "*Form Squadrons,*" and "*Form Line,*" as in the previous movement.

(*c*) If, after changing the direction of heads half-left, it be required to form line towards the right, the commanding officer can give the command "*Troops, Right Wheel,*" and "*Form Line,*" as in (*a*).

Line can be formed to the flank by changing direction to the right or left and forming line, or by any of the following methods :—

(*a*) "*Heads, Half-Right,*" followed by "*Form Line, Left Forward.*"—The 1st squadron changes direction and forms squadron ; the remainder do so in succession, as each gets its proper interval, and come up in line with the first.

(*b*) "*Line to the Right.*"—The 1st squadron wheels into line to the right ; the remainder are conducted opposite their places in line by changing the direction of their heads, form line, and move up into alignment with the 1st squadron.

Formation of Mass.

"*Form Mass.*"—The 2nd squadron advances ; the remainder

are conducted into their places in mass at an increased pace by changing the direction of their heads. Mass can be formed on any squadron (*e.g.*, "*Mass on the 1st Squadron*").

If required to be executed from and to the halt, the base squadron advances the depth of the column; the remainder wheel into line inwards, and wheel troops to the front when they have their proper interval. If the base squadron is not to advance, the remainder may move into position by fours.

Mass to the half-front, or to a flank, can be formed by the command "*Half-Right, Form Mass*" or "*Right, Form Mass.*" The 1st squadron takes the required direction and the remainder form mass upon it by changing the direction of their heads.

There are other ways of performing the movement which it is not necessary to describe.

Formation of Column of Troops.

"*Column of Troops from the Right.*"—The 1st squadron advances; the remainder wheel heads half-right in succession, and take the shortest route into column, so as to form column of troops, and follow the 1st squadron.

It is a general rule that when an advance or retirement is made from a central portion of a line or line of columns, the remaining troops of the same wing are to be the first to follow in column.

An advance in column of troops in an oblique direction can be made by giving the command "*Heads, Half-Right,*" "*Form Column of Troops,*" when the 1st squadron continues to advance, and the remainder get into column by the shortest route.

Column of troops to a flank is formed by the command "*Heads, Right Wheel.*"

"*Retire in Column of Troops from the Right.*"—The 1st squadron wheels troops right about and moves direct to the rear; the remainder follow by the shortest route.

FROM MASS.

March in Mass.

This is conducted on the same principles as the march in line.

Change of Direction and Position.

Changes of direction and position are executed by altering that of the directing troop leader or by the command "*Right (or Left) Shoulders.*" The regiment should be constantly practised in changing direction to the extent of the quarter circle, the rear troops of squadrons covering as rapidly as possible. Change of position to the rear are executed in a similar manner, the front being first reversed by the wheel about of troops.

Change of direction to the half-front or flank, at the same time opening out to full intervals, may be executed by the command "*Squadron Columns to the Right (or Left).*" The first squadron then changes the direction of its head, and the remainder form line of squadron columns upon it.

Ground is taken to a flank by wheeling troops into quarter column.

Formation of Line.

Line of squadron columns will first be formed in the required direction, and squadrons deployed. In case of urgent necessity (which, however, should never arise unless great negligence has been manifested in reconnoitring or observation), the following method may be adopted :—The direction being first changed, if necessary, by shouldering, the command "*Form Line*" may be given, when the two flank squadrons will form line on the right and left respectively, and immediately incline sharply outwards until the central squadron has room to deploy.

"*Line to the Right,*" as from line of squadron columns.

Squadron columns are formed by opening out from the squadron of direction or other named squadron. Column of troops as from line of squadron columns.

FROM COLUMN OF TROOPS.

The March in Column of Troops.

In marching in column, the greatest attention is to be paid to the preservation of the proper distances between successive troops. The leading troop leader of each squadron is responsible for the distance and covering of his squadron.

When the regiment is to move off, the commanding officer gives the caution "*The Column will Advance*," and the squadrons are put in motion and the direction indicated as in the march in line, *care being taken that the movement from head to rear of the column is simultaneous.*

Change of Direction.

The column changes the direction by the command "*Head, Right Wheel* (*Half-Right*) *or* (*Right*)."

Formation of Line.

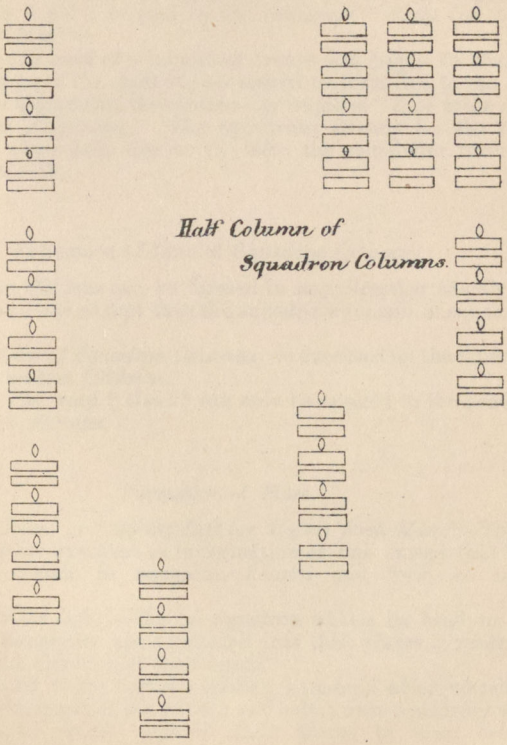
The 1st squadron forms squadron (on both flanks), the 2nd squadron wheels its head half-right, the 3rd wheels its head half-left, and each forms squadron in the same manner as the 1st, and moves up into the alignment.

This movement will be executed on the trumpet sound "*Line to the Front*," or command "*Form Line.*"

When both the rear squadrons are required to form in a flank the command will be—"*On the Right* (*or Left*), *form Line.*"

In any of the preceding movements, an oblique line can be formed by indicating the required direction to the leader of the leading squadron, or by adding the words "*Left* (*or Right*) *Forward* (*or Back*)," to the caution to form line. The head of the leading squadron is at once placed in the required direction, and the heads of rear squadrons, after getting the proper interval, are wheeled parallel to it before squadron is formed. In regiments of four squadrons the 4th squadron will form up on the left of the 3rd.

THE REGIMENT.



Wyman & Sons, Ltd. Lith. 9312·10·97.

Line to the half-front can be formed by the command "*Troops, Half-Right*," followed by "*Form Squadrons*," and "*Form Line.*"

Line to a flank is formed by the command "*Right* (*or Left*) *Wheel into Line.*"

If, after the head of a column of troops has begun to change direction (*e.g.*, to the right), it be desired to form line to the left on the new alignment, the caution can be given "*Line to the Left on the new Alignment.*" The squadrons already on the new alignment wheel into line to the left; the remainder form in line on their left.

Formation of Line of Squadron Columns.

Squadron columns can be formed in any direction exactly as formations of line except that the squadrons remain in squadron column.

"*Form Line of Squadron Columns* is executed on the trumpet sound "*Squadron Columns.*"

NOTE.—The word "Head" can only be applied to the head of a column or columns.

Formation of Mass.

"*Form Mass*" or "*On the Left* (*or Right*) *form Mass.*"—These movements are executed as in formation of line except that the squadrons remain in squadron column and form at close interval.

"*Mass to the Left.*"—The 1st squadron wheels its head to the left; the remainder are conducted into their places in mass by changing the direction of their heads.

If executed to the halt the leading squadron after wheeling moves up the depth of the column and halts; rear squadrons will advance until nearly opposite their places in mass before changing direction.

Mass to the half-front in an oblique direction can be formed by the command "*Heads of Squadrons, Half-Right,*" followed by "*Form Mass.*" If the commanding officer adds the words "*Left Forward,*" the 1st squadron will at once wheel its head half-right.

FROM HALF-COLUMN.

See The Squadron page 252.

S. 25. Drill of the Attack, &c.

The Attack.

When the regiment is to attack, and after the gallop has been assumed, the caution is invariably given "*The Line will Attack,*" as in squadron drill.

The charge is executed in exactly the same manner as prescribed for the squadron. (*See* Section 28, Part IV, regarding the formation of support and reserve.)

The Break Up and Rally.

The "Break up" is carried out on the same principles as laid down in troop and squadron drill.

The regiment will rally after the charge and break up as directed for the squadron, squadron trumpeters repeating the signals given by the commanding officer's trumpeter. The commanding officer will indicate the direction in which the regiment is to advance or retire on rallying.

When an immediate attack is necessary, squadrons rallying on the flanks can be led to the attack in échelon.

The Pursuit and Retreat.

These are carried out on the same principles as laid down in Troop and Squadron Drill.

To prepare for any circumstances or conditions under which the pursuit may have to be conducted two or three squadrons with one or two in support must be practised in pursuit, or only one squadron in pursuit and the remainder in support.

When a particular squadron only is intended to pursue, the sound "*Pursue*" will be preceded by one or more C's indicating the number of the squadron referred to.

When "*Pursue*" is sounded or ordered without other instructions, all the squadrons will pursue except the squadron of direction. The latter will rally and follow in support.

THE BRIGADE.

S. 26. *Posts and Duties of Officers.*

No precise place can be assigned to the brigadier. He will ride wherever he can best superintend and direct the movements of his command. When personally guiding his brigade, he will be well placed if he rides about 30 yards in advance of the commander of the regiment of direction. When the whole brigade attacks, the brigadier will lead it, but if a portion is held back as a support, his duty is to direct the last formed body of his command. In the case of an independent brigade, the commander will be guided by the rules laid down for the divisional leader, page 277. When the brigade is formed for parade, his post in all orders of formation is ten horses' lengths in front of the leading officer or officers, and opposite the centre of the brigade. His staff officers are two horses' lengths in rear of him, and at one horse's length interval from each

other; gallopers, if present, one horse's length in rear of the staff officers, except when the staff, including gallopers, does not exceed four officers in number; in this case the staff will form in one line.

The duties of the brigade major are to assist the brigadier.

S. 27. *Orders of Formation: their Description and Use.*

The following are the orders of formation of a brigade:—

The line.
The line of squadron columns.
The brigade mass.
The line of masses.
The column of masses.
The column of troops.
The half-column.

From these orders of formation any échelon in any desired direction may be formed.

Description and Use.

The descriptions and uses of the various orders of formation are the same in principle as in the case of the regiment, but an interval of 16 yards must be preserved between regiments whether in line or column.

S. 28. *Evolutions.*

The following evolutions are to be practised by the brigade:—

From Line:—

The march in line.
Changes of direction.
Advances and retirements in échelon.
Formation of squadron column.

From Line of Squadron Columns:—

The march in line of squadron columns.
Changes of direction and position.
Formation of line.
Advances and retirements in échelon or by succession of half brigades.
Formation of half-columns.
" brigade mass.
" line of masses at deploying interval.
" column of masses.
" column of troops.

From Brigade Mass:—

The march in mass.
Formation of line or line of squadron columns.
" column of troops.
" line of masses at deploying interval.
" columns of masses.

From Column of Masses:—

Formation of squadron columns.
" brigade mass to front or flank.
March in column of masses.
Changes of direction.

From Column of Troops:—

The march in column of troops.
Changes of direction, &c.
Formation of line and line of squadron columns.
" brigade mass.
" line of masses at deploying interval.
" column of masses.

From Half-Column :—

Formation of line.

Brigade movements will be executed on the same principles as laid down for the regiment.

In the formation of line, line of squadron columns, or line of masses from column or échelon, it is a general rule that regiments will be formed first, and afterwards brought up into the general alignment.

In movements in which rear bodies are brought up into alignment with the leading body, the rule laid down in the case of the squadron and regiment will be observed, viz., the second regiment will form on the right of the first ; the same principle will hold good should the brigade be composed of only two regiments.

When regiments have to move independently, commanding officers must name their regiment before giving the executive word of command. Thus (From Squadron Column) :—"Column of Masses to the Right," "— Hussars," "Right form Mass."

In all movements in line, line of squadron columns, or line of masses, a squadron of one of the regiments (which will be considered the directing regiment) will be the brigade squadron of direction, and the nearest squadron of the other regiment will serve as directing squadron of that regiment.

In brigade movements, commanding officers must attach the greatest importance to moving their regiments into the required position with rapidity, and must not devote their attention to details of regimental drill.

Officers commanding regiments will only use the bugle for the purpose of repeating the brigadier's bugle signal, so as to show that it has been understood, and will as a rule give the orders for the movement of their own regiments either by word of command or by signal.

When the brigadier's general order is given by signal only, regimental commanders will repeat the signal, which will be at once acted upon by the squadron commanders. If the brigade order is conveyed verbally, regimental commanders will repeat

it before giving the words required for the movement of their respective regiments.

Squadron commanders repeat the regimental words of command, as in regimental movements, but do not repeat the general brigade order.

When the order of the brigadier is not distinctly heard, or is not understood, each regimental commander, when the intention is obvious, will conform as quickly as possible to the movement executed by the other regiment or regiments.

The sound, "*Squadron Column*" or "*Mass*," indicates that *each regiment* will assume that formation.

If repeated, *Brigade* line of Squadron Columns or *Brigade* Mass is required.

The exact movement to be performed by each regiment in brigade drill must often be decided by the features of the ground, and much latitude must be given to regimental commanders in this respect; accordingly, the movements described in the following sections must be looked upon as guides rather than as hard and fast forms to be adhered to under all circumstances.

MOVEMENTS FROM "SQUADRON COLUMNS."

1. Mass to the Right.
   Brigadier's command:—
   "*Heads Right Wheel*" followed by "*Mass*" when column of troops has been formed.

2. Column of Masses to Right.
   Each regiment will receive the order "*Right Form Mass*," the rear regiments then draw up to their correct distance at an increased pace.

FROM COLUMN OF MASSES.

3. Squadron Columns.
   (*a*) With two regiments in brigade, the leading regiment opens out from its right squadron and the second

regiment forms squadron columns upon the right of the leading regiment.

(*b*) With three regiments in brigade the leading regiment opens out from its second squadron.

FROM BRIGADE MASS.

4. Squadron Columns to the Right.

Brigadier's first command :—

"*Column of Masses to the Right.*"

Officer commanding regiment :—

"*Change direction to the Right*" or "*Left Shoulders.*"

Brigadier's second command :—

"*Squadron Columns.*"

5. Change direction to the right.

When the change is less than a quarter circle the whole brigade will shoulder. When the change is a quarter circle each regiment will change direction by shouldering independently and move direct to its position. The outer regiments must advance a certain distance before shouldering.

S. 29. *Drill of the Attack, &c.*

For drill purposes it is good practice for lines of cavalry of the extent of a brigade to advance at a gallop over long distances making but very slight changes of direction, gradually increasing and diminishing the pace till perfect steadiness is acquired at the regulation 15 miles an hour. If horses rush out of the ranks, or any confusion arises, the pace should be diminished, the line collected, and again increased.

After every attack duly delivered, the "Break up," "Rally," "Pursuit," or "Retreat" must be practised.

The general method of conducting those exercises are the same as laid down for the regiment.

(*See* Sec. 28, Part IV., regarding formation of support and eserve.)

THE DIVISION.

S. 30. *Posts and Duties of Officers.*

The greatest independence must be accorded to the divisional commander. His position will be where he can best see the course of events and come to a decision regarding the right time for deployment. When the division attacks, the divisional commander will direct the action of the reserve. When formed for parade his post is ten horses' lengths in front of the brigadiers and opposite the centre of the division.

The divisional commander must never wait for orders to attack. He must at all times avoid splitting up his command without good reason, and will guard against employing an entire line when a smaller detachment will suffice.

Staff and gallopers as for brigadiers.

S. 31. *Orders of Formation: their Description and Use.*

Rendezvous orders, viz.:—

The divisional mass.

Line of brigade columns of masses at close interval.

Column of brigade or regimental masses; or any other formation suitable to the ground.

The preparatory order.

The attack order.

Description and Use.

The various rendezvous orders of formation are the same as described in brigade drill, the distances and intervals between

brigades being the same as those laid down to be kept between regiments. The distances between brigades in column may be increased when there is much dust.

When the cavalry is in column of brigade masses the batteries are in line at close intervals, one on the outer flank of each brigade, the detachments in line with the heads of the brigades. If in column of masses they are in column of sections on the outer flank of the division.

In divisional mass the batteries are in rear of the centre at close intervals (except in inspection or review order, when they are on the right).

The above orders are used for the purposes of rendezvous.

The preparatory order will frequently have to be modified to suit the circumstances of ground, &c., but, as a rule, will take the form of a double échelon, the leading line in brigade mass, in line of squadron columns or line of masses at deploying interval, the other two lines, each in mass or column of masses, following in échelon on either flank at 200 yards distance, and outflanking the leading brigade by 50 to 100 yards. The batteries will move in the vicinity of the division wherever the ground offers most advantages: as a rule, either on a flank or in rear of the leading brigade.

Deployment for attack will be most easily executed from a preparatory order, but the division must be trained to deploy for attack from any order of formation, including column of route.

The exact order of attack which should be adopted in any particular case must depend entirely upon the dispositions of the enemy, and the configuration and accidents of the ground, and no fixed attack order is ever to be laid down as a normal. For the purpose of practising the brigades in the combined drill movements which may be required in the presence of the enemy, the division will usually be in three lines, as in the preparatory order. In that order, however, the division is presumed to be equally threatened on both flanks, and the rear lines are therefore equally distant from the 1st; whereas,

in advancing to the attack, according to the proposed direction of the attack with regard to the enemy, the dispositions of the latter, the position selected for our own guns, and the nature of the ground on either side of the field on which the fight is to take place, one flank will be more exposed to the enemy's attack than the other, or it will be desirable to make a greater effort on one flank than on the other. The former is termed the threatened or exposed flank, and in the attack order the rear line on this flank remains at a shorter distance from the 1st than the corresponding line on the other side, which is designated the protected flank.

The order of attack which will usually be adopted for drill purposes is as follows :—1st line, a brigade in line of squadron columns ; 2nd line, 2 regiments from the 2nd brigade in line of squadron columns or échelon of regiments, or with outer regiment in column of troops, or line of masses, at 180 to 250 yards distance and 50 to 100 yards interval from the 1st line on the flank which is assumed to be most exposed ; 3rd line, a regiment from the 2nd brigade in mass at 350 to 400 yards distance and 50 yards interval from 1st line on opposite flank to 2nd line.

In the case of 3 brigades in a division the 2nd and 3rd line would each consist of a brigade. In this case the leading line might be reinforced by squadrons from either of the rear brigades. When the 3rd line is strong enough it may, if necessary, furnish two or more succour squadrons, which will follow the 1st line, on the same alignment as the 2nd line, at wide intervals, but these should only be required with hastily improvised brigades and divisions. They would be useless where there is much dust.

S. 32. *Evolutions.*

The training of the division must be so carried out that subordinate commanders have opportunities for developing those qualities which the successful handling of their commands in

line tactics demands. Rapidly to grasp the tactical situation, quick perception of the commander's plans, instantaneous decision regarding his own movements, and, finally, independence in action, are some of the necessary qualities in which every leader must be practised.

As a preparation for manœuvre in open country, the division will be exercised so as to be able to :—

(1) Pass with rapidity and certainty from one to another of the several orders of formation.

(2) March considerable distances in these formations, and quickly to alter the direction of its march without loss of order when moving at a fast pace.

(3) Pass from a formation for march to one in lines, and deliver an attack against any of the three arms, and finally to rally rapidly behind its leaders in any direction.

The more these exercises can be made to resemble the actual conditions of the fight, the more useful will the instruction be.

In the field the manner of execution of any movement depends upon the varying conditions of ground and enemy, it is not possible, therefore, to lay down for all occasions how any movement is to be executed. Hence brigadiers and subordinate commanders must be allowed great independence as to the manner in which they execute any movement. It is, therefore, to be understood that the following examples of divisional movements are given solely as instances regarding how certain movements can be executed under the most favourable conditions of open ground and the absence of any tactical objective.

From Rendezvous Formation in Column of Brigade Masses.

Preparatory Formation.

Leading brigade forms squadron columns from its centre.

Two regiments of 2nd brigade move to a position about 200 yards to the rear and with 50 to 100 yards interval from the flank of the leading brigade. The remainder of the 2nd brigade

moves to a similar position in rear of the other flank of the leading brigade. Commanders of the rear lines ride on a line with the leading brigade.

In the case of three brigades in the division, each line would consist of one brigade.

Preparatory Formation to the Right.

Leading brigade wheels into column of masses to the right and forms squadrons columns.

Rear brigade sends from its outer flank one or two regiments to be échelloned on left of leading brigade. The remainder of brigade wheels about and forms in échelon on the right. In the case of three brigades, the centre brigade will form the leading line, the other brigades being échelloned on the flanks.

FROM RENDEZVOUS FORMATION IN COLUMN OF MASSES.

Preparatory Formation.

Leading brigade forms squadron columns.

The 2nd brigade provides for the two lines échelloned in rear of the flanks of the leading brigade.

In the case of three brigades in the division the 2nd brigade will form in échelon on the right, the 3rd brigade on the left.

Preparatory Formation to the Right.

Leading brigadier commands, "*Brigade mass to the right,*" followed by "*Squadron columns.*"

The rear brigade provides the lines échelloned on the flanks.

In the case of three brigades, the centre brigade will form the leading line to the right, the first and third brigades being échelloned on the left and right respectively.

FROM PREPARATORY FORMATION.

Change direction to the right.

That portion of the rear brigade échelloned on the right forms squadron columns to the right. The leading brigade sends one

or two regiments, as the case may be, to the right to prolong the first line, the remainder of the brigade being échelloned on the left. That portion of the rear brigade that was échelloned on the left moves into its new position in échelon on the right.

In the case of three brigades, the brigade échelloned on the right forms squadron columns to the right, the original leading brigades form in échelon on the left, and the remaining brigade moves to its new position in échelon on the right.

Brigades will be designated by the names of their commanders.

PART IV.—MANŒUVRE.

Preliminary Observations.

Manœuvre represents the application of drill to the circumstances of contact with the enemy. A clear distinction must be drawn between parades for drills and those for field manœuvre.

Manœuvre must always be conducted upon some clear tactical idea, which must be based on correct principles and intelligently understood by all engaged in the operation. As in war the cavalry fight will nearly always be the climax of some detached operation, so the manœuvre of a small body (a squadron or regiment) should be the outcome of some exercise in detached duties, such as the concentration of a reconnoitring force or the supporting of piquets to repulse enterprises against an outpost line. An advanced or rear guard action is also a common use to which cavalry is put in war.

The fight of the brigade or division will often result from the execution of an extensive reconnaissance the details of which service will materially influence its progress and chances of success.

It is also of great importance that cavalry leaders of all grades should understand the *rôle* they have to fulfil when fighting in conjunction with the other arms, and so be able to direct their operations as to render the greatest assistance and support to the force with which they are acting. To this end they must make themselves thoroughly acquainted with Part V. Infantry Drill (Combined Tactics).

In order that an intelligent knowledge of detached duties and a correct appreciation of the *rôle* of cavalry in conjunction with the other arms may precede the study of the cavalry fight to which these operations naturally tend, the instructions for the carrying out of the former have been placed before the principles which are to guide the latter. In educating the young cavalry leader in an intelligent knowledge of his duties

in war the same system of *progressive instruction* should be followed.

During manœuvre horses must be spared as much as possible. Men should be dismounted at every available opportunity (*e.g.*, a squadron should dismount as soon as formed to wait for others of the same body to form). Men are to rise in their stirrups and ride on the bridoon rein when swords are not drawn.

DETACHED DUTIES.

S. 1. *General Observations.*

The detached duties of cavalry are divided as follows :—

(*a*) *Information*—

Systematic reconnaissance, or the obtaining of information regarding the opposing troops or the country.

(*b*) *Protection*—

Outposts to protect a force when halted.

Advanced, rear, and flank guards to protect a force on the march.

Every officer should be provided with the following articles, which are necessary for the proper performance of detached duties. N.C. officers in charge of parties should, as far as possible, be similarly provided :—

Map of the ground to be traversed, with the main roads traced in red and the rivers in blue, and transparent cover for the map.

Black, red, and blue pencils, and india-rubber.

Compass, pair of dividers, and protractor.

Forms of report (A. B. 153) with envelopes (A. F. C. 398); drawing paper (ruled in 1-inch, 3-inch, and 4-inch squares), and tracing cloth.

Memorandum book, with metallic pencil.

Knife.

Box of lucifer matches.
Pair of field glasses.
Watch, set by that of the officer commanding the party.

The rapid collection and speedy transmission of accurate information being the keynote of all effective service in detached operations, it is considered desirable, before commencing the study of these important duties, to remind officers and N.C. officers that in war what is called negative information is always of great importance. For a commander of large forces in the field to know positively that the enemy is *not* or was *not* in a certain locality at a certain time may be of immense value. Whilst the constant regular recurrence of reports that "All is clear" tends to spread a feeling of security and confidence which is all important to a force, whether halted for rest or on the march.

The rule as to when arms should be drawn is as follows:—*In an open country and by day* swords need not be drawn, and only those men nearest the enemy (that is to say, the leading men of a patrol or advanced party) march with arms drawn and loaded.

In an enclosed country, in immediate presence of an enemy, at night, and in foggy weather, all detachments of about the strength of a troop or less, which are nearest to the enemy (such as reconnoitring, flanking, and other patrols, the advanced party of an advanced guard) march with arms drawn and loaded, the leaders with swords drawn.

INFORMATION.

S. 2. Reconnaissance and Screening Duties.

The task of searching for the enemy and supplying information about him is almost exclusively the work of cavalry. This duty is called "Reconnaissance."

The first duty of a body of cavalry ordered to reconnoitre is to gain and keep touch with the enemy, to drive back any opposing cavalry, and approach the main detachments of the enemy's infantry, so as to discover their positions and report their movements. Special tasks may, in addition, often be assigned to the commander of a reconnoitring force, such as :—

1. To destroy magazines, railways, telegraphs, and so hinder enemy's concentration.
2. To seize special points which may be of use to its own army, or the loss of which may seriously affect the enemy's plans.
3. To cover the mobilisation and subsequent movements of its own army by keeping the enemy at a distance and by protecting railways, telegraphs, &c., from his raids.

The cavalry commander must first receive instructions of the following nature from headquarters :—

(1) News of the enemy's position and movements, together with the commander-in-chief's intentions.
(2) The questions which the commander-in-chief desires to have answered, such as, for instance, whether certain towns or places are occupied ; whether detachments or masses of the enemy's troops have reached a given line ; whether on a given railway or road troops are being transported, &c.
(3) The daily halting places of the heads of the main columns and of headquarters.
(4) Means available for transmitting information.
(5) Arrangements as to supplies.
(6) Points to be seized or destroyed.

At the commencement of operations, when the opposing forces are at a distance of several days' march from each other, and uncertainty exists regarding the enemy's whereabouts, long distances at a rapid rate will have to be covered by the reconnoitring bodies. For this reason well mounted officers' patrols, supported by contact squadrons if opposition is feared, will be

pushed rapidly forward to important points, to touch main roads and railway junctions and places where indications of the enemy are likely to be found.

Commanders of reconnoitring detachments must take the necessary steps, without special orders on the subject, to ensure that their messages shall be rapidly and safely forwarded. At the same time commanders of larger units can often greatly assist in this by pushing forward small detachments to important points on roads for the purpose of receiving and transmitting messages.

While these reconnoitring detachments advance as rapidly as possible to their objectives and seek to clear up the general situation, the mass of the cavalry would move more or less concentrated according to the nature of its mission.

The nature of the country to be passed through and the strength and enterprise of the enemy will determine the dispositions of an advanced cavalry force ; several roads running parallel to the advance will enable information to be rapidly transmitted from front to rear, while a number of lateral roads facilitates concentration. Considered in detail, the dispositions of an advanced force of cavalry should satisfy the following requirements :—

(*a*) Information must be sought, the enemy discovered, and contact maintained, by small bodies, to which great independence must be accorded.

(*b*) These fractions must be followed up by larger bodies, so strong and at such a distance that they can always render them the support necessary to attain their object.

(*c*) There must be ability to concentrate the whole force with rapidity and certainty, so as to prevent the isolated bodies being beaten in detail, and, therefore, too great dispersion must be avoided, and an effective system of intercommunication must be organised.

(*d*) A reserve must be provided, as an ultimate support and rallying point.

Against civilised troops, and in a cultivated country, the front that can be covered by a division, without undue extension

may be taken to be about 12 miles; but, according to the nature of the country, the character of the enemy, and the necessities of the case, a division may be expected to cover a front of 18 or 20 miles. While at a distance from the enemy, the advanced bodies can be pushed further forward, extended over a wider front, and allowed more complete independence than when the enemy is within striking distance; and as soon as the position and direction of movement of the enemy's main forces have been clearly ascertained, the reconnoitring force must contract its front, so that concentration in any particular direction may be speedily effected.

The advance of the main body or bodies of the advanced cavalry will naturally be by the principal roads running in the required direction; while the smaller and more advanced bodies, although paying particular attention to the roads on which the enemy's chief forces may be expected to move, will scour the whole of the country within the assigned zone.

If there are two routes, a brigade might move on each route, each covering its own front with a regiment or more if necessary, a reserve for the whole being formed by a regiment from each brigade following in rear on the most important of the two roads; but as a rule, in a country which is at all practicable for cavalry, the general disposition of the division will be as follows:—

One brigade with the horse artillery will be held back in reserve, following a central route. About two miles in front will march the headquarters of the leading brigade (one regiment). About the same distance in front, but from three to four miles on either flank, will march the other regiments of the brigade. Each of these advanced regiments, keeping one squadron in support, will detach two squadrons to the right and left to a similar distance in front. These are called "advanced" squadrons, to distinguish them from all other detached reconnoitring squadrons, which are termed "contact" squadrons.

This arrangement takes the form of a screen composed of several successive lines, increasing in strength and concentration from front to rear, and the distances and intervals named

are such as will enable the division to concentrate in time to resist any attempts to break through the veil in force at any point.

Each of the advanced squadrons providing for its immediate security by a small advanced and rear guard and flankers is now arranged for systematic reconnaissance and screening. Patrols consisting as far as possible of the sections of 1, 2, or 3 of the troops of the squadron are sent out about 2 or 3 miles to the front and flanks, whilst the remainder of the squadron moves along a central route. From the patrols small scouting parties of 2 or 3 men will be detached in order to thoroughly search the country. As regards drawing arms, the rules laid down on page 285 on this head will be adhered to.

The distance of the advanced squadrons from the support, and their intervals from each other, will depend, if the object is merely to reconnoitre, upon the nature of the country, the direction of the roads, and the proximity and force of the enemy. In this case they will generally be extended as far as possible, in order that too many men may not be employed on the service; but the distance and intervals should be such that the different bodies may be able to receive support in case of encounter with hostile forces.

If the chief object is to screen the force in rear from the reconnaissances of the enemy, the intervals should be smaller, so as to ensure the patrols being able to keep touch with one another. In this case, the squadrons should not be more than about 3 miles apart.

In reconnoitring in open country and on good roads, the patrols may be pushed as much as 4 or 5 miles in advance of their squadrons, a distance that can easily be traversed in an hour, but when they come in contact with the enemy, they will either fall back, if necessary, for support, still preserving the touch of the enemy, or the advanced squadrons can be brought closer to them, as may seem most advisable.

If for screening purposes the squadrons are 3 miles apart and the 3 troops of each squadron are broken up into sections or

patrols, the 12 patrols furnished by each squadron at intervals of about a quarter of a mile will cover a front of 3 miles. In most countries it will be found that fewer patrols can effectually do the work required of them.

Scouts (one man of the party) will ride in to their patrols with information, and these similarly send in information to their squadrons. The squadrons communicate with each other laterally, either by communicating posts or communicating patrols. Connecting posts will be established between the supporting squadron and the main body, and, if necessary, between the advanced squadrons and the support.

In advance of the whole will ride such special patrols as the commander of the division may consider necessary. These will consist as a rule of 1 officer and a section ; they will be taken from the reserve brigade, and will receive their orders direct from the G.O.C. Information furnished by them will be sent direct to that officer.

Each independent body (whether squadron, regiment, or brigade) must have its own special advance or rear guard.

The greatest attention must be paid to inter-communication between the several brigades and the whole of the detachments. Everything that happens, and all information gathered, should be quickly communicated to neighbouring bodies of the force. With this view it should be arranged by the G.O.C. the division that all parts of the force shall halt every 4 or 5 miles, on a previously determined line, moving forward simultaneously after each successive halt.

The divisional and brigade commanders and all leaders of units will then know at stated intervals of time the exact position of every part of the force, and advantage can be taken of this opportunity for feeding, watering, &c.

The commander of the advanced brigade, in issuing his orders for the advance, will be careful to define the boundaries of the line of advance of each of the advanced regiments. The commanders of these regiments in their turn will define the

boundaries of the line their advanced squadrons are to take, whilst the commanders of those squadrons will take care that the instructions given to their patrols are such that there will be no overlapping. Each patrol will know as far as possible the line on which his advance has to be made, and the part of the country it is his duty to search.

Whatever alterations circumstances may require in the foregoing dispositions, the reserve should always be on or near the principal route by which the enemy may advance, and must be as concentrated as possible.

Every commander of a patrol, squadron, or larger reconnoitring body is responsible that contact with the enemy, once established, is never abandoned without definite orders to that effect from a proper authority.

The maintenance of contact may at times draw some of the squadrons further to the front or to a flank. Complete independence will thus become necessary, and the task of the "advanced" squadron becomes that usually assigned to a "contact" squadron.

On the other hand, on gaining contact, partial or complete concentration will become necessary either to break through the enemy's screen or preserve our own.

This matter of concentration is therefore a most important one, and the possibility of having to resort to it at any moment after touch with the enemy has been gained must be constantly kept in view by the leaders of all units engaged in the reconnaissance.

Although concentration will generally result in a cavalry fight, a weak or badly-trained force which is deficient in initiative and resolution may sometimes resort to passive expedients, such as holding defiles, bridges, or villages with dismounted men, perhaps assisted by a few guns or machine guns. In this case, whilst the more vigorous force continues to prosecute its researches, a part of it will have to be directed in a dismounted attack upon such points.

When deciding upon the point of concentration the commander of the cavalry will of course endeavour to bring superior forces to bear against the enemy at some decisive point, whilst he makes such dispositions as will prevent hostile patrols from moving round his flanks unseen. Commanders of units must bear in mind that the success of their leaders' dispositions will depend in great measure upon how they carry out his orders and the speed with which they reach the point of concentration; and it is only by a close observation of the country passed through and the knowledge of it so gained, that they will be enabled to act with effect.

This duty must be regarded as of the highest importance, and should be constantly practised when troops undergo instruction in reconnaissance.

During concentration unceasing reconnaissance of the enemy must be kept up.

The cavalry commander must decide, according to the general situation and the nature of the roads, whether the artillery, mounted infantry, and machine guns attached to the division shall march with the reserve, or whether any portion of it shall accompany any of the columns.

In the case of three brigades in the division, two might march at a distance of 6 or 7 miles apart, with the 3rd brigade in reserve, following a central route. In this case each of the advanced brigades would have to cover a front of about 7 or 8 miles, the line of advance and boundaries for each brigade being given by the G.O.C. the division.

A force smaller than a division which may be employed on reconnoitring and screening duty, will be disposed on the principles above laid down.

S. 3. *Rules for the Guidance of Reconnoitring Detachments.*

An intelligent officer, well mounted, and possessing an eye for country is the most effective means for reconnaissance. In order

to enable him to draw correct conclusions he must frequently be trusted with confidential information, known only at headquarters, of what the enemy is doing and of his own commander's intentions.

The strength of the detachment to accompany an officer depends entirely upon circumstances. Small hostile parties may have to be forced back, and several messages may have to be transmitted by orderlies. Officers' patrols will thus vary in strength from two to three individuals, or two officers alone, to perhaps complete squadrons, which can remain in contact with the enemy for a considerable time.

The general rules for the guidance and conduct of detachments charged with such missions are as follows :—

(*a*) General Instructions to be given to the Commander.

A clear statement of the information required and the mission upon which he is sent.

The probable movements and intentions of the main body whilst he is detached from it, and those of other detachments similarly sent out.

All that is known regarding the enemy which might in any way assist or influence his action.

Any special instructions regarding prisoners, seizure of papers, &c.

Nature and frequency of reports, where they are to be sent, and mode of transmission.

How the detachment is to be rationed and foraged.

Hour of starting and details as to strength, equipment, &c.

The instructions given to the leader of any reconnoitring party must not tie him to any procedure, still less to any particular road, but must state clearly the questions to which he has to find the answers.

(*b*) Points to be looked to by the Commander before Starting.

Having copied his instructions in his note-book, he should consult his map and form a clear idea of the object he is expected to attain. Weighing the situation, he should endeavour to frame plans based on probabilities and alternative contingencies, always remembering that it is the unexpected which has to be looked for in war. He should next assemble his officers and N.C. officers and explain the situation carefully to them, and so much of his proposed plan of action as it seems to him desirable they should know.

He will then take steps to assure himself that the squadron is in every respect ready for the work, that the articles enumerated on p. 284 are in possession and efficient for use, that the orders regarding rationing and foraging are complied with, the shoeing looked to, the necessary proportion of artificers and tradesmen present and efficient.

(*c*) Order of March.

Whilst the detachment (duly protected against surprise) moves along a road running in a possible direction of the enemy, it must let slip no opportunity to make discoveries; to this end small patrols of observation must be sent to important points, such as woods, villages, hills, &c., for the purpose of collecting information and obtaining the best view of the country beyond. Although to see clearly and not be seen should be the great endeavour of all engaged in reconnaissance, yet this principle must not prevent an officer executing his mission. If circumstances require it, he must at once assume a determined offensive attitude and will attack with vigour either mounted or with the carbine to gain his point.

(*d*) Passage of Woods, Villages, and Defiles.

Great caution must be observed in passing through woods, villages, and defiles. Villages or inhabited places should, if

possible, be turned, in order that the presence of troops may be kept secret; steps would, of course, be taken to ascertain the presence or otherwise of the enemy. If it is necessary to pass through a village, the advanced guard, when some distance off it, should increase its pace, the main body temporarily throwing out points to replace them. They should then act as laid down on p. 349.

The squadron commander should then interview the head man in the village to glean all the information he can. On leaving he should endeavour to mislead the inhabitants as to the direction of his march.

(*e*) Dispositions for the Halt. Orders for the Night. Occupation of Cantonments.

When a reconnoitring detachment halts, whether for a short time to rest or await information, or for the night, the leader's chief care must be secrecy and safety from surprise; therefore halts should be made in woods or places which afford concealment, means being taken to prevent any knowledge of the position becoming known. When a temporary halt is made, the advanced and rear guards and flankers must at once assume the duty of temporary outposts.

When entering a village to pass the night, precaution must be taken to ensure security and secrecy.

The usual dispositions required in the occupation of cantonments and bivouacs are given on p. 337.

(*f*) The Transmission of Reports.

The employment of connecting posts—referred to at p. 312—could not be used in an enemy's country to any great distance, nor relied upon to keep up communication through the extent of country which may often separate a contact squadron from its main body. The transmission of reports here mentioned is that between the contact body and the foremost post. As the

main body will be on the march, the exact direction of which must depend on reports from the front, the post will be continually changing its position. The leaders of the contact bodies depending upon it must therefore have some idea of its probable movements, and in their dispositions would have to make arrangements to facilitate dispatches reaching them from the main body.

Communication must be maintained by mounted men riding in, or by requisitioned carts. Important dispatches must be in duplicate and should be forwarded by different routes. They must state whether the messenger is to be retained or sent back, and the bearer must receive the following general instructions:—

A copy of the part of the map in which the route he is to take is indicated (with the names of villages and landmarks *en route*) must be furnished and clearly explained to him. Instructions as to what he is to do after he has delivered the dispatch, precautions for concealment, and what he is to do with the dispatch if the enemy is encountered, must be given to him.

The telegraph may sometimes be made use of for the transmission of reports.

g Requisitioning and Foraging.

This is as a rule the principal means by which reconnoitring detachments are supplied.

Requisitioning must be carried out systematically through the local authorities, and payment must be made in accordance with the orders of the campaign. A receipt must always be given.

A party detailed to carry out a requisition tells off about a quarter of its strength, under an officer, to guard the outlets of the town or village. As soon as all the approaches are guarded, the head local authority is sent for and the place and time for the supplies to be delivered clearly explained; one or two of the inhabitants are taken, if necessary, as hostages; sentries are placed over any place in which supplies are seen to

exist; while the remainder of the party takes up a suitable position in the direction of the enemy, posting look-out men and sending out patrols. All individuals who come within the line are to be detained till the work is finished.

After posting the main body, the commander, accompanied by a trumpeter, returns to the locality and superintends the loading of the supplies, which should have been collected in an open space. If there are no horses, but carts, &c., in the place, some of the horses of the detachment must be harnessed to them.

(*h*) Surprises and Ambushes.

As a rule the best method is to arrive in the neighbourhood of the enemy towards evening, to take up a position under cover, and utilise the night for making a reconnaissance, and to carry out the surprise after his morning patrols have returned.

The essential object is to approach as close as possible undiscovered, and then to attack vigorously and quickly, so as to be upon the enemy before he can form up or has realised what is about to take place. The whole of the dispositions must be made clear to all, and certain definite signals, which cannot easily be misunderstood, agreed upon.

The leader forms a portion of the force into a reserve, and directs the remainder to attack from one or more sides; attacks from several sides produce much greater confusion amongst the enemy than an attack from one side only; on the other hand, there is a greater risk of premature discovery, and care must be taken that the attacks shall be simultaneous.

The leader, accompanied by a trumpeter, posts himself with the reserve in such a position that he can watch what goes on and, if necessary, throw the reserve into the fight or order a retreat; under no circumstances should he join personally in the fight.

The line of eventual retreat must be arranged, and a spot agreed upon which all are to make for in case the enterprise fails, or too strong a force of the enemy suddenly appears, and every man of the party must know where the place is and the

way to it. It is desirable that it should lie on the general line of retreat, not too close to the scene of action, and behind some natural obstacle.

Three signals will be sufficient for most cases :—"*Charge*," or better, a shrill whistle, as the signal for attack.

"*Rally*," the attacking parties to join the reserve.

"*Mount*," every man to make the best of his way to the place agreed on in case of failure. This signal is given instead of "Retire" or any similar call, so as to leave no loophole for mistakes.

If the attack is made in the dark, each man should have a distinguishing mark, such as a white band on the arm.

If the surprise is directed against a line of outposts, the whole party, without paying attention to the vedettes, must make for the piquet ; there is to be no firing.

Against troops in billets or bivouac, the first point is to cut down the sentries, trumpeters, buglers, or drummers, overpower the guard, occupy the alarm post, and try to seize the commander and other officers. In the case of a cavalry bivouac, a party should be told off specially to cut the horses loose from the piquet ropes.

If the surprise has been successful, the party must return as quickly as possible. On the return journey, the march should not be too concentrated, and every precaution should be taken against surprise. To appear unexpectedly and disappear rapidly are two axioms in all surprises.

The place chosen for an ambush should be on the enemy's flank, as a rule, and, if possible, close to a defile, as he cannot be in fighting formation whilst passing through it ; it should be under cover, and near ground on which cavalry can act. The distance from the enemy's line of march depends chiefly on the precautions he is supposed to be in the habit of taking ; if too close, there is a risk of being discovered by his patrols ; if too distant the advantages of a surprise are lost.

The party or parties will remain hidden in the spot selected without sending out look-out men or patrols, or at any rate not

more than one or two of the former should be posted close by, on the immediate flanks and to the rear. The leader must himself watch the enemy's march so as to give the signal for attack at the right moment; no one else should be entrusted with this duty.

The dispositions regarding the division of the force, signals, &c., laid down for surprises, hold good for ambushes. The attack takes place as soon as so many of the enemy have passed as it is considered the party can overpower.

The attack of a convoy never presents much difficulty unless the ambush is prematurely discovered by the enemy's patrols; if this has not been done, the fore part of the convoy should be allowed to pass, and the attack directed against the centre. If the ambush is discovered, or the enemy halts or hesitates, he must be attacked at once, and as much damage done as possible.

(*i*) Destruction of Railway and Telegraph Lines.

Neither railways nor telegraph lines should be damaged without special orders, and these should always specify the nature of the damage, whether to be partial, or as complete as circumstances will permit.

Whenever possible, the work executed should be of such a nature that it will not be easily detected.

In the case of a line of railway the following steps can be taken:—

(*a*) Remove the fish plates and shift the position of the rails slightly; or cut the sleepers under the rails and simply replace the latter over the hollow thus made.

(*b*) In hot countries, insert wedges between the junctions of rails, points, &c., thus opposing an obstacle to the extension produced by the sun's rays during the day. This will cause deviations in the line in all directions.

(*c*) Cut the water supply for engines, especially in the vicinity of steep gradients.

In the case of telegraph lines:-

(*a*) Cut a wire and replace it by a stout piece of whipcord.

(*b*) Establish a "leak" by connection of the conductor to earth. This may best be made along the pole.

(*c*) Establish a "contact" between two wires.

Cutting down the poles takes time, and they can be replaced almost as quickly as they can be cut down.

It is not advisable to employ explosives, if the work can be carried out without their help, as the noise produced may give the enemy notice of the undertaking.

If a station is to be taken, the first thing is to interrupt the railway and telegraphic communication on both sides; the next, to approach as close as possible under cover, but rapidly, and endeavour to surround the place, seize the officials and registers, and place outposts. Cartridges of guncotton or dynamite can be placed so as to destroy the line in case the enemy attacks before the operation is completed.

In Europe telegraph lines are often subterranean.

The existence of such a line being known or suspected search should be made for marks, generally blocks of wood or stone, indicating the position of test boxes. If these have been removed, a trench should be dug simultaneously on each side of the road, at right angles to its axis, and not close to a bridge or other construction, as there is generally a deviation in the position of the cable in the neighbourhood of bridges, &c. The line will generally be found about three feet below the surface, and a line of bricks or metal piping will indicate its existence.

As the cable is usually enveloped in a casing of wire and gutta percha it is difficult to break it without melting the outer covering, and that operation will present, as a rule, great difficulty. The best course, probably, is either to destroy the insulation by means of smart blows with a farrier's axe or hammer, or else to cut the cable by means of gun-cotton.

Subterranean cables will be rarely interrupted by blowing up a bridge, as they are seldom led over bridges, but are laid some little distance above or below them. In this case they must be grappled for with a grapnel.

S. 4. *Patrols.*

Patrols are called by the following names, and their methods of procedure are considered at the pages as stated below :—

"*Officers' Patrols*" (p. 286).
"*Visiting Patrols*" (p. 329)
"*Standing Patrols*" (p. 330)
"*Flanking Patrols*" (p. 345)
} belong to the system of protection.
"*Communicating Patrols*" (p. 347), used between columns on the march.
"*Reconnoitring Patrols*" p. 330.

The action of the last-named patrol is considered in the following paragraphs. The strength of a *reconnoitring patrol* will vary according to the object to be attained from two or three men to perhaps a troop. As a rule a section will be found a suitable size on many occasions.

Patrols are the real eyes and ears of a reconnoitring force, and it is chiefly upon their zeal, bravery, and intelligence that the successful performance of a reconnaissance will depend. They must be allowed great freedom of action. Their first duty is to gain and keep contact with the enemy, and in their movements everything must be subordinated to *gaining information.*

In order to carry out their duties with secrecy and the least expenditure of force, it will frequently be necessary for patrols, especially if they are strong, to detach advanced scouts, who will work usually in pairs, one man being in command.

No precise rule can be laid down as to the distance scouts should be detached. This must depend upon circumstances. Each scout should understand what he has to look for, and (if detached to a certain distance) how and at what place he is to make his report. The patrol leader should clearly

indicate these places of rendezvous, and explain to the scouts, as far as practicable, how to reach them.

As a rule, these patrols will find that their only chance of safety at night is to shift their position after dark and pass the night in a wood, taking care not to be seen when entering it.

As officers and men of these patrols run a great risk of falling into the enemy's hands, they should have no papers about them containing information regarding the force to which they belong; this is especially the case *with regard to any private diary* that they may keep. It is desirable, too, that they should destroy any written instructions when they have committed them to memory.

No rules for the formation of the patrol can be positively prescribed. The general one is that the patrol must always be so formed as to facilitate the gaining of information, and insure the escape of at least one man if the patrol is cut off.

The formation must therefore depend upon its strength, the ground, and the nature of the mission. As a rule, unnecessary dispersion is to be avoided, but when liable to surprise, as in passing through a wood or village, it is well for the men to follow one another at a few yards' distance rather than to ride side by side. Large patrols, when in the open, will have a flanker on one or both flanks, and will always have a man or file a short distance in advance and also in the rear.

Patrols should attract as little attention as possible, swords, mess-tins, &c., must therefore be prevented from rattling, and the horses kept on soft ground as far as practicable. Shining surfaces, such as helmets, lance-points, &c., should be dulled.

Each man, from the start, should do all in his power to observe the features of the country and impress on his memory the route traversed, so that he may easily find his way back, and be able to act as guide if necessary. To this end he should constantly look backwards to see how the ground looks from the front. It may be useful to make marks at cross-roads, such as barking a tree or making a heap of stones, as a guide to the right road.

Patrols should, as a rule, move deliberately, so as to have

time to observe; but they must endeavour to see without being seen. They should march and halt as much as possible under cover, and move rapidly over open ground exposed to the enemy's view. They must be very careful when *ascending heights* not to expose themselves on the sky-line. It may often be well for two scouts to approach the crest together, one of them dismounting and reconnoitring the crest, while the other holds the horses in rear.

The horses must be spared as much as possible, kept off heavy ground, and fed and watered at every opportunity.

Patrols must frequently halt, not only to observe the ground, but to look out for the enemy. At night one man should often dismount and listen with his ear to the ground.

Men on detached duty may be much assisted by watching if their horses prick their ears or start, as they generally become aware of the vicinity of other horses or men before the presence of the latter is noticed by their riders.

If a friendly patrol is met, they should recognise each other without challenging, and should inform each other of what they have seen, taking proper precautions as to a look-out and cover.

It is a general rule that patrols should never fight if it can be avoided, unless they have orders to take prisoners. If any enemy's patrol is seen, it will generally be best to hide and watch its movements; but much will depend on the special nature of their duty. The enemy must, of course, be prevented from seeing too much.

If patrols are cut off, they must on no account allow themselves to be taken prisoners. A bold attack will often extricate them from a seemingly hopeless position, and it is imperative that at least one man should return with the intelligence gained. With this view it is well that each man in a patrol, when there is no reason to the contrary, should know the object of the mission, so that it may be attained even if the leader is cut off.

The actual work to be done by reconnoitring patrols will always come under one of two headings, viz.:—

(*a*) To gain information of an enemy.
(*b*) „ „ a country.

(*a*) Information of an Enemy.

Intelligence regarding the enemy may be gained by personal observation, or may be such as is afforded by questioning, &c.

Personal Observations.

Distant Movements.—In all observations of movements and traces of the enemy, the soldier should not allow his attention to be absorbed by the first striking object that meets his eye, and should not allow any one point to engage his mind so much as to prevent his giving due heed to all others.

When anything is seen in the distance, a hasty conclusion should not be formed as to what it is. It is worth while to spend a little time in studying its appearance before calling attention to it by a definite name, and in important cases it is well that two or three men, if available, should consult before an opinion is formed.

While watching distant movements, the soldier must not allow his fancy to be excited, and his eye thereby deceived. A train of vehicles dimly seen is liable to be mistaken for artillery, and if a man, who has been eagerly intent on watching for some time, follows his first impression, he will very probably report that he has seen a column of guns, while the only foundation for his belief might exist in a train of country carts or military transport conveyances.

Uniforms seen.—The uniforms which are seen should be carefully noted, as they will show special regiments whose presence in a particular spot may give a clue to the disposition of a corps or division to which they may be known to belong. The numbers of troops which are seen should also be estimated, and every detail of equipment should be remarked.*

Clouds of Dust.—If the dust cloud is thick and low it indicates infantry. Mounted troops raise a high and light cloud. If the cloud is broken, it probably indicates artillery or train. From

* Buttons on uniforms are an important indication of regiments.

the length and movement of the cloud, the probable strength and the direction of march may be inferred; but the influence of the wind, if there is any, must be taken into consideration.

Bivouac Fires.—The position and strength of an enemy may be roughly estimated from the number and extent of the fires If the flames appear and disappear, it is a sign that the ground is occupied, as this is probably caused by men moving between the observer and the fires.

If there is an unusual number of fires, it is probable that the enemy means to retreat, and has merely lit the extra fires as a ruse. If there is much smoke at an unusual time, the enemy is probably cooking prior to moving off.

Noises, &c.—Dogs barking, horses neighing, an unusual amount of smoke from chimneys, are all signs of the presence of troops in inhabited localities.

Road Tracks.—Much may be gathered from tracks on the road, at any rate in the case of small bodies; for example, if the ground is evenly beaten down, the column probably consisted of infantry alone; hoof and wagon tracks point to the probability of cavalry and artillery. If the tracks occupy only half the road, the column was probably on the march, and not a strong force; if the ground is trodden down on both sides of the road, the force was more or less in fighting formation, and probably of considerable strength.

Deserted Camping Grounds.—The number of fireplaces, and the length and breadth of the ground occupied, enable the strength of the force to be estimated. Articles of equipment found lying about, buttons, papers, dead horses, ammunition, &c., will show the arm to which the troops belonged. During a pursuit, such traces will often enable valuable inferences to be drawn as to the nature of the retreat and the state of the enemy's discipline and morale.

Collection of Transport.—The collection of boats at a particular part of the river will indicate a projected crossing; country carts and other transport assembled at any point in the country foretell a movement of troops.

Questioning, &c.

Sources of information regarding the enemy are rarely wanting in war; the difficulty generally is to distinguish between what is true and what is the reverse.

In order to arrive at the truth, in spite of ignorance, real or pretended, the method of putting questions must be adapted to the individual questioned, and all statements must be carefully compared one with another.

The statements of the inhabitants regarding the passability or otherwise of defiles, rivers, &c., should not be received, as a rule, without testing their correctness, as they are very liable to lead one astray.

The main sources of information are newspapers, telegraph and railway registers, private letters, requisition forms, papers left behind by accident. Papers, however, are often left with the intention of misleading. Municipal authorities, post, telegraph, and railway officials, clergymen, gamekeepers, &c., should be questioned as to the presence of the enemy, direction of march, strength, and arm, numbers on the buttons or shoulder straps, uniform, whether the troops bivouacked or were billeted, at what hour they marched, whether outposts were placed and where, whether patrols were sent out, and if so, how often, and where to, the roads they took going and returning, what questions they asked, and whether they always went out or arrived at the same hour. The state and general character of the roads leading to the enemy, and if there are any obstructions on them.

All individuals should be questioned separately and out of hearing of each other, as from discrepancies in the answers the truth may be got at. Deserters and prisoners should be so questioned immediately they give themselves up, as they are more likely to tell the truth when they have not had time to concoct a story. They should be asked regarding the number or name of their regiment and company, strength of the same, name of officer commanding the corps, brigade, division, and

army corps to which they belong, whether they have been bivouacking or billeted, position of the outposts, the number of sick and wounded, state of discipline and spirit, and whether their rations were regularly served out.

The above are all matters of the greatest importance for the head-quarters, and it is from prisoners that the surest and most reliable information can be obtained.

(*b*) Information of a Country.

Details regarding the reconnaissance of a country, are fully laid down in Sec. XI of the "Text Book of Military Topography," and attention is here called to some only of the more important points.

Communications.

The principal points are :—

Present state of the road, front on which troops can march, bridges, and fords. Whether any path indicated on the map has been improved into a road ; whether any road has fallen into decay from disuse or has been blocked up altogether, and whether a new road has been made where none existed before.

Unbridged Rivers in view of an Offensive Crossing.

All roads in the vicinity of rivers lead to the localities where the usual communication from one bank to another takes place. As the roads must be used by the engineers to bring up the necessary material for bridging (unless it can be collected in some tributary), and must be used by the troops to effect the necessary concentration, the points chosen to throw bridges must be close to these localities ; otherwise opening up and constructing the necessary approaches would take too long and betray the design. Where the roads pass over low ground it must be ascertained whether they are likely to become impassable in the event of much rain.

Having regard to the above, a report must be furnished as to the point or points for crossing recommended, giving reasons for the selection, with the following in detail :—

Lines of approach, places under cover close by, suitable for the concentration of troops, and as depôts for material.

Full details regarding the banks, particulars with regard to the ramps necessary for guns and horses, width and depth of river, rate of current, bed of river close to the bank at the actual spot, landing place on far side.

Details as far as can be ascertained regarding the enemy.

Facilities for deployment after successful crossing, particularly for cavalry and artillery ; roads on the far side.

Points from which the passage can be supported by artillery.

Number and size of boats, supply of wood, oars, rope, &c., in the vicinity.

Bridged Rivers in view of an Offensive Crossing.

Unless the enemy has withdrawn entirely to the far bank, it will only be by a combination of great daring and luck that a reconnaissance can be made except from a distance.

The chief points to be noticed are :—

Existing bridges, whether apparently untouched, partially or completely destroyed, or prepared for demolition ; lines of approach, under cover, to these bridges ; positions for the batteries, as far forward as possible, to cover the crossing.

Whether any ford or ferry exists which is apparently not guarded, or insufficiently so ; way to approach it under cover, and for what arms it is suitable.

Where the flanks of the enemy's position rest, with a view to determining whether it can be turned higher up or lower down. In this case all fords and bridges that might be utilised by the enemy for an offensive movement against the flank march must be mentioned with full details, also the points from which the roads leading to them from the enemy can be seen, and up to what point the view extends.

Undefended Rivers as an Obstacle across the Line of March.

The chief points to observe are :—

Whether the bridges and fords shown on the map really exist, and can be used for all arms, including ammunition columns. In reporting a ford practicable for infantry, it must always be stated if the reserve ammunition carts can cross (about 2 feet 4 inches).

Whether, in addition to those shown on the map, there are any others ; if so, their position, and for what arms they are suitable.

Bridges and fords found more or less impassable, and for what arms ; as regards bridges, the nature of repair required, quantity of material and labour that can be obtained in the vicinity, and where ; estimate of time and labour to execute the work.

Any spot that seems suitable for the construction of a bridge, with full details ; materials at hand, and number of boats, with oars, that can be procured.

Whether there is any place that the cavalry might swim.

In frosty weather, if the ice will bear, search must be made for sand, ashes, dung, &c. ; if, on the other hand, the frost has only just commenced, supplies of straw and brushwood will be found useful. When the ice begins to bear the weight of a man, the straw or brushwood is laid half a foot thick, with the stalks at right angles to the current ; a fresh supply is then laid at right angles to the first layer, water being poured over the whole at intervals ; a bridge thus constructed will bear ammunition wagons even after a thaw, and when the ice itself is no longer safe.

(*c*) Contact with the Enemy.

When patrols or their scouts come in contact with the enemy, *i.e.*, come within close view of his most advanced parties, they

must consider that their real work has only just begun. Their object now is to transmit rapidly all information gained. They must endeavour to utilise the features of the ground, so as to gain well-concealed spots from which they can obtain the widest view, and to work on the flank of the enemy's patrols and their supports.

While avoiding all unnecessary fighting, patrols must never fall back a yard further than they are absolutely obliged (unless they can thereby get a good and well-concealed look-out point), and if the enemy ceases to follow they must as soon as possible press forward again.

Although the main object may be to discover and gain contact, this duty always carries with it that of preventing the enemy from gaining information. Patrols themselves may or may not be able to prevent the hostile patrols passing through their chain, but they must, at any rate, furnish such reliable information as will enable the formed bodies in rear of them to effectually prevent their inroad.

S. 5. *Reports.*

Reports are of two kinds, verbal and written. Whenever time and circumstances allow they should be in writing.

Whenever a verbal report or message is sent, the bearer must be made to repeat it and understand its nature.

A man who has to make a verbal report should settle beforehand what he intends to say and should not speak in a hurry. If he sees that the person to whom he reports misunderstands him, he should not hesitate to tell him so. On the other hand, a man making a report should not be questioned so as to flurry him, but should be allowed, as far as possible, to tell his tale in his own way.

With regard to the form and matter of written reports the following rules are always to be adhered to.

Reports to the same person must always be numbered consecutively; place, date, hour, minute, and signature should

be invariably filled in. The date should be abbreviated thus : 30.IX.95. To prevent doubt in naming a night, both days should be given thus : Night, 29/30 Sept. ; Night, 30 Sept./1 Oct.

Minutes to be written as in railway time tables—9.45 a.m. The hour of 12 to be followed by "noon" and "midnight" written in words.

The report should be written so legibly that it can be read even by the dim light of a fire.

Great care should be taken in spelling the names of places and people, which must invariably be written in printed characters. The map used should be specified.

The style is to be similar to that in which telegrams are made out, concise and clear, omitting nothing of importance and avoiding superfluous matter.

The individual who signs a report is responsible for the contents of his despatch ; consequently, the distinction between what is absolutely certain and he has himself seen, what others have seen and reported, and what is supposed or inferred, must be clearly drawn. He must look at facts as they really are, and not allow his imagination to run away with him, taking care neither to neglect what is important, nor cause alarm needlessly.

The writer should convince himself by personal observation of the correctness of what he reports, and when this cannot be done, if the matter is important, he should, if possible, send the message by the individual who obtained the information or saw the occurrence reported.

S. 6. *Sketches.**

The perfection of modern maps has to some extent diminished the value of sketches intended to supply their place. At the same time cases will often occur in which a sketch, as the result of a

* The correction of existing maps of the country is an important object in the teaching of Sketching.

reconnaissance or as a draft of some future operation, must supplement the map. Moreover, certain details which would be difficult to describe in writing can be readily shown on a sketch.

In such sketches artistic skill must not be sought but rather the simplest forms, and all needless detail should be omitted. Important distances should be noted in numerals as adherence to a scale will often be impossible.

For further details on this subject, *see* pp. 412–414.

S. 7. *Connecting and Communicating Posts.*

For temporary use *connecting posts* may be employed to keep up communication between detached bodies of cavalry and the force in rear which they are covering or with which they are acting in concert.

Posts should, as a rule, be about 5 miles apart, and at easily recognisable spots. If the post is established off the road a sentry will be posted on the road.

With a large number of despatches two men may be away at the same time in each direction, and it may not be advisable to let the men ride singly; therefore, as the post itself must never be left quite deserted, the best number for a post is a section. If the posts are more than 5 miles apart they must be stronger. One officer, if available, should superintend four posts.

With very few men at disposal, and when the inhabitants are very hostile, the posts may have to be made up to half a troop and placed far apart, and, if they are left entirely to their own resources for protection, they must shortly before dusk leave the post to pass the night elsewhere, stationing men on the road to look out for despatches. The spot chosen for a post should be on a high road if possible, close to a bridge or other place that must be passed, and it should be marked by a bundle of hay or straw on a pole by day and by a lantern at night. The villagers, &c., must be held responsible for the safety of the post, and warned that if anything happens to it severe measures

of reprisal will be taken ; the post, however, will also take measures to protect itself. A sentry will always be posted on the stable and a lantern kept burning all night.

One third of the post is always to be kept ready to start. A third may remove saddles and feed, and the remaining third may off saddle if circumstances admit.

Each orderly will be given clear directions regarding his road and the pace he is to travel at, and on reaching the next post will receive a receipt for the despatch carried.

If there is any delay in forwarding a despatch or if it is lost, the authority sending it must be informed as soon as practicable.

A register, to be inspected frequently by the officer in charge of that portion of the line, is to be kept, and this may conveniently be in the form given on p. 314. When a post is relieved the squadron which supplied the post will retain the letter-book.

Communicating Posts may be either fixed or temporary, and generally consist of three men. They are employed to keep up lateral communication between squadrons when detached for reconnaissance, or between parallel columns on the march, and are placed at points well marked on the map and easily found, on or between the routes to be taken by squadrons. Their position should, whenever possible, be decided on by the leaders before starting. One man of the post should always be ready to mount to carry on a message.

If these posts are not established, communication can only be kept up by "*communicating patrols*" riding across from one squadron or column to another.

In either case the men should be acquainted, as far as possible, with the routes taken by their own and neighbouring squadrons.

Connecting Post No. 3, at A.

Corporal B. Private C, D, E, F, G, H.

Date.	Detail.	Arrived.			Forwarded.			Remarks.
		When.	Bearer.	From	When.	By whom.	To	
6th June, 1883.	2 letters, 1 to H.Q., 1 to A.A.G.	11.20 p.m.	Pte. X, 7th Hrs.	Connecting post No. 2, at W.	11.22 p.m.	Pte. E, 7th Hrs.	Connecting post No. 4, at M.	Pte. E. returned at 1.15 a.m. with receipt.

PROTECTION.

A. PROTECTION OF TROOPS WHEN HALTED.—OUTPOSTS.

S. 8. *General Observations.*

In a mixed line of outpost reconnaissance will be especially the duty of cavalry, while the protection is rather the work of infantry. The two arms must co-operate together in these duties

When the force, however, consists of cavalry alone, resistance will be provided chiefly by means of dismounted men holding barricades, &c., placed on the main approaches.

The following paragraphs explain the duties of the several detachments of an outpost system when, owing to the proximity of the enemy, it is as complete as possible. It must, however, be clearly understood that in every particular case the outpost system adopted and routine of duty must be modified according to actual circumstances. Larger units will push out a succession of screens, each diminishing in strength the closer it is to the enemy ; a small detachment, on the other hand, will confine itself to the use of the smallest or outer screen. In general, however, the strength of an outpost force would not ordinarily exceed one-sixth or one-fifth of the main body.

The system to be adopted will vary according as troops find themselves in one or other of the following situations, viz. :—

(*a*) Halting for a period of several days.
(*b*) On the march from day to day.

S. 9. *Halting for a Period of One or More Days.*

It is necessary in this case to adopt a stringent system of outposts, consisting of a *line of observation* composed of vedettes or cossack posts, patrols, detached, examining posts, and piquets,

and a *line of defence* consisting of supports and a reserve. A force of only three or four squadrons could dispense with a special reserve.

Outposts are relieved at daybreak so as to have a double force at hand at the time when attacks are frequently attempted.

(*a*) *Selection of a Line and Method of Occupation.*

The line of outposts should run along well-defined features, such as a ridge of high land, banks of a river, far edge of a wood, &c.; the flanks should rest on natural obstacles that cannot be easily passed unobserved—such as a morass or river, but never on a wood.

Special measures must always be taken to ensure the safety of the flanks if they do not rest on other troops. This will be ensured by doubling the flank back, and placing a detached post there, with particular orders about patrolling.

The most important point, under all circumstances, is to occupy or observe all the approaches by which an enemy could advance.

The outpost line, if more than three miles long, or if the ground is much broken, should be divided into sections. Generally the ground observed by two piquets will form a section, and about one mile of front will usually be assigned to each cavalry piquet.

In allotting the ground, if a road, ravine, wood, or village forms the line of demarcation between one section or piquet and another, it must be distinctly understood by which portion of troops the point itself is to be occupied or watched.

As a rule, several weak piquets are preferable to a few strong ones, as the vedettes are better under control, and the work of visiting and relieving them is less harassing; but power of resistance is lost if the piquets are too weak.

There should be a support to each section. A squadron can furnish a complete section of outposts, consisting of two piquets (one troop each), a support (two troops), and an examining post.

The best means of successfully resisting attacks is the employment of patrols who approach as close to the enemy's position as possible and report the moment a force leaves it. The commander of the outposts will then receive notice of the attack in time to make the necessary dispositions.

Against civilised troops the extent of front occupied should be sufficiently great to prevent an enemy, even if he turns a flank, placing his artillery, undiscovered, within 4,000 yards of the main body.

Under all circumstances, systematic communication between all parts of the outposts and the main body must be carefully provided for, and every advantage must be taken of high points, buildings or trees, from which the approach of an enemy can be observed.

Signallers will generally prove very useful on outpost duty; but great care must be taken to prevent the signals being seen from the front (*i.e.*, the direction of the enemy).

(*b*) *Outposts by Night and in Thick Weather.*

In foggy, snowy weather, the different portions of the outposts are generally drawn closer together, and by night their position shifted; and whereas by day vedettes are placed on high ground, so as to get as extended a view as possible, by night it will often be better to place them on low ground, so that they may have the advantage of the sky line to help them to distinguish anyone approaching their post. But it is the sense of hearing, rather than the eyesight, which must be depended on at night, and vedettes should be placed on, or close to, approaches.

At night it is advisable to send *standing patrols* beyond the line occupied by day, which conceal themselves close to the probable line of approach. Nothing more disconcerts a night attack, carried out in accordance with observations made during the day, than to stumble on an enemy's post sooner than expected.

When acting against an uncivilised enemy, accustomed to a life in the open, and whose senses of hearing and sight are consequently very acute, detached parties must be especially on their guard to avoid surprise.

(*c*) *Commander of the Outposts.*

The outposts of a body of troops will always be under the general direction of one officer, who is responsible for the security and repose of the main body.

He should receive instructions regarding the general line to be taken up, what is known of the enemy, the time required by the main body to form up, how long the outpost are to resist an advance of the enemy, and the direction in which they are, if necessary, to fall back. In default of specific instructions, he decides on the disposition of the outposts.

In the case of a small force, the senior officer detailed for outpost duty will exercise the functions of commander of the outposts.

Having, after personal reconnaissance or by the aid of the map formed his plans in accordance with his general instructions, he will issue orders on the following points. These, or at any rate, the more important of them, should be communicated to the outposts before they march off:—

Information regarding the enemy and country.

General line to be taken up, approximate positions and strength of supports and reserve. Positions of examining posts.

Division of the line into sections, and detail of commanders thereof.

Disposition in case of attack, *e.g.*, where the strongest resistance is to be made, and in view of a possible retreat.

Reports, when to be furnished, and where sent.

Special directions regarding patrols; minimum distance to which they are to proceed; roads, woods, ravines, &c., that are to be specially searched and watched. In the immediate vicinity of the enemy, the distance to which patrols are to go cannot be laid down; they must approach as close to the enemy's position as possible. If the weather is bad, or the troops are very tired, the orders regarding patrols must be stringent.

Reconnoitring patrols should be able to report shortly after daybreak that the ground within 10 miles is clear of the enemy or otherwise.

How often the vedettes are to be relieved.

Measures for securing the flanks.

Roads and localities that are to be barricaded or otherwise prepared for defence, lateral communications to be made, bridges to be prepared for demolition, arrangements for the supply of tools.

Whether the piquet and supports may light fires. (This should always be allowed, unless their doing so would betray their presence to the enemy.)

Arrangements regarding cooking and supplies generally. (Whenever possible, the reserve should draw all supplies, and cook for the piquets and supports.)

Special patrols, if any, to be sent from supports or reserve, including strong patrols to be sent to the front and flanks shortly before daybreak.

Time the outposts will be relieved, and any direction as to guides meeting the relieving troops.

Arrangements for signalling, and for maintaining communication between different portions of the outposts, and between them and the main body.

Directions as to the selection of suitable positions for piquets at night.

Orders respecting inhabitants, especially as to their crossing the line of outposts.

Orders as to the reception of deserters and flags of truce.

Where the commander of the outposts is to be found.

The countersign.

In addition, if the outposts consist of a mixed force:—

Which piquets (if any) are to be composed of cavalry, and which of infantry.

Hour at which the cavalry piquets are to be relieved by the infantry.

Number of cavalry soldiers required for infantry outpost.

As soon as the line has been taken up, he will inspect it,

making any modification that may seem desirable. He should at the same time inspect the positions to be occupied, and any alterations it may seem desirable to make for the night.

The place of the commander of the outposts, when not engaged in visiting the posts, will usually be with the reserve or in a central position in the line of the supports.

His name, rank, and appearance, should be known to all in the outpost force.

When the outposts are divided into sections, the section commanders are the responsible assistants of the commander of the outposts, and in all respects take his place in their respective sections.

(*d*) *Outposts moving into Position.*

The requisite orders having been given to officers commanding sections of outposts, or regiments, &c., as the case may be, the latter will communicate them to the subordinate officers concerned, with such further directions as may be necessary, such as the detail of units to furnish the several piquets and supports, the extent of front to be watched by each piquet, and the approximate position of its flank vedettes or posts.

Each subordinate force will then march off independently. On principle it is preferable that the piquets should move into their positions at the same time, maintaining communication from one flank to the other of the line occupied; but on active service the piquets, &c., will frequently have to take up their positions in succession.

It must be borne in mind that all the first dispositions are purely tentative, and that many alterations may have to be made when the features of the position become better known.

A piquet usually consists of a troop (20 to 30 men). This strength is convenient, and capable, as a rule, of watching as much ground as can be properly superintended by one leader.

As a rule, about one-third of the piquet should be reserved for patrolling, the remainder furnishing the piquet vedettes or

Cossack posts, sentry on the piquet, &c. As each double vedette with its 2 reliefs absorbs 6 men, and each Cossack post 4 (or 3), a piquet of the ordinary strength cannot put out more than 2, or possibly 3 double vedettes, or 3 (or 4) Cossack posts, and these will be able to watch a front of about one mile on the line of observation.

A piquet which has to furnish a detached post may, if necessary, be supplemented by a section from the support, and similarly in the case of a piquet which has to provide a very strong examining post.

Piquets are to be numbered from one flank of the line of outposts to the other, and it is generally convenient that they should be numbered from the flank which is taken up first or which rests on some natural obstacle.

(*e*) *Posting Piquets.*

When an officer is detailed for piquet duty, he will inspect his command. He must pay special attention to the arrangements for the supply of food and forage.

He will march his party, preceded by advanced and flanking patrols, to about the place where he considers that the piquet should stand. On the way he should carefully observe the ground over which he marches, so as to be prepared for any contingencies that may arise, and should warn all under his command to do the same.

On reaching the approximate position for the piquet he halts, under cover, sends a reconnoitring patrol in the direction of the enemy, and a visiting patrol to establish communication with the neighbouring posts. The former will consist of about half a section, the latter of one man under a N.C. officer; the advanced and flanking patrols continuing to watch to the front and flanks until the vedettes or Cossack posts are posted. In default of specific orders he then decides, according to the ground, weather, &c., whether he will observe the ground allotted to him by means of piquet vedettes or Cossack posts. The former system, when the piquet has some shelter, possesses

the advantage of giving the reliefs more comfort; the latter is more economical, gives the vedette greater confidence, and saves much fatigue.

If he has not already done so before moving off or during the march into position, he will now roughly tell off the men for patrol and vedette duty and select the N.C. officers to warn and march reliefs, take charge of Cossack or other posts, patrols, &c.

The men who will probably be required in the first instance for the vedette and Cossack posts are then told off, together with a N.C. officer and two or three orderlies, and move out from the ranks; the remainder, who are to continue mounted, are placed under the charge of the second in command. The officer, having given such instructions to the latter as he may think necessary, proceeds to post the vedettes, &c. While posting the vedettes he will select the position for the examining post, and place it.

The vedettes having been posted, he withdraws the look-out men, returns to the piquet, and, if necessary to alter the position of the latter, informs the vedettes and neighbouring bodies of the change. He now dismounts the piquet, posts a look-out sentry on it, arranges for the patrolling duties, chooses the night position for the piquet, and prepares a report and sketch of his position for the commander of the outposts.

The position of a piquet will mainly be regulated by that of the line of observation occupied by its vedettes, but it should, as far as possible, fulfil the following conditions:—It should be in rear of the centre of the chain of its vedettes, close to a main avenue of approach (preferably a junction of routes leading to the front), with clear ground for action to the front and flanks, and free communication with the neighbouring piquets and support, and should be concealed from the view of the enemy. The spot itself should be level and firm, so as to give the horses rest. If necessarily near a bridge or other narrow defile, the piquet should be in rear rather than in front of it, with room before it to charge the enemy as he

debouches; if at a village, it should be in rear of it; and, in general, it should avoid enclosed spaces or cramped positions, from which it could not easily extricate itself in case of attack. Although 300 to 600 yards may be taken as the average distance of the piquet from its vedettes, it should always be placed as near to them as can be done with safety.

(*f*) *Duties of Piquet Commander.*

The piquet commander must bear in mind that he is personally responsible for the security of the line which his piquet has to guard, and that he cannot therefore leave that line uncovered to go to the help of neighbouring piquets, and that the slightest neglect on the part of anyone under his orders may result in disaster to the whole force. He must, therefore, take every means of impressing upon his subordinates the nature and importance of their duties, which are primarily those of observation.

He must never absent himself from his command, *i.e.*, he must either be with the piquet or visiting the vedettes, and whenever he quits the piquet he will give distinct directions for action during his absence.

He must regulate the patrols so that they shall not be overworked. To this end three or four patrols should, if possible, be provided, as one should always be ready to start in case of emergency, and on principle the ground in front should never be without a patrol.

All reliefs for vedettes must pass his personal inspection before going on duty, and he should superintend the despatch of all patrols and reconnoitring parties, and receive their information when they return.

He must satisfy himself by constant personal visits, as well as by those of one of his subordinates and of the visiting patrols, that the vedettes are alert and acquainted with their duties; this is especially necessary if the men are inexperienced or the work severe.

If anything happens or is remarked worthy of notice, he

will send information to his support and to the neighbouring piquets, with which he must keep up constant communication.

If his piquet is attacked he will do his best to delay the enemy.

He will impress upon all under him that while the enemy's patrols are not to be allowed to approach the vedette line all useless collisions are to be avoided.

(*g*) *Rules for the Guidance of Piquets.*

Outposts pay no compliments, but the officer in command reports himself to any superior officer who may visit his post.

Eating, feeding, and watering are to be carried out by one-third at a time, under the superintendence of a non-commissioned officer. Horses that are to be fed must be taken a short distance away from the others for this purpose. During the night all must be on the alert, and especially so for an hour before sunrise.

The horses are never to be unsaddled or unbridled at night; during the day, when matters seem quiet, the girths should be loosened, and the saddles shifted of one-third at a time, and bits may be removed while the horses are feeding or watering. The horses' ears must be pulled, and their legs, bellies, and chests handrubbed or wisped, especially in wet weather.

No man is to leave the piquet, and those not actually employed must be made to get as much rest and sleep during the day as possible, so that they may be the more alert at night. If it is necessary to fetch water, forage, &c., as few men as possible are to be so employed. The men must never take off their swords and belts.

If a fire is allowed, it must be made in a concealed place.

No noises of any kind, or trumpet sounds, are allowed on piquet, and orders must be given in a low tone.

No country people or strangers are to be allowed, under any pretence whatever, to come near the piquet or to talk to the men.

If the enemy is near, his general position and that of his

outposts should be known to every man of the piquet, as also the position of the support and of the piquets on each flank.

There must be a dismounted sentry near the piquet who can communicate with all the vedettes and repeat their signals.

(*h*) *Piquet Vedettes and Cossack Posts.*

Vedettes are furnished and relieved by either piquet or Cossack posts, and posted in a position from which a continual look-out is necessary; such positions being chosen either because they command a wide extent of country, or because they command a clear view of some important spot, which must never be lost sight of, such as a road defile or bridge. The same rules apply generally to both kinds of vedettes.

Piquet vedettes are double, in order to give the men more confidence, and to enable them to communicate in case of necessity with the piquet, which is generally at some distance. Cossack post vedettes are single, as the post which furnishes and relieves the vedette is close at hand.

Cossack posts consists of three men (including the vedette) in charge of the senior soldier, or, in important positions, of an additional non-commissioned officer; the reliefs of the vedette, with their horses dismounted, being posted as close to him as possible. The rules for piquets apply generally to Cossack posts, but, as the latter are nearer the enemy, greater vigilance is required, the horses must never be unbridled, and everything must be ready for immediate action.

The piquet vedette system gives the reliefs more comfort, when the piquet has some shelter and there is none on the line of observation; but it entails more work in the way of posting, visiting, and relieving the vedettes. The Cossack post system economises the number of men on the look-out, and so gives more for patrolling, and spares horses the fatigue of marching in relief. It is particularly suitable for situations where it would be difficult to relieve or frequently visit a vedette, or

where a vedette cannot be seen from the neighbouring posts or the piquet, and where there is good shelter for the relief close to the vedette.

The vedette and Cossack posts furnished by each piquet are numbered from the right of the piquet.

(*i*) *Posting Vedette and Cossack Posts.*

The usual method of posting vedettes are as follows :—The officer rides to the nearest elevated position in his front whence he can see the general line which his vedettes are to occupy, halting his party somewhat in rear of the line. The centre vedette will then be placed, and the officer will take the men who are to watch the ground to the right and post them, while the N.C. officer posts the men on the left. Care must be taken that the flank vedettes are in sight of those of the neighbouring piquets.

The first consideration in posting vedettes is to have the smallest number of posts that will ensure the attainment of the object in view. The men should be concealed as much as possible, consistently with their having a clear view to the front ; and should be able to see the posts on their right and left, or at any rate the ground lying between them, so that no person can pass unobserved.

The men of a double vedette post, when it is necessary for them to remain mounted, should be 20 yards or so apart, with their horses' heads inclined inwards towards each other. At this interval the men can communicate if necessary, but will not be able to keep up a conversation.

Vedettes seldom have to remain mounted. In the case of a double vedette one man can hold both horses concealed from view, while the other looks out from a tree or building, or over a wall or crest of ground, &c., and similarly with regard to Cossack posts.

As soon as all the vedettes have been posted, or have placed themselves in position, the piquet commander, accompanied by

the N.C. officer, who will superintend the relief of the vedettes, will inspect the line taken up, making such alterations as may be necessary.

Every vedette must know :—

1. The direction of the enemy, and what is known of his position and movements.
2. The extent of front each vedette is specially to watch, and any points that require particular observation.
3. The number of his post and the number and position of the posts on either side.
4. The number and position of the piquet and the way to it.
5. The position of the nearest examining post.
6. The name of the commander of the outposts.
7. The names of any villages, hills, rivers, or defiles that can be seen, and where the railways and roads lead to.
8. The countersign.

Piquet vedettes should as a rule be relieved every two hours, but at night and in very severe weather this time may be shortened according to circumstances.

Cossack post vedettes can be relieved as often as desirable. The cossack posts themselves will be relieved every 6, 12, or 24 hours, according to weather, cover, &c.

The position of the various sections of a piquet when resting at night must be so arranged that the men of one section are not disturbed by the reliefs of another going on duty.

(*j*) *Rules for the Guidance of Vedettes.*

All soldiers should be thoroughly acquainted with the following general rules for vedettes before going on outpost duty :—

1. Vedettes will keep their carbines loaded and at the advance ; lances (if not left with the piquet) slung, with flags furled.

2. They should make no noise or unnecessary movement that could possibly attract the enemy's attention ; if dismounted, they will stand fast.

3. They should never take their eyes off the ground they have to watch, and, therefore, when questioned by their officers, reporting to patrols, or giving over their orders, must continue to look to their front.

4. They should notice every sight and sound in the direction of the enemy, however trivial, and must report everything that seems important.

5. They will allow no persons, except the commander of the outposts, the commander of the piquet, those accompanying them, and the patrols, to pass the chain or loiter about it. Any other persons approaching their post from any direction, by day, are to be ordered to "Halt" when still 30 or 40 yards distant, and directed to the examining post; if the order is not implicitly complied with, they are to be fired on.

6. All parties approaching the post from any direction by night are to be ordered to "Halt," "Advance one man," "Give the countersign." The countersign is to be given up in as low a tone as practicable. Persons who do not implicitly comply with the above orders are to be fired on.

7. If any of the ground between two contiguous vedettes cannot be distinctly seen from either post, it is to be frequently patrolled by one of them, or in the case of a Cossack post, by one of the relief.

8. Single vedettes must not quit their post under any pretence: double vedettes only one at a time, to report, or patrol unseen ground in the chain.

9. If a vedette when posted single wishes to draw attention to anything, he will hold out his head-dress as a signal, or make some similar sign to attract the attention of the look-out sentry, when a patrol will at once be sent out from the piquet.

10. If suddenly attacked or surprised, a vedette should fire before retiring, to attract the attention of the piquet and other vedettes; and only those vedettes will fall back who are obliged.

11. In bad weather, or at night, to prevent the proper direction being lost by the horses turning round, a mark, pointing

towards the direction to be watched, should be made on the ground or on some adjacent object.

(*k*) *Examining Posts.*

An examining post is posted on the road, &c., by which alone strangers are to be permitted to pass the chain of vedettes, and consists, as a rule, of the two reliefs for the nearest vedette. In situations of special importance these vedettes may be in addition to those of the regular chain. The post should be as near to the vedette as is compatible with cover from view, and never more than 100 yards off.

The post is under the charge of a selected N.C. officer (if possible, one speaking the language of the country), who receives special orders from the officer commanding the piquet.

If several persons present themselves at one time for permission to pass, the vedette in connection with the examining party must direct them to halt at a safe distance, and they should only be allowed to approach one by one.

The N.C. officer in charge examines every individual wishing to pass either outwards or inwards, and gives the necessary permission, or refuses it, according to his instructions.

(*l*) *Detached Posts.*

A detached post usually consists of a section (six or seven men) under a N.C. officer, its guide; under certain circumstances, however, it may be stronger, and may even be under the command of an officer.

The rules for the guidance of detached posts are the same generally as for Cossack posts.

(*m*) *Special Rules for Piquet Patrols.*

For general guidance of patrols *see* p. 301.

The special duties of piquet patrols are as follows:—

(*a*) Visiting patrols. These go from time to time along the line of vedettes, generally between reliefs, to ascertain

whether they are alert and have anything to report; they also communicate with the neighbouring piquet.

(*b*) Reconnoitring patrols. These gather information by pushing in front of the line of vedettes and examining any ground that is not seen by the latter.

Visiting patrols, while passing down the line of vedettes or Cossack posts, will, as far as possible, move under cover from the enemy's view.

A stationary line of vedettes is powerless to discover movements of an enemy beyond their field of view, and so a concentration of the enemy might take place at no great distance without the vedettes becoming aware of it. Consequently protection against surprise must consist chiefly in pushing a number of patrols forward from the outpost line.

Great care must be taken in the selection of men for patrol duty, and especially of the leaders, because the service rendered will depend fully as much on the patrol leader as on the instructions given.

The patrol commander will receive orders as to the zone of country in which he is to act. As a rule there will be in it two or three, perhaps only one, important point to which the patrol leader ought to devote his chief attention, as, for instance, a village, cross roads, small wood, deep valley, or other natural or artificial accident of the ground. Instead of delaying at unimportant points, the patrol leader must make up his mind at starting, either from a map or by looking at the country, what are the chief points which require attention, and arrange his line of action accordingly.

Patrols will be pushed forward not merely by day but also by night.

When in close contact with the enemy, patrols from piquets will be instructed generally to go as far as the enemy's outposts. Further reconnaissance, as a rule, is the duty of the outpost commander, but under all circumstances, touch of the enemy must be maintained by night as well as by day. To this end "*standing patrols*" may be pushed out beyond the outpost line.

They will not be tied to any particular place, but their position will vary with the enemy's movements.

It is generally advisable that reconnoitring patrols should not go out and come back by the same road, and that the fresh patrol should be sent out about the same time as the old one is expected back. If halted for twenty-four hours or more, the time of despatch and road to be followed must be constantly changed.

When a patrol is sent forward beyond the vedette line or to search the spaces in that line unwatched by fixed posts, the greatest attention must be paid, not only to learn tidings of the movements and position of the enemy, but also to secure a thorough knowledge of ground that is traversed, and of the general position and character of its remarkable features.

If a considerable body of troops is seen to leave the enemy's line, one man rides in at once to report, the remainder keeping under cover and continuing to observe their movements.

It may often be practicable to get right up to the enemy's line by judiciously following a patrol that is returning. If a patrol succeeds in approaching the enemy's line it conceals itself, and endeavours to ascertain :—

1. How many vedettes the enemy has put out, and where they are placed. The most favourable opportunity for ascertaining this is when the relief is going round.

2. The nature of the ground in front of and between the vedettes as to whether it affords a fair chance of cutting one of them off or surprising the piquet.

3. The position of the piquet. This may often be inferred from the smoke of the fires, or the direction taken by the reliefs and patrols when returning.

4. The time the enemy sends out patrols, their strength, and the general direction they follow.

By night patrols should endeavour to overhear the parole and countersign, and to find out the main position and that of the several posts by observing the watch fires. To do this it may often be advisable to let a man dismount and creep up as

close as possible, so as to avoid the noise of the horse's hoofs betraying their presence.

(*n*) *Supports to the Piquets.*

The supports are intended to assist the piquets in case of attack until the reserve or main body is ready for action.

As a general rule, the strength of a support should be nearly equal to that of the piquets with which it is connected, and these should not be more than two, or at most three, in number. Thus, if two troops of a squadron form piquets, the other two should be their support.

When convenient the support should be placed in rear of the centre of the piquets which it has to support, and, according to circumstances, may be as much as half a mile from the line of piquets. Its exact position, however, must depend upon various considerations, such as the nature of the opposition intended to be made (whether by mounted action or dismounted fire from strong positions), the existence of cover from view, and shelter from the weather. Speaking generally, the same points are desirable in selecting a place for it as for a piquet.

The rules for the conduct of piquets are generally applicable to a support, but the latter being further from the enemy, the rules may be correspondingly relaxed. A look-out sentry should be placed to watch in the direction of the piquets, and if practicable, the roads may be barricaded and the position strengthened by other artificial means.

Communicating patrols should be frequently sent from the support to the piquets, and a patrol should always be ready to march and ascertain the cause of any shot being fired, or of any stir that may be noticed in the piquets.

The functions of the various units of an outpost force must be thoroughly understood. Vedettes and piquets are the *line of observation*, supports, and reserves the *line of resistance*.

(*o*) *Reserve of the Outposts.*

The reserve of the outposts, which is under the immediate

orders of the commander of the outposts, usually consists of from one-third to one-half of the whole force employed on outpost duty.

Its position should be as near the centre of the chain of advanced posts as possible, in rear of them, so that it can be moved to any threatened quarter without difficulty. The conveniences which are to be found for watering and feeding horses, and for affording shelter to men, must guide, to a great extent, the choice of a position for the reserve of the outposts.

As the reserve has no special duty of watching to perform, it is allowed to establish itself comfortably, either cantoned or bivouacked. Every preparation must be made, however, for getting under arms at short notice.

The officers of the troops acting in the reserve should take care that, when the men take off their belts, and the horses are unbridled, every article of equipment is so placed that, in the event of a sudden alarm, there may be no delay in turning out.

Sentries are placed and communicating patrols sent out in such numbers as may be necessary. The regulations regarding trumpet calls, feeding, watering, &c., laid down for the piquets, are equally applicable to the reserve.

If there is artillery to defend a particular defile, the guns are to be in position ready to fire ; in all other cases the batteries attached to cavalry are to be drawn up near the main approach, and the horses unhooked in the daytime when matters appear quiet ; the rules as to watering, feeding, &c., being observed as for piquets generally.

Strong patrols that may be required for reconnoitring purposes, for which the ordinary piquet patrol may be insufficient, will be furnished by the supports or reserve, and will be commanded by a selected officer or N.C. officer, according to their strength and the importance of their mission. Of this nature are the patrols, which are usually sent out before daybreak to ascertain whether the enemy is contemplating an attack.

If a man deserts it must be reported *at once*, the countersign must be changed and dispositions altered.

(*p*) *Relief of Outposts.*

The piquets and their supports should be relieved from the reserve of the outposts (or from the main body, as the case may be) every 24 hours.

The relief of a piquet is thus carried out:—The new piquet takes its position alongside the old, and both officers proceed to relieve the vedettes together, the commander of the old piquet superintending the relief of the vedettes or Cossack posts, &c. The position now taken up is the day line. During the relief the officer going off duty communicates everything regarding the post in the most minute detail to the officer who relieves him. Any special orders are to be handed over in writing. Whilst the relief is going on, the reconnoitring patrols of both piquets go out together, so that the new patrols may be shown the ground, &c., by those who are acquainted with it. When the vedettes have been relieved, the dismounted sentries will be relieved, and will mount and join the ranks. As soon as the patrols have returned and all is reported secure, the old piquet falls back and the new one moves on to the ground thus vacated and dismounts.

The relief of piquet vedette posts may either be marched and posted in succession by a N.C. officer, as in the case of ordinary sentries, or the reliefs may be allowed to proceed direct to their posts and await the arrival of the N.C. officer, in whose presence the orders will be given over. Cossack posts will usually be relieved in the latter manner. In every case reliefs must be careful to move in rear of the chain and to *keep as far as* possible under cover.

(*q*) *Reception of Flags of Truce and Deserters from the Enemy.*

If a flag of truce presents itself it must be detained at the examining post until instructions are received from superior authority. If permission is given for it to enter the line, the individual bearing it must be carefully blindfolded and then led, under escort, by a circuitous route, to the commander of the outposts.

No conversation, except by properly authorised persons, is to be allowed on any subject, under any pretence, with individuals bearing flags of truce, or with other messengers from the enemy.

Prisoners and deserters are to be forwarded from the examining post to the officer commanding the piquet, who, after questioning them, forwards them under escort with a report to the commander of the outposts. They must be ordered to lay down their arms before they are allowed to approach the chain.

(*r*) *Attacks by the Enemy.*

It is impossible to lay down any precise rules for the conduct of outposts in case they are attacked by the enemy.

If they have performed their duty of gaining information properly, the movement of the enemy will be known, the main body will be prepared for action, and the outposts have nothing to do but to fall back steadily when an attack is made.

When, however, outposts are unexpectedly attacked by an enemy of unknown strength, it is their duty to make as strong a resistance as possible, in order to make the enemy show his real force, and to find out whether the attack is serious, or is only the attempt of a reconnoitring party to push back the line of defence so as to discover the force behind it.

In any case, the rule must be borne in mind on outpost duty that, if necessary, the smaller fractions must sacrifice themselves to protect the larger.

If suddenly attacked or surprised, the vedettes will fire and fall back on their piquet. If a report is received that the enemy is advancing, or signal shots are fired, the piquet mounts, and the commander proceeds at once to the line of vedettes to see if a real attack seems probable; if the enemy is still distant, the waiting patrol is sent to reconnoitre. As soon as the enemy's intentions are evident, the commander sends word to the commander of the outposts, the supports, and the neighbouring piquets.

The officer commanding each piquet should have previously made up his mind how he can best check the enemy. Sometimes much may be done by the fire of a few dismounted men commanding a bridge or defile. In other cases, the head of a column may be effectually checked by a bold charge on favourable ground. If, however, the enemy is too strong, the piquet commander falls back, taking care not to mask the front of the support.

If all the piquets are driven in, they should, if possible, assist each other in their retreat by alternately retiring and showing a front.

The support should either support the piquets if they are successful or cover their retreat if they are driven in, and should particularly guard against any piquet being outflanked and cut off. The nature of the defence to be made by the support will chiefly depend upon the facilities offered by the ground.

S. 10. *On the March from Day to Day.*

When halting near dark till sunrise next morning, if at some distance from the enemy, it will generally suffice to place such marching outposts as will ensure the main body till the next day.

All important points, *e.g.*, cross-roads, defiles, fords, bridges, &c., at some little distance in front or on the flanks of the position should be occupied at once. Each position would probably be covered by a piquet of two or three vedettes, inter-communication and information being maintained by patrols.

If close to the enemy, perhaps within a day's march, the same principle can be adopted, but great vigilance and energetic patrolling will be necessary. The outposts will nearly always be placed in twilight or darkness on unknown ground, which

the enemy will have no greater opportunity of examining than ourselves.

An attack in the darkness over unknown ground is therefore unlikely, but its possibility must not be ignored.

By careful watchfulness on the part of officers and N.C. officers on outpost duty a great saving of horseflesh may be effected, and no opportunity must be neglected to provide for so important an object.

S. 11. *Occupation and Protection of Cantonments and Bivouacs.*

It will depend mainly upon the proximity of the enemy whether it is advisable to place troops in cantonments or in bivouacs. There can be no doubt that in Europe the worst billet is preferable to the best bivouac, both for men and horses; for cantonments can be made more secure against sudden attacks, especially night attacks, they afford far greater protection from the weather, and ensure more refreshing rest. In bad weather, indeed, it is better for troops even to fall back a few miles, leaving a sufficient force to maintain the touch, rather than bivouac, if by this means a good night's rest can be secured.

When, however, large bodies of cavalry are in close proximity it may be necessary, with a view to speedy concentration, that they should bivouac, and small detached parties will often be compelled to do so owing to their only chance of safety consisting in their presence being kept secret from the enemy.

It may also often happen that owing to the mission entrusted to an advanced cavalry force, it will be so extended that a continuous system of outposts along the front will be impossible. The system of protection would then consist chiefly in measures taken in each cantonment or bivouac.

Isolated farms, hamlets, or enclosures should be chosen in preference to large villages, for cantonments for squadrons.

Barricades held by dismounted men will be arranged upon the approaches by which the enemy may try to break through. In addition, at a distance more or less great from cantonments, according to circumstances, posts will be stationed near cross roads, bridges, fords, &c., with the object of signalling the approach of the enemy. These dispositions will be combined with an active system of patrols.

In addition to these measures for protection, it will be necessary in the case of villages occupied by a hostile population to take special precautions within each cantonment: such as the occupation and defence of a suitable group of buildings.

When the enemy is at a considerable distance, an effective means of protection is to push squadrons out far to the front to some important points, such as a defile, for instance. Their procedure will depend on the circumstances of the moment; no fixed position will be assigned to the commander, but he must hang on the movements of the enemy. For further details, *see* p. 292 (Reconnoitring Detachments).

Villages or favourably situated ground may sometimes be occupied by outpost squadrons. In such cases the main body will often be more satisfactorily protected if these localities be defended with dismounted fire, than if a precipitate concentration be ordered. In the dark, detached bodies of cavalry must trust mainly to fire action for their immediate protection.

In every cantonment an alarm post (which must be clear of roads) will be established, and everyone made acquainted with it; or, if it has been decided to defend the place systematically, every man should have pointed out to him the exact post he is to take up if a certain signal is given.

For further details regarding occupation of cantonments and bivouacs, *see* "Regulations and Instructions for Encampments and Cantonments."

B. PROTECTION OF TROOPS ON THE MARCH.—ADVANCED AND REAR GUARDS.

S. 12. *General Observations.*

Advanced guards, rear guards, and flank guards perform the same duties in relation to a force on the march as outposts to one halted.

The distance between the advanced guard and the main body depends on circumstances. If too great, the advanced guard runs the risk of being overwhelmed; if too small the main body may be surprised.

The leader must, however, be guided by the following considerations:—

(*a*) As the advanced guard has to give timely warning of an enemy's approach it must be pushed further to the front in proportion to the length of time the main body requires to deploy, and the ease and rapidity with which the enemy can advance.

(*b*) The time intelligence is likely to take in coming in and being transmitted, and the amount of resistance that can be offered by the advanced guard, must be taken into account.

(*c*) The character of the enemy, and his tactics and armament, materially affect the position of the advanced guard.

(*d*) It is clear that on a night march, or in snowy, foggy, hazy, or rainy weather, the distance between the various parts of the advanced guard and its distance from the main body must be reduced; while in a very open country, by day, when communication can be freely maintained, the several parties can extend over a greater range.

S. 13. *Composition and Formation of the Advanced Guard.*

The strength will vary from one-sixth to one-fourth of the whole force.

The principle of the formation of an advanced guard is, that it should consist of a number of bodies gradually increasing in strength from front to rear, so as to oppose a constantly increasing resistance to an enemy, and to provide each party in front with immediate support if any slight opposition impedes its advance.

Supposing a squadron to be employed for this duty, it will usually be divided into the following parts :—

(*a*) Advanced party.
(*b*) Support.
(*c*) Reserve, with flanking patrols.

On receiving the order to form the advanced guard, the squadron commander will tell off his squadron as follows :—

"First Troop—Advanced party."
"Second Troop—Support."
"Third and Fourth Troops (or Third Troop)—Reserve."

Any particular directions regarding the road to be followed, intervals, distances, the flanking patrols to be sent out by the reserve, &c., will then be communicated to the parties concerned. These instructions, which will be short and precise, stating clearly the names of the places to be passed, will be repeated by those concerned.

On the order being received for the advance guard to move off, the squadron commander will give the preliminary caution, "*Form the Advanced Guard.*"

The advanced party and flanking patrols (each preceded by a file, as advanced scouts) will move at an increased pace so as to get their proper position in front and on the flanks of the advanced guard; for the former this is about 600 yards in front of the support, and for the latter at an interval of not

less than half a mile from the reserve, and roughly in line with it.

When the rest of the squadron (support and reserve) have advanced a sufficient distance from the main body (which will vary with circumstances, but about 600 yards may be taken as the normal distance), the reserve will be ordered to walk, the support moving on until it gets about 600 yards in advance of the reserve.

Thus, under ordinary circumstances the advanced guard will cover about a mile in front and the same distance in depth.

As regards the distances to be kept up between the various parts of the advanced guard and the latter from the main body, the commander must use his discretion, being guided by the following general principles :—

Each fraction (scouts, advanced party, support, and reserve) should cross the intervening space from one point of observation to another rapidly at a trot, whilst behind each commanding rise a short halt should be made till the body next behir l has drawn within its normal distance ; at this juncture a further advance will be made to the next rising ground, when the fraction will again halt under cover, and the same procedure will be followed.

By this means horseflesh is saved, the ground is thoroughly examined, and the advance of the force is carried out in security with the least possible delay.

(*a*) *Commander of the Advanced Guard.*

The commander's attention must be principally directed to the following points :—

1. Measures for the security of the march.
2. The ground, and how best to take advantage of it.
3. What he proposes to do if the enemy is encountered.

In order to enable the commander to take full advantage of the ground in case of attack, a correct reconnaissance of the road and neighbouring country is indispensable.

The commander of an advanced guard should thoroughly understand the general intentions of his superior, and should have clear instructions as to the line of action which is desired in case of collision with the enemy.

Before starting, the commander should note in his pocketbook the main points in his instructions, such as the places he is to pass, and should mark the latter on his map. He should also take care that maps are distributed, roughly copied, or, at any rate, inspected by and explained to the officers and N.C. officers.

He must carefully inspect his command, and pay particular attention to the arms and ammunition; to the saddling, state of the shoeing, spare shoes, &c.; and to the rations and forage to be carried.

As a general rule, no grey, unsteady, or neighing horses should be allowed in the advanced party or flanking patrols; if there are any, or any of the horses are badly shod, or the men's arms are out of order, the commander will detail others in their place.

The commander of the advanced guard will usually march with the reserve, but being responsible for the conduct of the whole advanced guard, is not restricted to any one position.

All orders for the advanced guard are sent to him, as also all reports from the various fractions of the advanced guard; such of the latter as are of importance will be forwarded by him to the commander of the main body, but he will invariably state his own opinion as to their reliability. He will keep the commander of the main body regularly informed as to the presence or absence of the enemy, and anything that could affect the movements of the main body.

Should he at any time leave the reserve, he will make arrangements to ensure his receiving orders and reports without delay, and will instruct the commander of the reserve how to act in his absence.

(*b*) *Commander of the Advanced Party.*

In order to carry out the special duties of his command, which are described in the following paragraphs, the commander of the advanced party must regulate the sections into which his troop may be broken up in such a manner that they scout sufficiently far, and at the same time keep up communication, and are able to obtain support.

He must utilise every possible means for obtaining information regarding the enemy, his numbers, position, &c. To do this it is not only necessary to send out patrols and observe for himself, but all persons who are likely to be able to give information should be questioned, and, whenever possible, prisoners should be taken.

All information should, if possible, be reduced to writing.

(*c*) *Formation and Duties of the Advanced Party.*

The duties of the advanced party are :—

(*a*) To explore the ground and cover the march of the advanced guard, in such a manner as to avoid unnecessary delays.

(*b*) Reconnoitre the road and the country on both sides of the main line of advance, with regard to the nature of the road and the main features of the country from a military point of view.

(*c*) Rapidly gather as complete and reliable information regarding the enemy as possible.

(*d*) Drive back hostile parties opposing the advance, and take prisoners from them.

(*e*) Detect, and at all hazards defeat, any attempts of the enemy to place obstacles in the roads, destroy bridges, or otherwise impede the free passage of the troops.

To explore the main line of advance is exclusively the task of the advanced party. As regards the flanks it is only responsible as far as its flank sections extend.

The advanced party will move along the route to be followed by the main body. If the march is on a confined road, a file will be sent forward, as advanced scouts, about 100 yards, and at least one man should ride 20 yards or so in rear of the party. If the country is open, or there are parallel roads within about a quarter of a mile on either side of the main line of advance, a section will be detached to either flank, with orders to keep generally within sight of the centre sections, and roughly level with them. Each section will be preceded by advanced scouts, and should have a rear guard as above.

The special duties of the advanced scouts (who, if on a road, will ride on either side of it) are to observe the country in front and on the immediate flanks. They must keep a sharp look-out at all bends and turnings, and on reaching any high ground over which the road passes must look carefully round before exposing themselves. As in the case of the advanced scouts of all detached parties, they should have their carbines drawn and loaded (lances slung), ready to give an alarm, if absolutely necessary.

The special duties of the flank sections of the advanced party are to search the ground in the immediate neighbourhood, and to assist the centre party by turning the flanks of woods, villages, &c., and examining the high ground on each side when the road passes through a defile. In order to avoid delay, they must examine bye-paths and cross-roads at a trot.

(*d*) *The Support*

It forms the body from which men in the parties under the orders of the leader of the advanced party are replaced or reinforced, it supplies any other detachments that may be required in front, and is the first formed body of any size to meet the enemy.

Whenever the advanced party halts, the support also halts, as far as possible under cover, until the cause of delay is

ascertained. Similarly, it halts whilst a village or wood is being turned, until it is seen that it is unoccupied or the reverse.

If there is a guide, he will, as a rule, march with the support.

The support keeps up connection with the advanced party by means of a connecting file, which will ride about 300 yards in advance; it also provides a connecting file which rides 300 yards in advance of the reserve.

The support always marches at attention, but swords need only be drawn in an enclosed country, in the immediate presence of the enemy, and at night.

(*e*) *The Reserve.*

It marches at attention, and must be ready at all times to move quickly to the front or flank if its assistance should be required, or to form a rallying point for the parties in front.

The only detachments regularly supplied by it are the flanking patrols and a connecting file halfway between it and the main body.

S. 14. *Flanking Detachments.*

In the case of a large force of cavalry, separate bodies (termed flank guards), following the same rules as advanced and rear guards (supposing them to take ground to a flank), may be thrown out on either flank. Their strength will depend on the ground they have to cover, the probability of flank attacks, and the strength of the force covered.

In the case of comparatively small bodies, such as a regiment, the flanks will be protected by "*flanking patrols*" supplied by the reserve of the advanced and rear guards; for the protection of the flanks of larger bodies, additional flanking patrols will be detached from the main body as may be considered necessary.

The special duties of *flanking patrols* are to prevent the column being attacked in flank without due notice. The ground and main communications which lie towards the flank, beyond the view of the advanced party, must be searched. Flanking patrols will communicate, at certain places to be fixed before starting, with the bodies from which they are detached.

Flanking patrols should, as a rule, consist of a section, otherwise they will be unable to carry out their duties.

When practicable the patrol leader should be given a rough tracing of the route to follow, and be told when to rejoin the main body.

The patrol leader must concentrate his attention upon important points. In the course of a march there will, as a rule, be roads which run at right angles or obliquely to the one followed by the column and which cross it. Flanking patrols must occupy, or at any rate watch, all such roads during the time that they are dangerous. They should advance from point to point, and should as a whole be a little ahead of the force protected, in order to reach the several important points, or at any rate overlook them, in time to intervene between them and the column. Flanking patrols should try and occupy a succession of eminences which afford a good view over the country and roads towards the dangerous flank.

The stronger the column is, and the slower the rate at which it moves, the more important will be the duties of the flank detachment, and the dangerous points must be occupied for a longer time and in greater force.

The distance between the flank detachment and the column will vary according to the nature of the ground, the direction and condition of the roads of communication, the strength and rate of movement of the main column.

The first object of the main body is to complete its march, not to support the flank guard; hence the task of the latter is more difficult than that of an advanced guard. Moreover, the flank of the flank guard is exposed and the watching of the enemy thus becomes more difficult.

Chief duties of flank guard are :—

(1) To obtain information and guard the main body against unexpected encounter.

(2) To delay march of the enemy by partial attacks or by destroying bridges or roads leading towards marching column.

(3) In the event of enemy attacking, to engage him until main body has passed in safety.

S. 15. Communication between the Parts of the Guard.

The advanced party and flanking patrols communicate, as far as possible, by signals, as talking may betray their presence to the enemy, and riding backwards and forwards uses up the horses. These signals should consist principally of signs, such as holding the hand over the head for "Halt," and pointing in any direction in which they wish the others to look. If advanced scouts have to report anything, only one man of the pair should ride in with the information. Scouts on the extreme flanks should, if possible, communicate anything of great importance to the nearest scouts.

Signalling with flags is not generally suitable so far in advance, as it might attract the enemy's attention ; but signallers should always accompany the advanced guard so as to be able to transmit intelligence whenever circumstances render it possible to do so with safety, and when time and horseflesh can be saved thereby.

The chief and proper duty of the regular connecting files is to facilitate the several parties of the advanced guard keeping the proper distance and taking the same direction, and they will call attention to any considerable deviation in these respects. They will at once repeat signals either from the front or rear, and must, therefore, constantly look back at the next party in rear. They must be especially alert when the road is winding

or passes over hilly ground, and when marching through towns or woods at night and in thick weather.

Connecting files should always be double when men can be spared, as many horses are troublesome and neigh when alone, and one of the two men can pass on any communications, and draw attention to any change of direction or pace in rear.

As the rate of march of the main body necessarily regulates that of the advanced guard, each party of the latter must be careful to maintain connection with the body next in rear of it. To this end links should be dropped at points where, owing to bends in the road or to the hilly or enclosed nature of the country, the usual connecting files are unable to keep in sight the parties between which they are marching. This precaution will often be necessary at cross roads or where a road divides.

As the habit of constant communication is essential, a report should be sent from the advanced guard to the main body every hour, or other named period.

S. 16. *Method of Examining Localities.*

(*a*) The Main Road.

The following are the points to which attention must be directed :—

The Road.—Its state, width, bridges, fords, embankments, &c. If any obstacles to the march exist, their nature, and method of turning them, must be reported.

(*b*) Villages, Towns, &c.

If there is reason to suppose that a place is unoccupied, it is generally sufficient if the advanced party rides rapidly round and through it, after a preliminary examination by its advanced scouts, signalling to the support that all is clear.

In localities where there are post or telegraph offices, all letters, registers, &c., should be seized as soon as possible.

Whilst the commander is questioning the inhabitants the supports halt on the near side, the advanced party watching the approaches on the far side. When he has finished, the support trots through the village, and the parties in advance regain their distance also at the trot.

If any of the enemy are met in the village the advanced scouts should, if necessary, fire so as to warn their comrades, and then either follow up the enemy if he retires or fall back on the advanced party.

If there is reason to think that the locality is occupied, the first thing is to approach as close as possible without delay, and endeavour to look into the place from some neighbouring height. If this cannot be done, the advanced party will endeavour to work up to and round the place in order to ascertain the enemy's strength and dispositions, while the support halts under cover.

If the place is occupied, there will usually be a reserve close to the exit on the far side, and the ground may admit of one or two men creeping round unobserved and finding out if this is the case ; this reserve is more easily detected than an enemy in the village. If they succeed, the result of their observations is much more valuable than anything that can be got by drawing fire, which would only show, as a rule, if the place is occupied.

Houses should be searched by men in parties of at least two, one to remain at the entrance, and, if possible, they ought to be able to communicate during the search by speaking.

In searching localities on the line of march care must be taken that the advance of the rest of the advanced guard and the main body is not thereby delayed. The advanced bodies must, therefore, trot on in time to examine the places which cannot be passed without being searched.

If an inhabited place is merely passed on the march, it should not be altogether left by the advanced guard until the arrival of the main body, and care is to be taken that no intimation is sent by any of the inhabitants to the enemy.

If the place is the termination of a march and the main body is to be halted there, it falls to the advanced guard, after entering and examining it with due precaution, to make every preparation to ensure permanent security and to provide all requisites for information and supply.

To this end the following steps will be taken :—

(*a*) All approaches are to be reconnoitred and guarded, and the best look-out stations occupied.

(*b*) The town-hall, railway station, and post and telegraph offices are to be occupied, and schools, offices, &c., searched for maps if required.

(*c*) The mayor, or corresponding personage, will be required to wait on the commanding officer, and to afford information regarding the neighbourhood, roads, bridges, ferries, fords, resources in provisions, bakeries, mills, drinking places, smithies, saddlers, wheelwrights' and carpenters' shops; he will also procure guides if required.

(*d*) In an enemy's country the authorities will be ordered to cause all weapons to be brought, at a fixed time, to some enclosed space, where they will be rendered useless. They will also be required to point out all stores or manufactories of powder, dynamite, or other explosives, with a view to their being rendered harmless; and they will be warned that the least negligence in the above two matters will entail the severest penalty not only on the individuals concerned, but also on the whole locality.

If the advanced guard has far preceded the main body, an

alarm post must be established for the concentration of all, in case of attack before the main body arrives.

In the first occupation of a town or village, a few men should be dismounted with carbines and judiciously posted under cover, so as to command the main street and principal entrances until the place is permanently held.

(*c*) Woods.

In examining a wood the centre section of the advanced party follows the main road, the flank sections riding round the outskirts, if the wood is not too large. If the wood be large, the centre and flank sections will detach as many files as may be required to search it thoroughly, the men keeping touch as far as possible from the centre. If necessary, some men should be sent forward from the support to ride between the fractions of the advanced party.

All bye-paths and cross roads must be followed for a considerable distance, and the wood itself should in all cases be watched to a distance of 200 or 300 yards on each side of the main body during its passage. Villages or hamlets in woods, whether actually on the road or not, must always be carefully examined.

When the far edge of a wood is reached, the advanced scouts must look out carefully before debouching.

(*d*) Defiles.

The course to be pursued is much the same as with villages and woods. The crest of the defile, if it is formed by high ground, should be searched by scouts rather in advance of the advanced party. If there is reason to suppose that the defile is unoccupied, the different parties pass it at the trot, the advanced party proceeding as quickly as possible, on reaching the far side, to any spot from which a view can be obtained.

(*e*) Rivers.

On arriving at a river, the passages must be carefully examined, and if the bridges are broken, insecure, or insufficient, their state must be at once reported, and steps taken if necessary to procure the workmen and material required for their repair. The most important point is to secure as many points of passage as possible for the troops in rear, and to indicate in good time their suitability for the several arms.

S. 17. *Collision with the Enemy.*

It is evident that an advanced guard will not be able to make its way through a hostile country, or in presence of an enemy, without having constant collisions with detached parties and patrols. Sometimes, also, it will have to present such a resistance to a serious attack as will give the main body time to prepare for action.

As a rule, the sections of the advanced party will be able, unassisted, to push away the enemy's small patrols and scouts. If larger bodies are met, the assistance of the support will be required, and the reserve of the advanced guard may also be called upon.

The principle should be maintained that, while not allowing themselves to lose ground, the men of the advanced guard should not waste their strength in small encounters with equal forces, if, by a slight delay, support and assistance can be secured. It must, however, be remembered that it is very important to seize and hold any good positions for attack and defence. When once these are gained, they are hard for the enemy to retake; but if the advanced guard give up such positions lightly, much blood may be spilt in regaining them.

The advanced guard being closely bound to the body of

troops it is covering, its movements must be regulated according to the effect which its action will have on that force, and all independent enterprises on its own account must be avoided.

When an advanced guard meets the enemy, the first thing to be done is to find out what it has in front of it (whether an advanced guard, flank detachment of a column on the march, or the outposts of a stationary force) and where their main body is. The shortest and best method of ascertaining the above points is to take a few prisoners.

On any fraction of the advanced party discovering the enemy, it immediately reports the fact, and, while itself keeping as far as possible under cover, does not let the enemy out of sight. The neighbouring fractions are warned by signs, so that they may take part in the observation, all endeavouring to reach any cover in the vicinity and prosecute their observations from it; if necessary they take off their headdress.

Firing should never be resorted to by any fraction of the advanced party, unless there is no other means of warning the rest of the advanced guard of imminent danger.

If the enemy surprises the support (which can only happen through the negligence or bad management of the advanced party or the flankers) the leader, without any regard to the strength of the enemy, must attack at once. An immediate and energetic charge is absolutely necessary to enable the troops in rear to form for action.

If artillery fire is heard, a special patrol must be sent to ascertain the cause.

S. 18. *Rear Guards.*

In a forward march, the duties of the rear guard are, for the most part, confined to hindering men from straggling from the main body, to bringing on those who have fallen behind, and to preventing marauding and misconduct. Its strength is then

comparatively weak, as the greater proportion of men available for the protection of the main body will be employed in advance or on the flanks.

When a force retires before the enemy, the rear guard covers and protects its retreat, and consequently must be of a strength sufficient to carry out its *rôle* independently. In this case it will usually comprise at least two-thirds of the number available for detached duty.

The principal *rôle* of cavalry acting dismounted is as a rear guard, covering the retreat of the force to which it belongs.

A squadron detailed for the rear guard is told off in exactly the same manner as for the advanced guard. On the order to march, however, being received, the support and rear party, &c., gain their distance by allowing the rest of the force to march off; the flanking patrols move off at once.

All details regarding the method of watching the enemy and conducting the other duties laid down for the advanced party are equally applicable to the rear party.

Special care must be taken in the choice of the flanking patrols and the direction they are to follow, as on them falls the task of detecting the turning movements the enemy is sure to undertake.

The Commander of the Rear Guard.

As regards the distance from the main body, the commander of the rear guard must be guided by two main considerations; he must not allow himself to be either thrown back on the main body or cut off from it.

No task is so difficult as that of the commander of a rear guard in retreat. He must possess the faculty of knowing when, where, and how long to make a stand, and so arrange his retreat that when he falls back he not only retires, but, as it were, disappears. If he falls into the error of trying to dispute every inch of ground he will lose time, and whilst he is allowing the enemy to hold him in front the latter will turn and cut him off.

His duties are :—

(*a*) To watch the enemy, and especially to discover any turning movement.

(*b*) To delay the advance of the enemy by every means in his power, and to prevent his forcing the rear guard to fight against its will, or overlooking its movements.

(*c*) To protect parties employed in carrying out the destruction of roads, bridges, &c., by keeping watch on the enemy, and, if necessary, acting offensively ; for instance, by laying an ambush for him, or making short bold attacks. The end to be attained is not only to protect the working parties, but also to make the enemy cautious, delay his advance, and procure time for the main body to continue its march. The offensive movements must be short and rapid, and, as soon as completed, the retreat must be rapidly continued, otherwise there will be a danger of being cut off.

(*d*) Whenever possible, and time permits, to create obstacles by destroying bridges, removing ferries, erecting barricades, &c., with the help of requisitioned labour. Obviously, time will rarely permit of such operations being commenced and carried out by the support and rear party ; it is the duty of the main body and reserve to make these arrangements, and to detail the parties to carry them out, but the support and rear party will often have to put the finishing stroke to the work.

(*e*) Never to leave stragglers, sick, or wounded behind ; for the latter, carts or wagons should be requisitioned ; but if this is not possible, the names and regiments of those left behind should be noted, and the men handed over to the care of the municipal authorities. Every effort must be made to bring on abandoned stores, equipment, &c., by requisitioning horses and wagons for the purpose ; if this cannot be done, they should be destroyed rather than allowed to fall into the enemy's hands.

(*f*) If the main body halts, to take up a position under cover,

facing the enemy, so as to watch his movements, and charge if necessary.

When a rear guard approaches a defile, it should be ascertained whether the whole of the main body is clear of it before its own passage is commenced. Until the main body is clear, it is the duty of the rear guard to check the enemy at all risks.

Obstruction to the march of the enemy is effected in various ways; for example, by destroying bridges, or rendering them impassable. If the roadway consists of planks they should be loosened, and removed altogether after the passage of the rear party, or the bridge may be burnt, or, if of stone or iron, blown up.

Gateways, narrow roads, &c., can be blocked by locking together wagons (if possible filled with rubbish, manure, &c.), and removing one or more of the wheels.

Fords are rendered impassable by throwing in ploughs, harrows, &c.

Boats should be removed to the side of the river further from the enemy, and sunk.

Villages, woods, houses, if the circumstances demand it, can be set on fire by the support and rear party after they have passed them.

The rear guard commander should take care to have clear instructions as to the extent to which he is at liberty to destroy the means of communication, to burn villages and stores, &c., in case it is intended to re-occupy the country.

S. 19. *Advanced and Rear Guards during Halts.*

In principle, it is the advanced (or rear) guard which furnishes the outposts of a force on the march, at any rate until they can be relieved, if necessary, by fresher troops; during a temporary halt, therefore, the various fractions of the advanced (or rear) party and the flanking patrols at once form themselves into vedette or Cossack posts, the support or reserve sending out patrols to examine all the roads and avenues of approach leading to the front and flanks. If the halt is for the night, they act in a similar manner until the regular outposts are placed.

GENERAL DUTIES OF CAVALRY ON THE FIELD OF BATTLE IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE OTHER ARMS.

The cavalry of an army in the field is distinguished as "The Cavalry Division" and "The Divisional Cavalry." The former has a more or less independent *rôle*, whilst the latter consists of a small force attached permanently to the infantry division.

A squadron of cavalry is also attached to "Army Corps" troops.

Cavalry will also be frequently combined with the other arms for the escort of convoys, &c.

S. 20. *The Cavalry Division.*

Speaking generally, an engagement of whatever dimensions between two hostile forces can only arise when one side occupies a defensive position and is attacked by the other, or when both sides attempt a simultaneous attack.

As the action develops one side or other will assume the *rôle* of attacker or defender; and each may do so alternately; or one portion of a long line of battle may be attacking and another defending at the same time.

An army may thus have to operate under any of three different sets of circumstances:—

(*a*) The attack on an enemy in a chosen position.
(*b*) The defence of a position which an enemy attacks.
(*c*) The attack on an enemy who is himself advancing to the attack.

The tactical employment of the cavalry division must accordingly be considered under each of these several conditions.

The Attack on an Enemy in Position.

The following are the chief points to be noticed by a cavalry reconnoitring force which has prosecuted its researches close up to an enemy in position :—

(*a*) In which direction the enemy's front faces, and where, judging from the distribution of the troops, the most serious resistance is likely to be met.

(*b*) With what number of troops, and of what arm, the front is occupied.

(*c*) Whether the position is fortified ; if so, where and how.

(*d*) The best lines of approach for the direct attack, and positions for the batteries accompanying it.

(*e*) Where the flanks rest, and whether they rest on impassable ground or entrenchments.

(*f*) The best lines of approach and positions for batteries for a flank attack.

(*g*) If any reserves are visible behind the front or flanks the arm and strength, whether stationary or in movement ; if the latter, in which direction.

Columns on the March.—The important points to notice are :—

(*a*) On what front is the column marching.

(*b*) Which arm is in front, as it gives the rate of march.

(*c*) Whether there is apparently much opening out.

(*d*) Approximate strength of each arm.

In the case of British troops a given point is passed in one minute by about—

260 infantry in fours ("Infantry Drill," Part VII).

116 cavalry in sections at the walk (about 88 if in rear of infantry marching 3 miles an hour).

236 cavalry in sections at the trot.

6 guns or wagons (with 6 horses) at the walk (4 or 6, if in rear of infantry).

12 guns or wagons (with 6 horses) at the trot.

In the above calculation 19 yards are allowed for each 6-horse gun and wagon.

If the whole column can be seen and its length estimated from the map, its strength can be roughly calculated by the following practical rule, viz. :—

1 yard for every two infantry soldiers when four abreast.
1 yard for each cavalry soldier when in sections.
20 yards for each gun or wagon.

An allowance of at least 10 per cent. of the theoretical length of a column, varying according to national characteristics, discipline, state of the roads, &c., must be made for opening out.

As soon as the attack is determined upon, the cavalry commander should ascertain from the commander-in-chief the plan on which the attack is to be conducted, and should obtain direct orders from him as to the general course of action which he is required to adopt during the engagement, and any special missions which the cavalry are to carry out.

The sphere of action of the cavalry will always be on one or both flanks.

The following are the principal tasks which devolve upon the division :—

(*a*) To hold its own against the enemy's cavalry and resolutely oppose any of its enterprises.

It is evident that the side whose cavalry is able to carry out all or any of the previously-enumerated duties on the battle-field will have a great advantage over an adversary whose cavalry fails to render him similar services. But it is not to be expected that in the endeavour to fulfil these tasks the cavalry will be unopposed by its own arm.

The cavalry, taking up a position beyond the flanks of a line of battle, must therefore not only be prepared to hold its ground and vigorously support its reconnaissances, but must feel that until it has driven the enemy's cavalry from the field and paralysed its action, it will not, as a rule, be free to fulfil its other important duties on the field of battle. As in the

province of strategy, so in the sphere of tactics, the enemy's cavalry must be overthrown before any useful end can be attained.

It is certain, therefore, that if the cavalry on both sides carry out their proper *rôle*, either one or both flanks will be the scene of severe cavalry engagements, the result of which must exercise a sensible influence on the subsequent course of the battle.

(*b*) To endeavour to gain the flanks and rear of the enemy in conjunction with the horse artillery, so as to gain information and create a diversion.

At the commencement of the battle, before the infantry are committed to the attack, it is all important for the commander-in-chief to be well informed of the enemy's dispositions and movements, especially as regards the reserves, which are hidden from his view. In planning his attack, it is necessary that he should be able to recognise the decisive or weak points in the enemy's position, and should be assured as to the amount of resistance that can be brought to bear at such points.

This object will generally have to be gained by the cavalry pressing forward on the flanks of the enemy and taking up a position whence it can detach patrols, &c., which will accurately determine the enemy's strength and dispositions, and by means of a well-arranged system of communication, can keep the commander-in-chief informed of all that passes on the enemy's side.

The cavalry having this way gained and rendered all the information that can be obtained, its great mobility will enable it, together with its artillery, to assist in disguising the real plan of attack by moving rapidly to a suitable point, with the object of making a secondary or pretended attack.

(*c*) To assist and support a movement of the other arms made with the object of outflanking the enemy.

Owing to its greater mobility, the cavalry is able to arrive more quickly than infantry at a distant point, whence it can act against the rear of the flank to be attacked, threaten ammuni-

tion columns, and otherwise spread uneasiness as to the security of the communications. When engaged in such enterprises, however, it must be careful to maintain its tactical connection with the other arms. It may also be of great assistance in working with infantry in a turning movement, especially by ensuring it against surprise and preventing the enemy's cavalry discovering the movement.

(*d*) To prevent, retard, or give timely notice of any attempted turning movement on the part of the enemy.

In the case under consideration, that of an enemy occupying a defensive position, this would be in the form of a counter-attack. The cavalry leader must be on the look-out for such an attempt, give timely notice of it to the commander-in-chief, and do his utmost, in conjunction with his guns, to retard and harass it.

In order to carry out this *rôle*, the cavalry commander should be able to judge the intentions of the enemy from a close observation of his movements. The ability to form a correct judgment on this point, which indeed is most essential for all cavalry officers on the field of battle, can only be gained by experience, and by cultivating the habit of watching the movements of the other arms and endeavouring to divine their object.

(*e*) To push forward detachments along the roads by which it is expected that reinforcements may arrive for the enemy, give early notice of their approach, and retard and harass them should they appear.

The strategic situation will generally indicate the direction from which reinforcements may be expected to arrive, and this will probably influence the commander-in-chief in determining at what points the cavalry are to concentrate at the commencement of the action.

In addition to the tasks above-mentioned which will fall to the lot of the cavalry division, it may happen that the artillery, which has been pushed forward at the commencement of the battle, may require more support than can be rendered by the

divisional cavalry and the infantry of the advanced guard, and for this it must look to the cavalry division.

The Defence of a Position which an Enemy Attacks.

The advantage accruing to the attack, and the corresponding disadvantage suffered by the defence, consists in the fact that the attacker can choose his point of attack and keep his adversary in ignorance of it to the last, employing various means to deceive him as to which is the real and which the false attack, whilst the defender remains in doubt as to where to expect it.

Owing to this difference in the tactical situation the cavalry will often be able to render invaluable service to the commander-in-chief on the defending side; pushing out on the flanks, overthrowing the enemy's cavalry, holding its own in as forward a position as possible; detecting the movements and arrangements of the attacking columns, delaying the advance and deployment of the enemy's infantry, and communicating all that passes.

In the presence of a cavalry which can carry out this *rôle*, the attacker will be unable to deceive his enemy. It will expose his plans and intentions, and give the general early intimation of the points where he may expect an attack. The attacker will thus be deprived of one of his great advantages.

Bearing in mind the difference between the tactics of the attack and defence, all that has been said of the action of the cavalry division in the attack applies in principle to the defence.

There is, however, an additional point to be noticed. The assailant will from the first push forward as powerful a force of artillery as possible. The infantry at hand for the protection of the latter will be only that of the advanced guard, and it will therefore have to rely on the assistance of its cavalry. There will thus arise chances for a successful attack on the enemy's guns by the cavalry of the defence, which must be closely watched for and taken advantage of.

The Attack on an Enemy who is himself advancing to an Attack.

The chance encounter is perhaps of more frequent occurrence in war than any other. As one side or the other must very soon assume the *rôle* of the attacker or defender, the general principles laid down above as to the employment of the cavalry division will equally apply to such encounters, but the action of the cavalry in the earlier stages of the fight will probably influence the subsequent progress of the battle to a greater extent than is the case when one side occupies a prepared position which the other attacks.

Supposing it to be the intention of each side to advance to the attack as soon as the adversary appears, that side which is able to form order of battle from order of march more quickly than the other, and to seize the initiative, will probably force on its adversary the *rôle* of defender. The ability to do this must mainly depend upon its receiving early and accurate information regarding the enemy, his dispositions, &c., and for this it must rely upon its cavalry.

A skilfully handled cavalry division, with its accompanying horse artillery, may also be of great assistance in hindering and delaying the enemy's deployment.

The cavalry division may be called upon to sacrifice itself entirely or partially for the general welfare of the army, as, for instance, when it is necessary, at all risks, to gain time for the arrival of reinforcements or for the execution of a turning movement. When such action is called for, the cavalry commander, while taking advantage of any opportunity that may present itself of falling upon the opposing infantry or artillery in an unexpected or advantageous direction, will not hesitate to throw his troops boldly upon the adversary, and in sufficient numbers to ensure the fullest success that can possibly be attained.

S. 21. *The Divisional Cavalry.*

The officer commanding the cavalry will ascertain from the divisional general the main features of his plan of attack or defence, and will obtain his orders as to the general or special duties which may be required of the cavalry. One of its principal tasks will be to keep the divisional commander informed of all that is passing, and preserving connection within the divisions.

The position of the divisional cavalry during the engagement must depend almost entirely upon the conformation of the ground. In the earlier stages of the fire combat, such portions of it as are not engaged in reconnaissance or in keeping up communication with neighbouring troops, will, as a rule, be placed as far as possible under cover from fire ; but, especially towards the close of the fight, when the long continued strain has made the enemy highly susceptible to moral impressions, the cavalry should be ready to move rapidly, without waiting for orders, to any suitable position near the front whence it can suddenly and unexpectedly fall upon the enemy's infantry. Such attacks, if successful, must be instantly followed up by the infantry, so that the advantage gained, probably at great cost, by the cavalry, may be utilised to the utmost.

During the course of an engagement, the sudden appearance of even small bodies of cavalry at critical points may be productive of very decisive effects, and the cavalry commander must keep the most careful watch for such fleeting opportunities as may present themselves of approaching guns or infantry under cover of the ground or dust, and especially when the guns are in motion or the infantry is in disorder.

The commander of the divisional cavalry must always bear in mind that his first duty is to assist the divisional commander in every possible manner, and one of the most useful services he can render him is to keep him informed of all that happens to the neighbouring troops.

If any considerable fraction of the division becomes detached during the fight, it should, if possible, be provided with a few mounted men, who will serve to maintain its connection with the rest of the division, and to keep it informed of what is passing on the battlefield in its vicinity.

S. 22. *Pursuit.*

When the enemy is seen to be worsted and is evidently preparing to retreat, all the available cavalry, divisional and otherwise, together with the horse artillery, must be held in readiness to be launched in a vigorous pursuit.

As soon as this phase of the battle becomes imminent, the cavalry commander will keep himself in close communication with the commander-in-chief, in order to receive instructions from him as to the mode in which he may wish the pursuit to be carried out.

The enemy, if well commanded, will organise a rear guard to cover his retreat, and the cavalry division should endeavour to prevent this force from fulfilling its *rôle*, by pressing close upon it and round its flanks, threatening to cut it off from its main body, and forestalling it at points on the line of retreat where an effective stand can be made. It should also endeavour, with a part of its force, to push on towards the flanks of the retreating main body, harassing it, and giving it no chance of resting or forming.

The cavalry commander must, at all hazards, keep close touch with the retreating enemy, and assure himself as to the real direction and mode in which the retreat is being conducted, and must specially guard against being drawn in a false direction.

S. 23. *Retreat.*

In country suitable for its employment, the cavalry division, owing to its great mobility, would form the rearmost force of a rear-guard organised to cover the retreat of a beaten enemy. The force sent in pursuit would probably also consist chiefly of cavalry, whose enterprises it would be the duty of the cavalry commander to defeat.

S. 24. *Escorts for Prisoners and Convoys.*

Escorts for prisoners are generally composed of cavalry and infantry; the latter furnishes the defensive element in case of attack, whilst a few of the former skirt the column to maintain order, the remainder providing the advanced and rear guards and flankers. A portion of the infantry precede, flank, and follow the column, the remainder march concentrated as a reserve about the centre. 100 to 200 infantry and 25 to 30 cavalry should generally suffice for 1,000 prisoners.

The officer in command of the escort receives the route by which he is to march, also a list, if possible a nominal roll, of the prisoners under his charge; and when handing them over he should get a receipt for the latter.

The escort always loads in the presence of the prisoners.

The prisoners are to march in regular formation, on as broad a front as possible, in the centre of the road, the officers separate from the men.

N.C. officers amongst the prisoners are to be held responsible that discipline is maintained.

Temporary halts should be made on open ground, with, if possible, a stream, marsh, or other impassable ground on one or more sides, but never in woods or inhabited localities; and the passage of these latter must be avoided as far as practicable.

Arrangements must be made regarding food for the prisoners, and cooking utensils provided in order to enable them to cook.

At night, if large barns or houses can be found in which to place them, all the doors should be locked, except one, at which a double sentry is placed, and a lantern must be kept burning. If it is necessary to bivouac, the precautions are the same as for temporary halts.

If the column is attacked, the prisoners will be ordered to lie down, a portion of the escort will watch them, threatening to shoot any that move, and the remainder will resist the attack.

Convoys.

Before starting, the commander of a convoy draws it up on as broad a front as possible, and it marches always in the same consecutive order, each driver having a number. In a combined convoy of wagons and animals, the former are to be in front.

As regards the tactical arrangements, they must be such that, in case of attack, the engagement shall take place at some distance from the convoy. With this object the escort is divided into two parts; the one, as weak as circumstances will permit, maintains discipline amongst the drivers, and sees that the column keeps properly closed up; the other, consisting of the main body, marches concentrated, covering the convoy with advanced and rear guards and flankers.

If the enemy is in the vicinity, and the ground is broken, it it is advisable that the main body should go from one defile or hill to the next; and the convoy should only follow when the ground, particularly on the flanks, has been searched.

In case of attack, if the convoy cannot get away in time, a laager is to be made, the cavalry escort attacking the enemy, whilst the infantry defends the convoy.

Halts for the night must be made, as far as possible, in a spot with a clear field of fire, and the wagons formed into a laager.

THE CAVALRY FIGHT.

S. 25. General Observations.

In the cavalry fight rapidity of movement, combined with perfect order and the highest development of mobility and manœuvring power, are the most important points for attention. It is essential to success that a complete mutual understanding should exist between the chief and subordinate commanders, the latter being fully capable of independent action and initiative, and not allowing their attention to be absorbed by the minor details of their command.

During manœuvre ground scouts and combat patrols will invariably be thrown out.

The commander of each line is responsible for the maintenance of an adequate system of combat patrols.

Squadron commanders are also responsible to their line commanders that such patrols as have been ordered are despatched. The special duty of sending them out, regulating their strength, and giving them clear instructions, will fall on the captain, second in command of the squardron. In his absence this duty will be performed by the senior serrefile.

In addition to the several "Ideas" which have been previously laid down as forming an intelligent basis for instruction in manœuvre the squadron must be practised with the idea that it is acting on the flank of an attacking line in "Flank Attack" or "Flank Defence," and the squadron, the regiment, and the brigade must often be manœuvred on the supposition that the force is being employed as 1st, 2nd, or 3rd line of a larger body.

The order of march, before the enemy is reported, must depend entirely upon the ground passed over. It should be as suitable to marching with least fatigue to horses as is consistent with adequate control and power of concentration. The leader

must not be led away by preconceived ideas as to exposed or protected flanks. He must take every precaution for the safety of the march, and for gaining early information which will give them time to prepare for every possible situation that can arise.

The two fundamental principles of the tactics of lines are—(1) organisation in the direction of depth; this provides for mutual assistance from the rear, and concentrated energetic action on a decisive point, and equally prevents eccentric or divergent operations of the component parts, and the using up of the whole force at the same moment; (2) provision of a sufficiently strong line to ensure, or at any rate render possible, the defeat of the enemy by the first blow, thus leaving the other lines intact and free to meet further eventualities.

In the manœuvre of the cavalry division, when assisted by artillery, it must be borne in mind that in the second, or manœuvring, stage of the action the fire of the latter must not be masked.

In the practice of manœuvre, the enemy should, if possible, be represented by a skeleton force. When this is not the case, each movement should have a clearly defined purpose, which should be explained to all ranks.

In the manœuvre of cavalry against cavalry, every endeavour should be made from the outset to establish a moral superiority over the enemy, and to force him to conform to movements which have for their object to draw him into ground favourable to one's own troops. This superiority can only be looked for by a leader who is prompt in forming his decisions, has the power of taking a resolute initiative, and who commands troops who ride with the greatest determination, and are so highly trained as to enable them to give immediate and certain effect to his plans.

A cavalry action between forces of whatever strength will, as a rule, resolve itself into three distinct phases, viz.:—

(*a*) The reconnoitring or preparatory phase.
(*b*) The manœuvring phase.
(*c*) The attacking phase.

The distinction between these three phases must always be kept in view, and orders of formation and movement must be adapted to the particular phase of the action during which they are employed.

The limits within which each successive phase must be restricted will vary with the strength of the force engaged. Thus, in the case of the squadron the reconnoitring phase will continue to a much shorter distance from the enemy than would be safe for a brigade or division; and, similarly, the latter would be compelled to form for attack at a distance at which a single squadron might still continue to manœuvre.

The following paragraphs are intended to indicate the general line of thought which shall actuate a leader from the first appearance of the enemy to the moment of attack. It must be understood that no hard and fast rules can be laid down, and all that can be attempted by regulation is to impress upon the cavalry leader certain general principles, and to indicate the line of thought and study which, combined with practice, can alone fit an officer to command troops in the field.

The manœuvres of the larger bodies only (the brigade and division) are described in detail, those of the smaller units —the regiment and the squadron—are conducted on similar principles.

S. 26. *The Reconnoitring Phase.*

Assuming that the division is moving in a country adapted to cavalry action, and that the advanced guard reports the enemy in strength several miles in front, if the commander determines to engage him, his first duty will be to thoroughly reconnoitre the ground in his immediate front, and decide upon the actual area towards which he will manœuvre so as to bring about the fight there.

Positions should, if possible, be selected for the artillery and machine guns and mounted infantry which fulfil the following conditions :—

(1) They should command any ground within range which the enemy might be able to take up, whilst affording natural flank protection and cover.

(2) The ground on either, or at least on one flank of the position, should admit of the free deployment and unrestricted manœuvre of the cavalry, *e.g.*, ground of an open, undulating character, the isolated features (farms, copses, &c.) upon which do not hamper its movements.

Such features may also be used to screen the manœuvre of the rear lines, and they present rallying points which can be occupied with machine guns or mounted infantry to cover a retreat and check pursuit. The object of the leader in this phase of the action will be to ascertain his adversary's strength and dispositions, to divine his intentions, and if possible to place his own force within the limits of the manœuvring phase in a position and on ground which will be most favourable to him; as, for instance, where the undulations and features conceal without hampering his subsequent manœuvres. In order to do this, however, the enemy must be made to conform to his movements. It is, therefore, of the greatest importance that the commander should be able to read the ground at a glance, decide on his plans without hesitation, and move his command with the utmost promptitude.

The commander has next to consider upon which flank of the guns he will manœuvre so as to draw on the enemy. So many considerations having reference to the effectual co-operation of cavalry and artillery are dependent upon local conditions that it is impossible to lay down any rule ; it may be said generally however, that from a strategic point of view it is desirable to direct the attack so as to draw the enemy off his line of retreat or away from any important object or body of troops he may desire to cover or maintain communication with ; and from a tactical point of view the direction of the manœuvre and attack

should, if possible, cause him to mask his own artillery, and present the flank of his cavalry to the enfilade fire of the guns.

No absolute rule can be laid down as to the exact orders of formation to be adopted in this phase. They should be such as are most suitable for drawing the enemy on and concealing one's own force, while admitting of rapid and certain concentration. An échelon of three lines will generally be suitable, the 1st line preferably in line of squadron columns, each rear line moving in a concentrated but flexible order of formation, and taking every advantage of ground independently.

The movements, which should be as simple as possible, will consist principally of changes of position and advances by successive larger or smaller échelons.

As soon as its position is decided upon, the artillery will move rapidly towards it, but the guns will not unlimber until the mass of the enemy appears, or his position is ascertained, and the cavalry has commenced its manœuvres to draw the enemy into the required situation, the guns acting as pivot and support.

The commander, having determined on his general plan of attack, will decide the moment for entering the second phase according to the strength of the force engaged.

The same general principles apply to the manœuvre of the smaller units in this phase.

A regiment alone will probably be accompanied by a machine gun, and the relation between fire-power and shock tactics is much the same as in the case of the brigade and division.

As the numbers engaged decrease so does the value of manœuvre, till in the case of two single contending squadrons its influence will be in no degree proportionate to that of dash, energy, and *morale*. Nor must it ever be forgotten by cavalry commanders of any degree that these latter qualities, if absent, can never be compensated for by superior ability in the direction and execution of manœuvre.

S. 27. *The Manœuvring Phase.*

This phase will be entered upon in the attack order.

The 1st line and the guns must act in complete accord. The point towards which the commander wishes to draw the enemy should be clearly explained to the artillery commander, in order that he may ascertain the ranges in that direction, and be ready to take instant advantage of what can only be a very fleeting opportunity. The artillery must eagerly watch for this moment to reap its share of the advantage by pouring a steady fire into the enemy's flank.

The manœuvres of the cavalry should in general be directed outwards, *i.e.*, towards the flank further from the guns, threatening the enemy on that side so as to make him bring up his inward flank. He may then partially mask the fire of his own artillery and present his flank to the enfilade fire of our guns.

The first line will then further manœuvre to place itself in line, within attacking distance of the enemy, in such a position as will ensure a distinct advantage in the attack, which may consist in being able to strike the enemy more or less in flank, or may result from the ability to attack with superior force and effect owing to having better ground on which to work, or from having been able to adopt a more skilful order of formation in which to execute the attack.

Up to the last moment before the attack the division leader must be in continuous communication with the commander of the 1st line, so as to enable him to take instantaneous advantage of any mistake or false move on the enemy's part.

The commander having placed the 1st line within 500 yards or so of the enemy, will now commence the attack.

When this limit is reached line must be formed, no matter in what relative position the forces may be, and the attack must be delivered without a moment's delay.

The commander himself will fall back on a flank to superintend the movements of the 2nd line, and the commander of the 1st line will lead the attack.

Under ordinary circumstances the 2nd and 3rd lines will conform closely to the manœuvres of the 1st during this phase, keeping their proper distance from it. Their respective orders of formation must depend upon circumstances, the leaders being guided by what they judge, from the course of the action, will be their most probable *rôle* during the third or attacking phase.

The manœuvres of the smaller units are conducted on similar principles.

The regiment will, as a rule, enter the limits of this phase in line of squadron columns, the squadron on the more exposed flank being prepared to act as defensive or offensive flank, while that on the other flank, or part of it, may be held back in 2nd line.

Speaking generally, with units of whatever size, the main elements of success during this phase are skill in inducing the enemy to adopt a disadvantageous order of formation, superior manœuvring power, and greater speed, one endeavour leading to another until the decisive limits of the attack are reached, when line must be formed and the assault pushed home without a second's delay.

The advantage of attacking the enemy while he is advancing up an incline, or when his ranks are disordered by the nature of the ground passed over or other causes, must not be lost sight of, and this consideration may sometimes make it desirable to check rather than hurry one's advance.

The ground may possibly favour a special employment of one or two squadrons which may be able to move unseen round the enemy's flank and deliver an unexpected attack, while the 1st line engages him in front; but this employment of flank squadrons must be regarded as exceptional.

S. 28. *The Attacking Phase.*

This phase embraces the attack of the 1st line supported according to circumstances by the 2nd and 3rd.

1st Line.—Breaks into the enemy and endeavours to ride him down with the first onslaught.

It will often be necessary to direct squadrons in "Flank Attack" and "Flank Defence"; the commanders of those units acting on their own initiative. Thus, if the enemy is outflanked, the leader of the squadron on that flank will break off in flank attack, in order to bring his attack to bear on the hostile flank and rear.

If the enemy outflanks the 1st line he must be met by a corresponding flank defence.

2nd Line.—When the 1st line commences the actual attack the commander of the 2nd line (who must have maintained throughout its proper distance) will adopt that formation (squadron columns—échelon of regiments, or oblique half column) which he judges from the course of the action will best conduce to the time and place of his attack.

The leader of the 2nd line in a cavalry fight between forces of whatever strength has a most important *rôle* to fulfil which requires the exercise of the highest qualities of a cavalry leader. His duty is to watch closely the course of the attack and act *without an instant's delay* in the direction he sees support to be necessary or desirable. He must keep his force so near the 1st line during the delivery of the latter's attack as will ensure his being able to bring effective support to bear at the right time and place, but not so near as to risk being involved in the shock of the 1st line.

The 2nd line supports the 1st :—

(*a*) By assisting it if necessary in attacking the enemy's flank and rear with a portion of its force.

(*b*) By opposing with the other portion the 2nd line of the enemy.

(*c*) By receiving and disengaging the repulsed 1st line.

Action of the 3rd Line.—The 3rd line has for its object to bring about the decision of the fight, if the 1st and 2nd lines are found to be unequal to the task. It forms the last reserve of the division, and remains always at the special disposal of the divisional commander. If one of the flanks of the division is protected by some natural obstacle or by other troops, the 3rd line may be placed in rear of the interval between the 1st and 2nd lines, or even in échelon on the same flank as the 2nd line. It should, as a rule, retain its normal distance from the 1st line until the attack is completed. When the whole of the 2nd line becomes engaged it will open out into line of squadron columns, close up to about half its usual distance from the 1st line, and be ready to take such part in the engagement as the divisional commander may direct. It must not be employed prematurely, and should never be entirely engaged, but a portion should, as long as possible, be kept in hand to meet eventualities, the last squadrons being used only when their action is likely to be decisive. The commander of the 3rd line must hold himself in uninterrupted communication with the divisional commander.

Only in case of pressing emergency should the leader of the 3rd line employ any part of his force in the action without the orders of the divisional commander. If, while in its normal position in mass, the 3rd line is suddenly threatened from the flank or half-front, the squadron on the exposed flank can form line to a flank or to the half-front. The other regiment will act according to circumstances, a portion endeavouring to threaten the opposing force in flank.

The attack of units smaller than the brigade is to be conducted on the same general principles.

Commanders of squadrons kept in support and reserve must keep steadily in mind that their *paramount* duty is to further the attack of the 1st line. They must subordinate their own and their men's desire for distinction to this object alone.

S. 29. *The Pursuit.*

If the enemy is repulsed after the shock and *mêlée* with the 1st line, the success must be completed by a vigorous pursuit carried out by all the squadrons that have been engaged in the hand-to-hand fight, except the squadron of direction of each regiment, which will rally and follow in support.

If the enemy retires without accepting the charge, a certain number of squadrons should be told off to follow him up, and if possible force an engagement, the remainder following up the pursuing squadrons as a compact support.

The pursuit must be carried out as far as can be done with safety, and no opportunity must be allowed the enemy to re-form.

The 3rd line will act as a general reserve to the whole.

When it is desired to discontinue the pursuit, the "Retire" and "Rally" must be sounded. The squadrons extended in pursuit will first rapidly clear the front of those bodies which are supporting them, and will rally while hastening to the rear, and be led round the nearest flank and fronted; they will then be able to act as a support should the appearance of the enemy's reserves render it necessary to renew the attack.

The guns having kept up an unceasing fire on the enemy up to the last moment compatible with the safety of their own cavalry, the batteries will advance as rapidly as possible so as to complete the victory, following up the beaten enemy with their fire, and also firing upon any troops that may come up to his support.

S. 30. *The Retreat.*

It may be assumed that the retreat will not be decided upon until the 1st and 2nd lines are engaged in the *mêlée* and the 3rd line has assumed the duties of the 2nd. As soon as the

general commanding recognises the impossibility of maintaining the conflict, and determines to retire, he will, if in any way possible, send notice of his intention to the officer commanding the artillery; if this, however, is impracticable, the latter will act according to his judgment and cover the retreat of the cavalry in accordance with the general principles laid down for the guidance of horse artillery (*see* "Field Artillery Drill").

The retreat of the troops engaged in the *mêlée* must be conducted in as orderly a manner as possible, and the utmost endeavours must be made to conduct the troops direct to the rear until they have passed the rear lines advancing to their support. In any case, they must be led in such a direction as will prevent their masking the fire of the artillery, and will enable them to be rallied under its cover.

The exact manner in which the 3rd line should act cannot be defined. Its commander, acting under the orders of the divisional general, must closely watch his opportunity to attack the pursuing enemy in flank, and will, if possible, endeavour to facilitate the task of the artillery by making short charges.

S. 31. *Horse Artillery with Cavalry.*

For detailed instructions to horse artillery when working with cavalry *see* "Field Artillery Drill." Cavalry officers must be in possession of this book, and are expected to study carefully, not only Sec. 12, but the whole of Chapter IV, in order to arrive at a practical knowledge of the working of artillery in the field.

S. 32. Machine Guns with Cavalry.

The action of machine guns will be guided by different general principles from those which apply to the horse artillery battery. Machine guns take up little space, and when in position present but small obstacles to the movements of the cavalry with which they are acting. Their range, when compared with that of artillery, is limited, but they have this special advantage; they can be traversed when firing, and can thus sweep the whole front of an opposing line with a continuous, rapid, and deadly fire. They should, therefore, take up a position as near as safety will permit to the front or flank of the enemy, from which an effective fire can be maintained; and, in all cases, positions should be chosen for them which the enemy's cavalry could only reach with difficulty.

Machine guns are to be looked upon as primarily weapons of offence, the employment of which should, if possible, be immediately followed up by the attack of the cavalry; on outposts and other detached services, however, as well as for the purpose of temporarily holding a position which may have been gained by the cavalry, for the protection of cantonments and bivouacs, and during a retreat their defensive action will frequently be of the greatest assistance to the cavalry.

It is not generally advisable that machine guns should open fire on individuals, or even on small groups of men, lest their position should be prematurely indicated. As a rule, their fire should be reserved for bodies of not less than a troop.

The officers in immediate charge of the guns will always be guided by the general instructions received from the officer commanding the division, brigade, or other force to which they are attached; a wide latitude as to movements and the choice of positions must, however, at all times, be conceded to them.

In the fight of the cavalry during the preparation for the attack, machine guns should be pushed rapidly forward to as

good a position as possible, and should continue their fire until the squadrons of the first line pass them in the attack.

Machine guns must act in strict subordination to the movements of the cavalry; and, as their value consists in the assistance which they can give to those movements, they should not, except under peculiar circumstances, have any special escort. Positions should not be taken up by them in which they are likely to be exposed to sudden attack unsheltered by the force to which they are attached.

When machine guns are thus acting in front of the cavalry, squadron commanders will break off files so as to pass the guns.

Should the cavalry by its operations take up a position which it is important to hold, the guns must be at once pushed forward to it. Their fire will go far to make up for any want of infantry, and obviate the necessity of dismounting any large portion of cavalry, leaving it free for an immediate advance.

If the fight of the cavalry has been successful, and the enemy is obliged to give way, the machine guns should at once be pushed forward, and be ready to support the pursuit, or to join in further operations by firing on any forward body which seems prepared to offer resistance.

Not only in the attack of cavalry, but in cases in which the cavalry is able to threaten the flank of infantry, the material effect of machine guns, and especially the moral impression produced by the unlooked for opening of their fire, may be expected to bring about situations in the highest degree favourable for the immediate action of the cavalry.

If machine guns are properly handled in well-selected positions, it should be very difficult for any pursuing cavalry to push home its success without severe loss. Under shelter of their fire, too, time may be gained for the arrival of reserves or for the reconsolidation of broken squadrons.

They should keep near the rear of the cavalry in its retrograde movement, and seize every opportunity of coming into action.

In a retreat through a defile, or through intersected country

with few passages, machine guns can render the most essential service. In an intersected country, all obstacles to the enemy's advance will give opportunities for their effective action. In a retreat past or through a village, or by a bridge, mountain pass, or other defile, the circumstances of the moment must decide whether the machine guns should pass first, with a view to coming into action beyond, or should remain in action as long as possible at the entrance of the defile, &c., only following the brigade when the latter has cleared the passage. A machine gun, with its light equipment, can always fall back so rapidly that it will generally be better to leave it in action as long as possible at the entrance to a defile, until its preservation makes retreat an absolute necessity.

When seizing a position, detached forces of cavalry pushed forward should be accompanied by machine guns and mounted infantry. If the position is already occupied by an enemy who has to be driven from it, the fire of machine guns and mounted infantry will materially supplement the carbine fire of the dismounted men. If the position is unoccupied, and has only to be secured with a view to defence, the machine guns will be so placed as to command the probable line of advance of an enemy's force. In both cases a great increase to the power of the cavalry is placed in the hands of the cavalry commander. The accuracy and volume of machine gun fire will largely save the employment of dismounted cavalry for both attack and defences and the cavalry commander can thus keep all his men mounted, ready, when the favourable moment comes, either to attack or deliver a counterblow on a threatening enemy.

S. 33. *Mounted Infantry.*

See "Regulations for Mounted Infantry."

In the cavalry fight the mounted infantry will generally accompany the artillery. At the shorter ranges their fire will

supplement that of the guns, whilst they will also serve as an efficient escort to them.

Both in pursuit and retreat the mounted infantry, when skilfully handled, will form a valuable auxiliary to the cavalry.

It is, however, when cavalry is called upon to operate in a close country (like most parts of England) that mounted infantry will prove of the greatest use.

In such country the mounted action of cavalry will be confined to conflicts between any small bodies (the strength of a squadron on either side) which may endeavour to make sudden dashes at one another down roads or across country.

So far as the action of the larger bodies is concerned in such a country, its principles are identical with those which govern the action of mounted infantry; on which occasions, owing to the possession by the latter of a superior firearm and their better training as foot soldiers, they will form a valuable nucleus or rallying point for the fire action dismounted, to which cavalry will probably be compelled to resort in order to oppose the hostile cavalry, or support its reconnaissances.

S. 34. *The Cavalry Attack on Infantry.*

Infantry can be attacked with the greatest chance of success under the following circumstances:—

(*a*) When it has already become weakened, physically or morally; as, for instance, by the fire action of opposing infantry or artillery, or by the strain of a long-continued fire-combat.

(*b*) When, from the conformation of the ground, or from misty atmosphere, &c., the cavalry is able to approach to within a short distance unperceived, and can thus take it by surprise.

(*c*) When the infantry has expended its ammunition.

The attack on intact infantry, well supplied with ammunition, will almost inevitably be accompanied with heavy losses, but under certain circumstances these may be more than compensated by the advantages which such action may gain, especially for the other arms.

The occasions on which cavalry will be employed to attack infantry, will usually be :—

(*a*) To assist in the final stages of the attack of its own infantry, by falling on the enemy's supports or reserves as they are being pushed forward to strengthen the 1st line, and generally to prevent the enemy from bringing up his whole force to resist the decisive attack of the infantry.

(*b*) In the defence, to stop, or, at any rate, to delay, the advance of the enemy's infantry under the most effective fire of its own infantry or artillery, by threatening to attack it, and especially with the object of causing it to close, so as to form a better target for fire.

(*c*) In the pursuit of the enemy, to increase his disorder.

(*d*) In case of a reverse, to delay the advance of the enemy, and so facilitate the retreat of its own infantry.

In carrying out these objects, every care must be taken not to mask the fire of its own infantry and artillery.

The order to be adopted will depend mainly upon that of the enemy ; thus, if the latter be in extended order, or much demoralised by the fire of our infantry or from any other cause, the attack may be made in extended order ; but in the case of compact and unshaken infantry, an attack at close files is desirable (the preliminary advance being in more or less extended order if the ground be open). In the latter case, the advantage of successive lines may be secured by an attack in succession of regiments, wings or squadrons in convergent directions, at distances of 150 to 200 yards apart. An attack in double échelon of squadrons may also be employed.

Every advantage must be taken of the ground and other circumstances, in order, if possible to fall on the enemy by

surprise. If the ground does not admit of an approach without exposure to fire, the gallop must be commenced at a considerable distance, *e.g.*, 1,000 yards or more, and the pace increased as much as the nature of the ground and the power of the horses permit, but the command "Charge" is not necessary.

The effect of the fire of a body of infantry is always much greater towards its left flank than towards its right. If, therefore, a choice is afforded, the right flank of an infantry formation should be selected for attack.

Infantry are always apt to fire high, and, therefore, advancing up a slight incline is rather an advantage. The main conditions for a successful attack are rapidity and determination.

S. 35. *The Cavalry Attack on Artillery.*

The commanding officer must determine, according to circumstances, how the squadrons shall be distributed for the attack of the guns and escort, and whether it is practicable to retain a support.

The attack on the guns must always be made in extended order; that on the escort, if it be cavalry, will be made in close order: the extent of the position occupied by the guns will decide whether one or more squadrons must be extended for their attack. The distance at which the extension is to take place will depend upon the conditions under which the advance has to be made; thus, if the ground lends itself to an approach in compact formation under cover from view and fire, the extension may be deferred until within a very short distance from the guns, and there effected under cover, possibly at the halt; if, on the other hand, the intervening ground affords no cover, the extension must be made and the gallop commenced at a considerable distance from the position.

The force destined for the attack of the escort will usually follow at 150 or 200 yards' distance and at wide intervals.

The supporting force, whose principal object is to check the attempts of neighbouring troops to disengage the guns, will follow at a similar distance.

The direction to be taken by each attacking body will depend on the facilities afforded by the ground and on the disposition of the enemy, but it will be advantageous if their approach can be made from different directions, and, if it is necessarily made under fire, they should avoid following each other directly.

The troops extended for the attack on the guns, when once committed to the attack, must advance at a rapid gallop.

The men must be trained to bring forward the flanks as they approach the guns, on the signal of their leaders, so as to make an enveloping attack at full gallop, the flanks and rear of the battery, &c., being especially aimed at. They are to be instructed not to close so much together as to present a compact object to the fire of the guns, or to be unable to use their weapons freely when they reach the men serving the guns, while, if possible, they should also interpose between the limbers and the guns.

In the case of small bodies it may be advisable to form single rank before closing on the guns, the rear rank men moving up on the left of their front rank men.

If the advance by extended files against artillery or infantry is made with the object of merely threatening the former and causing it to limber up and move to other ground, or of inducing the latter to adopt a close formation, the squadron commander will give the command "About" when the object has been attained. Troop leaders and men will act as directed for the retirement after the Break up, and the Rally will not, as a rule, be ordered until the squadron is out of reach of fire.

DISMOUNTED SERVICE.

S. 36. *General Remarks.*

The cases in which cavalry are most frequently employed dismounted are :—

(*a*) To hold localities until the arrival of the infantry.

(*b*) To force a defile blocking the advance which cannot be turned, or to turn which would occupy too much time.

(*c*) To offer resistance during a retreat sufficient to compel the enemy to deploy, or at any rate to necessitate his making a reconnaissance ; thus, in either case, gaining time.

(*d*) To support defeated cavalry, or retiring reconnoitring parties, by covering their retreat through a defile, or by taking advantage of any other suitable position for bringing fire to bear unexpectedly on pursuing cavalry.

(*e*) To check cavalry or artillery at points, such as bridges or fords, which the enemy cannot cross without delay and exposure.

(*f*) To defend cantonments, camps, bivouacs, and occupied posts.

In addition to these cases, dismounted fire action may sometimes be employed with effect to create alarm or deceive the enemy as to the presence of infantry ; the mounted attack upon artillery in position may sometimes be supported by the fire of dismounted men who may have been able to creep up under cover within short range of the gunners ; and lastly, the whole

or part of the escort of guns, if the ground within a short distance of the position is unsuited for the mounted action of cavalry, may be able to render valuable assistance with their carbines in case of an attack by cavalry.

The following general rules are always to be borne in mind :—

(*a*) Cavalry, whenever possible, should dismount for fire-action in a spot hidden from the fire and view of the enemy :

(*b*) The men are never to be dismounted in any position where mounted opposing cavalry could attack them before they can remount to meet the attack :

(*c*) The nearer the dismounted men are to their led horses while firing the better ; as they can allow the enemy to approach within easy range, being able to mount and move off rapidly :

(*d*) The led horses and the mounted escort should not be in a direct line in rear of the dismounted men, unless there is sufficient cover to protect them from the fire that will probably be returned against the latter.

S. 37. *Manœuvre Exercises Dismounted.*

The attack and defence of localities under suitable ideas representing some warlike situation should be constantly practised by squadrons and regiments. The ground should be varied as far as possible, and in the case of a defensive position it should be pointed out by what improvised means its capabilities for defence could be added to.

Retreats from given positions will also be practised, and finally, two sides, the one defending and the other attacking, should be opposed to each other.

In the practice of such manœuvres the following principles are to be observed—

The normal division on this service is as follows :—

(*a*) The dismounted men.
(*b*) The led horses.
(*c*) The mounted escort.

It cannot be too strongly impressed on all ranks that accurate shooting is what is required on dismounted service, and that a rapid and useless consumption of ammunition is on every account to be avoided ; firing at long ranges is consequently undesirable. As a general rule, fire against skirmishers under cover is useless over 300 or 350 yards ; against a larger target, however, fire may be opened at from 600 to 800 yards. Just before the final rush in an attack, independent firing may be allowed ; but in all other cases the number of rounds or volleys is to be indicated.

Volleys are generally to be fired by troops, but with troops of 16 files they may sometimes be by half-troops.

If at the commencement of the dismounted action the dispositions of the enemy are not quite clear, or the ground to be passed over cannot be overlooked, a portion of the dismounted men may be formed as a support under the command of a troop leader or the senior section leader. The support, taking all possible advantage of ground to obtain cover from the enemy's fire, conforms to the movements of the firing line, keeping close enough to afford immediate assistance. When the situation becomes clearer it can be employed to strengthen the firing line at important points, to extend it to a flank, or to carry out a flank attack.

Attack.—The firing line, taking advantage of all cover, must endeavour to approach the enemy's position as quickly as possible, and fire is not to be opened until it gets sufficiently close for effective shooting. In all cases a flank attack should, if possible, be combined with a frontal one.

Supposing the attack has to be made over ground affording

little or no cover, it is best to carry it out by a succession of as long rushes as possible, the men lying down to fire, and then, after a short pause, again moving forward.

When the firing line has succeeded in getting close up to the enemy's position, and its fire has apparently produced its full effect, the charge is to be sounded and the final rush made, the commander leading. If the attack succeeds, the far side of the locality must at once be occupied, and the retreating enemy pursued by volleys.

As a rule, the dismounted *rôle* now ceases, and the mounted or normal action of cavalry is again resumed.

Defence.—Although every advantage should be taken of cover against the enemy's fire, this must be subordinate to the main point, viz., bringing an effective fire to bear on the attack.

It is useless attempting to occupy several successive lines of defence: one line, the best possible, should be selected and occupied as strongly as possible, as soon as the direction of the hostile advance is clear. The best line will, as a rule, be on the outer edge of the locality, viz., the edge nearest the enemy.

In the first instance a support must be formed and placed close to the 1st line, and in rear of that part of it against which the enemy's attack will probably be directed. As soon as the attack is developed the support joins the 1st line.

If practicable, obstacles to the enemy's advance and protection for the shooting line should be improvised. In cantonments such precautions must always be adopted, whether the enemy is in the immediate vicinity or no.

Retreats.—If the dismounted men have to retire, the movement must be carried out as quickly as is compatible with keeping them in hand. Once decided on, a retreat should be carried out vigorously, calmly, and without hesitation. Successive retirements will rarely be possible.

Led Horses.—The horses are to be placed as much as possible under cover from fire and view; in open ground, when opposed to civilised troops, they may often have to be as much as 500 or 600 yards from the firing line; but when completely covered

from fire, and when opposed to uncivilised troops with inferior arms, they can be brought up quite close to the firing line. If exposed to artillery fire, the position must be frequently changed.

The led horses will be placed under the command of the captain second in command of the squadron. In his absence *an officer* should be detailed for this duty. The commander must place himself so as to be able to watch the progress of the action, and yet superintend his command. With the led horses he follows the dismounted men, keeping as far as possible under cover, and brings them up quickly when required, selecting a spot sheltered from the enemy's fire for the men to mount; in all cases he takes the led horses to meet the dismounted men whenever the "Mount" is sounded. He is responsible for keeping the commander of the dismounted men informed where he will find the led horses, and for this purpose should always have at least one mounted man at his disposal. When the dismounted men approach the squadron, the latter being in line, he will order the front rank to move up an additional horse's length from the rear rank, and, if possible, will passage the troops slightly so as to leave openings between them.

If the whole squadron should, as an exceptional case, be employed dismounted, as, for instance, when acting alone, a few men must be left mounted, in addition to the horse-holders, to keep a look-out to the flanks, and to maintain communication between the led horses and the dismounted men.

Mounted Escort.—The number of men to be dismounted will, of course, depend mainly on the object in view; as a general rule, however, squadrons should be kept mounted equal in number to those furnishing the dismounted men, and in the case of a single squadron at least one troop should remain mounted.

The escort should, as a rule, take up a position on the flank of the led horses, so as to be able to act offensively if required, and should not be placed directly in front or rear of them.

The duties of the mounted escort are :—

(*a*) To protect the men when dismounting and mounting, and ensure the safety of the led horses.

(*b*) To maintain constant observation of the enemy by means of combat patrols, and especially to watch the flanks and rear.

(*c*) To watch the progress of the action, so as to be able to act offensively on an opportunity occurring.

PART V.—MISCELLANEOUS.

MISCELLANEOUS DUTIES AND SQUADRON TRAINING.

S. 1. **Duties in Aid of the Civil Power.*

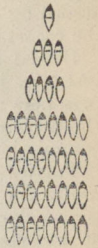
There are no duties on which cavalry can be employed which require more tact, decision, and good temper, than when it is called out in aid of the civil power.

It would be impossible to lay down detailed rules for guidance in all the various circumstances under which cavalry might be employed to assist the civil power, but the following general principles should be borne in mind.

It is comparatively easy to prevent a crowd from assembling in any open space, but very difficult to disperse it without injury when once it has assembled. To prevent a crowd from assembling, cavalry must be kept on the move. The best formation in streets will usually be fours or sections, and the pace should generally be the walk. If, however, the crowd become troublesome, the pace should be increased to a steady trot, care being taken that the men ride close and do not open out. On no account should any one be allowed to get between the files.

* See also "The Queen's Regulations and Orders for the Army."

If by any chance a crowd has assembled and it is necessary to disperse it, the following formation will be found suitable for penetrating it and so setting it in motion. The troop or squadron being in fours, the leading fours advance by sections in front of the centre of the column, the right (or left) hand man of the leading front rank section placing himself in front of the third file from the right (or left). The head of the column thus forms a kind of wedge.



Swords should always be drawn, but if temporarily returned they should be secured by tucking the sword knot under the waist belt or passing the loop of the knot over the bridle hand, or in some other way. Lances should be kept at the *Carry*.

It is very undesirable to cloak the men, but, if compelled to do so owing to the severity of the weather, cloaks should be taken off, and left in a cart, shop, or some safe place, as soon as the party is likely to be surrounded by a crowd.

S. 2. *Escorts for Convoys (Stores, Baggage, Ammunition, Prisoners, &c.).*

Escorts for stores, baggage, ammunition, prisoners, &c., should generally be formed up in single rank, and told off from the flank from which they are to move off on the same principles as described for an advanced guard. The strength of such escorts must always depend upon the length of the train to be escorted, and the circumstances of the occasion. The following instructions are, therefore, only intended as a general guide for the distribution of the different parties of such escorts; and the officer in command must always make his arrangements so as best to suit the circumstances of the moment.

All such escorts must invariably be preceded by an advanced and followed by a rear guard, the strength of which will vary according to circumstances and the number of men employed on the escort.

Unless it is necessary to take special precautions, as for instance, if an attack on the convoy or an attempt to rescue prisoners is to be apprehended, it will generally be sufficient that the advanced and rear guard should each consist of one non-commissioned officer and two men.

Parties of two or four men each immediately precede and follow the main column of wagons or carriages. Every wagon is also flanked by a man riding on each side of it. In the case of escorts for prisoners (and also in the case of escorts for ammunition, stores, &c., when an attack is apprehended), each wagon in the column should be preceded and followed by at least two men, and the number of men flanking each wagon should be increased to four or six as may be necessary. If it is considered necessary to send out flanking patrols in order to watch the flanks of the column, they will be taken from the advanced and rear guards, so as to leave the main body of the escort intact. The position of the officer in command of the escort is where he can best superintend the movements of the whole body.

The above-named escorts move usually in files or sections. They must always conform to the pace at which the column to be escorted is proceeding, this pace being regulated by the officer in charge of the transport. Wagons conveying gunpowder or ammunition should never move at a more rapid pace than a walk. Ammunition columns should never halt in towns or in the vicinity of fires, and the escort should not under any circumstances be allowed to smoke.

Escorts accompanying prisoners or ammunition always march at *Attention* with drawn swords. Escorts accompanying baggage or other stores may be permitted to march at ease at the discretion of the officer in command.

In ordinary marches, the baggage guard is often composed of the dismounted men accompanying a regiment. In such cases

the men are dressed in frocks, full headdress, belts complete, with high-lows and overalls turned up, and carry carbines, but not swords or lances. Their cloaks, valises, and swords or lances are carried in the baggage wagons. The officer in command of the baggage guard must be mounted, and accompanied by a mounted sergeant or corporal to assist him in his duties.

A dismounted baggage guard, if sufficiently strong, is formed as follows :—

(*a*) A section immediately in front of the leading wagon of the column.

(*b*) Two men per wagon, one on each side, to give assistance when required to the wagons, apply the skid, scotch the wheels when halted on an incline, &c. These men must not place their carbines on the wagons, or hang on to the wagons in any way. During a long march they should be relieved from time to time.

(*c*) The remainder in sections, under a non-commissioned officer, immediately in rear of the last wagon.

When the baggage of several regiments is marching together in a general column, the baggage guard of each regiment will be formed as above, and the men of the baggage guards are to remain constantly with the wagons of their respective regiments. No men are to fall out without the permission of the officer commanding the baggage guard, and a non-commissioned officer must be left behind with any man who obtains permission to fall out. Any men found absent from their proper posts are to be at once made prisoners. Either the officer in command of the baggage guard, or the mounted non-commissioned officer accompanying him, should remain in rear of the column to see that the men do not straggle or fall out without leave.

Officers in command of baggage guards or of escorts to convoys must enforce strict discipline and an exact compliance with all orders relative to the march of the column ; irregularities in connexion with the march of a baggage train may cause delays

which will occasion the most serious inconvenience to the troops. Officers employed on such duties should invariably have with them a copy of all orders relating to the march of the column, the route to be followed, &c.

When the transport of a cavalry regiment is carried out regimentally, the officer in command of the regimental baggage guard will be responsible for the thorough efficiency of his transport train in every respect. He must at all times maintain a supervision over the driving of the teams, and at every halt must make a minute inspection of the horses, harness, and wagons, paying particular attention to the shoeing of the horses, the soundness of the breeching, and the state of the wheels and skids of the wagons.

When a system of regimental transport is employed, a farrier, an assistant saddler, an assistant saddle-tree maker, and if practicable, an artificer trained as a wheeler (all mounted) must on all occasions march with the baggage train of the regiment, in case of accidents to the horses, harness, or wagons; and any necessary repairs must be at once executed by these artificers.

All the mounted non-commissioned officers and men accompanying the baggage train should be equipped with breast harness, in order to assist the wagons in difficult ground; and two pairs of spare horses with lead harness should also accompany the regimental baggage train.

Before the train marches off, the wagons should always, if space permits, be parked in line, and not be formed in column of route until the order for the march is given. The wagons are to be formed up at close interval, with a space of one yard from wheel to wheel. All wagons when so formed up must be drawn up square with the front of the line, and the traces of the lead horses must be stretched tight. The baggage guard is to be drawn up in rear of the line of wagons, until the order to march off is given, when the men take their places in column of route.

The distance to be preserved on the march between the rear of one wagon and the horses' heads of the next is four yards.

The wagons should not move at a faster pace than a walk, except in very urgent cases.

The drivers of regimental transport wear full headdress, frocks, and sword belts (without swords), but do not carry pouch-belts or arms.

When marching in a general column, it is most important that the cavalry baggage should invariably march in advance of that of all infantry regiments. The men of mounted services have so many more duties to perform than infantry on first arrival in camp, such as picketing and grooming horses, drawing forage, &c., that no delay further than is absolutely necessary should be allowed to occur in their receiving their camp equipment.

Further instructions as to canteen carts, private vehicles, sutlers, &c., accompanying baggage columns, are given in the "Regulations and Instructions for Encampments and Cantonments."

S. 3. *Duties on the Line of March.*

General instructions regarding duties on the line of march are contained in the "Queen's Regulations and Orders for the Army." The instructions here given refer more particularly to the special duties of cavalry, and apply only to ordinary marches at home in time of peace, without entering into the precautions which should be taken when marching as in the presence of an enemy.

In the case of ordinary marches at home, unless under exceptional circumstances or in very hot weather, it is not advisable that cavalry should march at a very early hour. It is always desirable that time should be given for the men to breakfast, and for the horses to have a small feed before starting.

All parties of cavalry should invariably march off at

Attention, with drawn swords or carried lances. The commanding officer will afterwards use his discretion in allowing the party to return swords (or sling lances) and march at ease; but before arrival at the destination, and always in passing through towns, the party must be called to attention, and swords must be drawn. Advanced and rear guards are always to be formed, of a strength proportionate to the strength of the party.

The ordinary length of a day's march for cavalry may be reckoned at from 15 to 20 miles, but on active service, or even in cases of emergency in time of peace, this distance may often have to be considerably increased. It is desirable in general that the distance should be traversed at a tolerably rapid pace, so far as is consistent with the endurance and efficiency of the horses. Too slow a pace is to be avoided, as the length of time during which the weight is on the horse's back is a severe trial to him; in addition to which the men, when marching slowly, are liable to get tired and lounge in their saddles, which occasions sore backs. Provided the pace is not unduly hurried, the more quickly a march is completed, under ordinary circumstances, the better it will be both for man and horse. In general it may be calculated that cavalry should march at the rate of about five miles an hour, including halts. In order to do this, a steady trot of about seven to eight miles an hour should generally be maintained, with an occasional walk. The men should occasionally be dismounted and made to walk on foot, leading their horses for short distances; this measure should always be adopted in ascending or descending steep hills. The practice of occasionally dismounting is a relief both to the men and the horses.

On the commencement of the march, after marching about one and a half or two miles, a halt should be made, when the men should be dismounted for five or ten minutes, and should be ordered to examine the fittings of their saddlery, tighten the girths, and look to their horses' feet. Similar halts should be made from time to time at distances of from four to five

miles, for the purpose of allowing the men to fall out and of examining the state of the saddlery, the horses' feet, &c. In the case of a more than ordinarily long march, a halt of an hour should be made at one-half or two-thirds of the way, and the horses given a few mouthfuls of hay or grass and a little water. Frequent watering in small quantities at a time when the horses are cool will greatly assist them in the performance of severe marches.

The officers must constantly pay the greatest attention to the riding of the men. Although the soldiers are to be allowed to ride at ease on the march, they must be required to keep a proper seat on their horses, and to avoid lounging in their saddles.

No man on the line of march is to be allowed to fall out or remain behind without permission from an officer. When, for any necessary purpose, a man has to fall out, a non-commissioned officer must be left with him to bring him up.

When two regiments or armed parties meet on the march, they are to be called to attention, and pass each other with drawn and carried swords, or carried lances.

Cavalry on the line of march will, as a rule, march in files and observe the rule of the road, riding on bridoon reins and rising in their stirrups. In dusty and hot weather the files may be opened out to each side of the road, keeping the centre of the road clear, but care must be taken not to interfere with the traffic. When crossing open country column of troops will be formed and files opened or extended.

It is very important, more especially in the case of a long column, to prevent the rear of the column being affected by momentary stoppages which may take place in front. Irregular checks in the rear of a column, and sudden increases of pace to make up lost distance, are fatiguing to both men and horses, and are very liable to occasion sore backs. To avoid this, certain definite distances (10 or 20 yards between squadrons or even troops) should be preserved between the different bodies of the column, whenever the tactical conditions admit of it, so that each

may be able to maintain a steady pace without being affected by small stoppages in front.

The distances to be kept between the units of a large force on the line of march must be regulated according to circumstances. If distance has been lost upon the march, each regiment, on the halt being sounded, must close up to its proper distance from the one in front, before halting and dismounting.

When a brigade is on the march, the place where the brigadier will be found during the march should always be announced in the orders for the march.

When a brigade is on a march for several days, the order of regiments in the columns should in general be changed every day; the regiment which is at the head of the column one day should be in rear the next, and *vice versâ*, so that the advanced and rear guard duties may be shared equally by all regiments alike. The same principle should be adopted in the march of a single regiment or detachment, the squadron or troop at the head of the column being changed each day.

Whenever it is possible, cavalry and horse artillery should march by a different road from the infantry of the force to which they belong, as it is most fatiguing for horses to march at the slow rate they are compelled to maintain in order to keep pace with men on foot. If separate roads are not available, and the whole force is compelled to march by one road, long distances should be left between the infantry and the cavalry, and the latter, with the exception only of such advanced parties as may be required to cover the march of the infantry, should be allowed to start at a much later hour than is usually necessary for infantry marches.

The last two miles or so of a day's march should always be traversed at a walk, so as to bring the horses in cool. If a watering place is available on the road, the horses should be watered a mile or two from their destination.

The time at which the saddles are to be taken off should be announced, and an alarm-post fixed by the officer in command

of the party before the men are dismissed to their billets. No officer should leave the parade until the men are told off to their billets and the alarm-post notified. The saddles or numnahs should not, in general, be removed for at least an hour after the end of the march; and this interval of time must be increased if the horses are very hot. The saddles are not to be taken off until the men are ready to dress the horses.

The troop officers must visit the whole of the stables in which their horses are billeted. Troop and squad parades will be arranged by troop officers.

All cavalry officers should have sufficient acquaintance with the management of horses to be able to treat ordinary cases of sore backs or other simple ailments on their own responsibility. If a swelling or heat is noticed on a horse's back and no skin is broken, the most simple remedy to adopt is to put over it a cloth wetted with salt and water, the cloth being kept on with the surcingle and a pad of straw. The mixture should not be made too strong in salt. If the skin is broken, cold water only should be used. In bad cases of sore backs veterinary advice should, if possible, be obtained.

Numnahs should be beaten lightly and dried. When the weather is unfavourable for drying them out of doors, they should be taken to the men's rooms and dried by fires, care being taken that they are placed at some distance from the fire and dried gradually.

Under all circumstances, when on the march, the swords and fire-arms should be removed from the stables and taken with the men to their rooms. When marching in disturbed districts in aid of the civil power, the bridles should be taken from the stables and kept in the personal charge of the men.

When a detachment halts for a day on the line of march, there should always be an inspection of the horses in watering order, as well as a careful inspection of the saddlery, under the personal superintendence of the commanding officer.

Although a regiment or detachment may remain for only one night in a quarter, an alarm-post or place of assembly is invariably to be established in some central position, at which the troops are to assemble in case of being suddenly called out, and the non-commissioned officers and men are to be made acquainted with it. The alarm-post will, in general, be the same place as that at which the troops are billeted off before dismissal to their billets

A billeting party, consisting of a non-commissioned officer and one private from each squadron or troop, should always precede the detachment (when practicable by one day's march), in order to make arrangements with the billet master at each halting place for the billeting of the party. They should take with them the general route under which the party marches. The arrangements for the billeting of the party must always be carried out in accordance with the provisions of the Army Discipline Act. Each squadron or troop should be billeted together, so that men of different squadrons may not be mixed up with each other in the billets, and the men should be billeted as near their horses as possible. The billeting non-commissioned officer must warn the proprietors of stables in which horses are billeted to be prepared to issue the necessary quantities of forage on the arrival of the troops. All payments for billets are to be defrayed before the departure of the party, or every four days if the party remains in a quarter longer than that period.

S. 4. *Transport of Cavalry by Railway.*

Detailed instructions for the movement of cavalry by railway are given in "The Queen's Regulations and Orders for the Army," and the following words of command are intended to afford a general idea of the system of drill which should be adopted in carrying out the operations therein described. The

actual details must, of course, vary according to circumstances, such as the size of the station, the position of the train with reference to the platform from which the embarkation is made, &c. ; but in all cases it is essential that the operation should be carried out systematically, and that each separate step should be conducted under the direction of, and by distinct words of command from, the commanding officer.

The detachment having been formed up, if possible, in single rank on the platform facing the train, the words of command are given :—

"*From the right, Tell off by sixes*" (or by some other number according to the number of horses to be conveyed in each truck).

"*Flanks of sixes, Proof.*" "*As you were.*"

"*With carbines, prepare to dismount.*"

"*Dismount.*"

"*Even numbers, Dress up.*"

"*Even numbers, Lay down arms.*" The odd numbers hold the horses, while the even numbers deposit their carbines (or lances), swords, headdresses, and gloves (or gauntlets) in rear of the horses, or other selected spot, in the order in which they stand in the ranks, and put on their caps, after which they move up to their horses' heads.

"*Odd numbers, Lay down arms.*" The even numbers hold the horses, while the odd numbers deposit their arms, &c., as above directed for the even numbers.

"*Cross stirrups*"

"*Slacken breastplates* (*and cruppers*)." { (If considered necessary on long journeys.

"*From the right, Number off sections.*" The right-hand man of each section of six will tell off the number of his section according to the position it holds in the line.

"*Sections, Form in front of your respective trucks.*" Each section will form up facing the truck marked with the number which the section bears, as previously told off.

"*Lead in horses; Quick—March.*" No. 1 of each section immediately leads his horse into the truck, followed by No. 6, and so on, from flanks to centre.

After all the horses are loaded the following words of command will be given :—

"*Fall in by your arms.*" The men fall in, at attention, in single rank, in rear of, or as near as possible to, their arms and accoutrements.

"*Take up arms.*" Arms are taken up, swords, headdresses, and gloves (or gauntlets) are put on, and the men again fall in in line in single rank.

"*From the right, Tell off by eights.*" (Or by any other number of men to be conveyed in each carriage.)

"*Flanks of eights, Proof.*" "*As you were.*"

"*First section, File to your carriage. Quick—March.*" The first section moves by single file to the first carriage towards the front of the train, and the other sections in succession move off as it comes to their turn by similar words of command, care being taken that the carriages in the front of the train are first filled.

The unloading of the horses should also be carried out by words of command in the same manner.

Regiments must be frequently practised in the above drill, so far as it can be taught in barracks without the actual process of loading the horses being carried out; and where arrangements can be made with the railway it should be practically carried out.

S. 5. Rules to be Observed by Troops in Passing Over Pontoon and other Temporary Bridges.

When large bodies of troops have to pass a river, and circumstances permit, three bridges will be made, one for infantry, one for cavalry, and a third for artillery and wagons which accompany the force. This does not apply to ambulance wagons, &c., accompanying regiments. Columns of infantry, artillery, wagons, and cavalry must not be mixed together in passing a bridge.

Cavalry will, as a rule, cross in single file or files, but never at a faster pace than the walk. All horses should be mounted in crossing the bridge, and none should be led across.

Wheel carriages of all kinds, with trained horses, are to cross fully horsed; with unsteady horses, carriages must be passed over by hand. Taking out the lead horses and crossing with the wheel horses only is strictly forbidden.

Halting on a bridge is to be avoided. If it be absolutely necessary to halt on a pontoon bridge, gun-wheels must rest as nearly as possible midway between two boats. Artillery should cross at increased distances. If the bridge sways so as to become very unsteady, the column must be halted and not allowed to resume its movement till the swaying has ceased.

These rules apply to all suspension, military, spar, and floating bridges.

Officers will incur grave responsibility if they cross a bridge otherwise than in the way recommended by the engineer officer in charge.

In practising cavalry horses in crossing pontoon bridges, the horses should first be marched across in single file at a horse's length distance from each other, great care being taken to keep them up at a slow walk and to prevent all hurrying up towards the front or trotting. Horses that are unsteady should be made

to fall out, and to file across by themselves, backwards and forwards several times in succession, a lead being given to them by a steady horse. When the horses go with perfect steadiness across the bridge in single file, they should be marched across in files.

S. 6. *Ferrying across Rivers.*

Instructions for the construction of rafts suitable for ferrying horses over rivers are given in the "Manual of Elementary Field Engineering."

A raft capable of carrying 13 horses can be constructed of four piers, each consisting of seven (100-gallon) casks, bearing a platform 30 feet long and 10 feet wide, provided with a rail removable at the two ends, but firmly fixed at the sides.

The horses should be ridden on to the raft along a roadway (supported if necessary by piers) which need not be wider than 6 feet in the clear, but must be long enough to reach from the shore to water of sufficient depth to float the raft.

As each horse is placed in its position across the raft, the rider will dismount and stand to his horse's head.

The raft should be guided by a cable stretched from shore to shore, led through two snatch blocks attached to the raft, and can be hauled across by men or horses.

On reaching the further side, the horses should be led ashore.

If it is impossible to ferry horses across rivers, &c., and it is not considered advisable for their riders to swim them across with their complete kits, it will generally be possible, in the absence of a boat, to construct a raft of trees or other wood at hand, on which the saddlery and arms can be conveyed across, the horses retaining only the bridoon reins.

S. 7. Squadron Training.

Each squadron will be annually put through a course of training by its own officers in accordance with the following instructions.

The training will be divided into two courses, each of three weeks' duration, viz.:—

Winter Course.
Spring Course.

The winter course to be held between the 1st October and the 1st March. The spring course between 1st March and 31st May. With the exceptions enumerated below, they will be attended by all trained soldiers and 1st class recruits belonging to the squadron.

Every available officer, non-commissioned officer and man will be present with his squadron, and relieved from all other duties whilst under instruction, with the exception of two cooks per squadron, one servant for each officer, and such non-commissioned officers as are exempted from the annual course of musketry.

No leave or furlough whatever is to be granted except in peculiar cases or emergency to anyone belonging to a squadron when struck off duty. In order that the squadrons may be as strong as possible while training, horses will, if necessary, be borrowed from another squadron, advantage being taken of the absence of its horses to put the squadron supplying the same through its annual course of musketry.

Men in hospital, prison, &c., who are unable to attend with their squadrons, will, as soon as available, join the next squadron struck off for training, each man being mounted on his own horse.

Where regiments are broken up in consequence of squadrons being detached from head quarters, or where the nature of the duties will not allow of one squadron per regiment being struck

off for training without reducing the number of nights in bed for men of other squadrons below three, commanding officers, subject to the approval of general officers commanding, will make the best arrangements in their power for carrying out the spirit of these regulations.

The winter course will be devoted to the following subjects, the mounted portion of which can be carried out without entailing loss of condition to unclipped horses :—

Equitation Drill, including practice in the different rates of manœuvre.
Post Practices.
Sword and Lance Exercise.
Dismounted Duty.
Outpost Duty.
Pitching Tents—Picketing.
Digging Kitchens, Latrines, and Shelter Trenches.
Singlestick.
Theoretical Instruction of officers, non-commissioned officers and men.
Practice of officers and non-commissioned officers in imparting instruction.

The spring course to be devoted entirely to drill, evolution, and detached duties.

Considerable scope must be left to commanding officers in arranging details and the time to be devoted to each subject. Should wet weather interfere with any portion of the course, the time so lost must be made good.

Subalterns should be kept as much as possible with their own troops, and should be held responsible by the squadron commander for their efficient training.

Each practice in field training will be based on a definite supposition and object, and will be carried on, as far as possible, under the conditions of actual warfare. The opposing force should always be represented by men not belonging to the squadron under instruction.

Except Saturdays, when two hours' training will suffice, the

instruction will extend over at least four to five hours daily, and for practical work on the ground short parades should be avoided, a period of from two to three consecutive hours being generally desirable, the dismounted practices being carried out in the afternoon.

Blank ammunition will be used in practising the more advanced exercises.

It is anticipated that the tents and tools whose issue is already authorised will, under ordinary circumstances, be sufficient for the instruction. Should any increased issue be required, a special application should be made through the general officer commanding the district.

A Daily Statement of Parades and Diary of Attendance (Army Form B 214), in which every non-commissioned officer and man and squadron horse will be accounted for, will be kept by each squadron.

When casuals from another squadron are attached for the course, their names should be entered at the foot of the form.

At the end of each course the officer commanding the regiment will put the squadron through a searching examination, testing the proficiency of all ranks in the duties in which they have been instructed during the training, and prepare a report of the inspection on Army Form B 237.

Proficiency in reconnaissance must be tested by a scheme set by the officer commanding the regiment or second in command, which must be carried out in detail. The reports, &c., in connection with the exercise will be sent in immediately after its performance, the whole being examined and commented upon by the officer who set the scheme.

These papers (viz., the scheme, map of the country, the report, and comments) will be forwarded to the Inspector-General of Cavalry as directed below.

Whenever practicable, general officers will from time to time visit the squadrons under training, and test the merits of the instruction imparted, by seeing the squadrons when exercised against one another.

Within one week from the completion of the spring course of each squadron, the officer commanding the regiment will forward the following reports, &c., to the officer commanding the Cavalry Brigade or general officer commanding, for transmission to the Inspector-General of Cavalry :—

(1) Report of inspection of squadrons, Army Form B 237.
(2) Reconnaissance scheme, &c., referred to on p. 234.
(3) Daily Statement of parades and Diary of Attendance Army Form B 214.

The reserve squadron will undergo a course of training similar to that of the service squadron.

When convenient two squadrons may be trained at the same time.

SYNOPSIS OF ANNUAL COURSE OF INSTRUCTION FOR CAVALRY PIONEERS.

To be carried out during the Field Training of the Regiment.

Days.	Subject.	Section and Paragraph of "Manual of Military Engineering, 1893."	Remarks.
1st and 2nd	Bivouacs and huts	Sect. XXII, paras. 16 to 22.	
3rd and 4th	Water supply, making filters, arrangements for water supply	Sec XXII, paras. 8 to 15	Charcoal for the filters to be made from the old wood supplied.
5th	Shelter trenches and defence of walls and hedges	Sec. III, paras. 1 to 9. Sec. V, paras. 1 to 5.	
6th	Defence of a post, forming barricades and obstacles	Sec. IV and Sec. V, paras. 6 to 18.	
7th and 8th	Use of explosives, destroying rails, trees, and timbers	Secs. XXIII. and XXIV.	A dummy detonator made of wood to be used for practising the mode of fixing in charges. Old railway plant to be laid, and a rail and sleeper destroyed.
9th	Knotting and lashing spars	Sec. XVIII, paras. 1 to 7.	
10th and 11th	Trestle bridges	Sec. XIX, paras. 14 to 18.	
12th	Inspection		

N.B.—The stores, &c., available for carrying out the foregoing course of instruction are specified in the Regulations for Engineer Services.

S. 8. *Instruction in Detached Duties.*

The following directions are issued with the object of indicating the progression which should regulate the instruction of squadrons and regiment in reconnaissance and sketching. This individual instruction will be carried on during the winter months.

Officers.

The cavalry officer must be trained to observe ground always from a clear military point of view, to realise its capabilities in relation to the working of troops, and to judge it accordingly, to compile, without loss of time, a clear, short, practical report to the point, and to *execute in the saddle* a sketch to accompany the report. The object of the sketch is to make the report clearer and shorter, consequently it need only claim to be correct and clear.

Young officers will be taught regimentally how to make practical reconnaissance sketches such as :—

1. Of roads.
2. Of a general line across country.
3. Of rivers, railways, &c.

It is recommended that a rough plane table be first used, then the cavalry sketching board on foot, and subsequently on horseback.

Rough sketching, by observing the general direction of a line of advance with a magnetic compass, and noting the same in a pocket book, affords excellent practice for making rough sketches of country passed through. The methods of "Field Book Traverse" and "Prismatic Compass Sketching" are not recommended for cavalry uses. Once a cavalry officer has learned the details of sketching on foot, he must always be required to sketch on horseback, while his sketching apparatus must be limited to what he could and would carry on service, and should be of the simplest description.

Those officers who have acquired proficiency in the elementary details of the subject will be frequently practised in the reconnaissance of important sections of country near to the station where the regiment is quartered, the ground selected being thoroughly worked out in relation to its adaptation to some specially indicated military purpose or operation, such as, for an advanced guard, the defence or attack of a passage, the tactical conditions of ground for a cavalry engagement, &c. Reconnaissance of ground with mere general objects and no definite military operation in view is of little use.

The intelligence and aptness of officers will be developed by making them reconnoitre ground in which are posted bodies of troops whose strength and position are unknown, and guarded from approach by military dispositions.

It must be recognised, as a fact, that the most important training for officers is practical exercise in these operations to develop in them sound judgment and quickness; mere paper work indoors is of much less value. At the same time much profitable instruction may be given to officers in outpost, reconnaissance, and detached duties generally without employing troops for these exercises. The solution of such problems may be indicated on a map after examination of the country. Lastly, the decisions arrived at should be commented on by the commanding officer in the field.

Commanding officers will frequently supervise in person the practice of their officers in exercises of the above descriptions, for they are not only of great use in furthering their education in this important branch of their duty, but they show where practical ability and talent for this kind of work are to be found.

N.C. Officers and Men.

The object to be kept in view in the instruction of N.C. officers is to train everyone who commands a section to be a capable patrol leader, and able to instruct the men in his section in all that is required of them on detached duty.

N.C. officers must be trained with the greatest care in barracks. There must also be a certain number in every squadron capable to perform the duties of leader of an officer's patrol.

Every section leader, before he can be considered fit to be detached from his squadron on ordinary patrol duty, should be able :—

(1) To understand the conventional signs.
(2) Measure distances on a map by scale.
(3) Read a military map.
(4) Write out by reference to a map clear directions sufficient to enable a man to find his way from one place to another.
(5) To identify villages, farms, hills, &c., shown on a map.
(6) To find his way from one place to another in an unknown part of the country by means of a map only.
(7) Make an intelligible written report on any given length of road to be traversed on horseback.

The men will be trained what, and how, to observe, and to be able to state concisely what they see ; they must also be taught how to find their way about the country (*i.e.*, to be messengers), and to repeat verbal messages.

Officers commanding squadrons are entirely responsible for the instruction of their N.C. officers and men in detached duties. The main considerations which should be borne in mind are as follows :—

1. Theoretical instruction.—The object of this should be to develop the thinking power of N.C. officers and men.

Briefly this part of the instruction will consist in explaining (*a*) *general principles* for the movement of reconnoitring patrols, protecting ditto, &c. ; (*b*) nature of Cossack, detached, communicating and connecting posts, vedettes, &c. ; (*c*) *general principles* of movement of an advanced and rear guard, and of each fraction of it ; (*d*) how to word a report and how to act to ensure it being delivered.

2. Map reading.—In order to make the lessons more instruc-

tive, squadron and troop commanders should make their N.C. officers work out on the sketch verbally, and in their presence small schemes and problems such as daily occur on field service, and should give such instructions as the case may call for.

3. The following exercise is recommended :—

The squadron commander should frequently ride out with his officers, N.C. officers, and intelligent men in small parties, proposing problems and schemes for advanced guard, outpost, and patrolling services in relation to the varied circumstances of the actual ground, and making each of them solve them practically. Such exercises will tend to give subordinate leaders a thorough knowledge of the ground and enable them to judge of its influence on the movements of troops and the proper mode of leading them. Moreover, uniformity of ideas and action in the details of field service will be insured in each squadron.

4. The practice of patrolling duty and of patrol leading in the field should next follow. For this purpose subaltern officers should ride out with small parties of N.C. officers and men, in order to instruct them in their duties, and small patrols of four to six men under a N.C. officer should be sent out on missions, which should be clearly defined and in writing. The programme should sufficiently indicate the route to be taken and the nature of the reconnaissance required. The latter should include the most varied objects, such as finding a position for a piquet in a particular neighbourhood, with a view to covering a certain section of ground ; reconnaissance of localities with respect to capabilities of defence or for quartering of troops ; whether defiles, bridges, and passages of rivers are passable on certain routes, &c. The essential condition is that the ground must be looked at with a certain point of military importance in view ; to be of any use, the mission must never be of a mere general character. Reports from patrol commanders should be accompanied with small pencil sketches, executed in the saddle.

Instruction in sketching, &c., should chiefly take the form of

enlarging an existing map before setting out, and then filling in details as the country is passed through.

Too much attention can be paid to neat draughtsmanship indoors at the expense of rapidity and accuracy in the field. Map-making ought certainly not to be the aim and object of the course of instruction for N.C. officers in reconnaissance.

5. Practical exercises should next follow. Two squadrons might be sent to camps or villages, say 10 miles apart, and each one close enough to barracks to admit of its being reinforced without the reinforcement being known to the other. The commanding officer of the regiment should test and practice, by means of schemes, each in turn, in outpost and reconnoitring work.

Instruction in the subjects dealt with in the preceding paragraphs should be carried out on the following system :—

1. Officers commanding troops should commence by training eight or ten of their most intelligent N.C. officers and men in map reading, patrolling, delivering messages, &c. (as ordered above), supervised by squadron commanders.

2. The most intelligent N.C. officers in a squadron should then be instructed by the squadron commander himself (or by any one of his troop leaders who may show aptitude for this kind of work) in reconnaissance and sketching.

3. Practice of the whole squadron in detached duty.

Ability as a patrol leader and reconnoitrer should be considered one of the most necessary qualifications for a N.C. officer to possess before promotion to the rank of serjeant.

CEREMONIAL.

S. 9. Parade movements.
S. 10. Guards.
S. 11. Royal Escorts—State processions, &c.
S. 12. Firing a Feu-de-Joie.
S. 13. Funerals.

S. 9. *Parade Movements.*

Posts of Officers, &c.

COMMANDING OFFICER.

In all formations.—In front of the centre of the line or leading body, two horses' lengths in advance of the leading officer or officers.

In marching and ranking past in any formation, after passing the saluting point, the commanding officer falls out and places himself by the reviewing officer, except when marching past by wings or with the regiment in line.

SECOND IN COMMAND.

In Marching and Ranking Past.—In all formations, except wings, in rear of the regiment, one horse's length behind the adjutant (half horse's length when ranking past by single file). In wings, in front of the centre of the rear wing, two horses' lengths in advance of the leading officers.

Adjutant.

In Marching Past.—In all formations, one horse's length in rear of the serrefile on that flank of the rear squadron or wing which is the nearer to the saluting point.

In Ranking Past by Single File.—Half horse's length in rear of the second in command of the 4th squadron.

In Ranking Past by Sections.—One horse's length in rear of the second in command of the 4th squadron.

Squadron Commander.

In Marching, Trotting, and Galloping Past by Squadrons.—One horse's length in front of the line of troop leaders, opposite the centre of his squadron. In regiments with Standards, the leading squadron commander is one horse's length in front of the Standard.

In Ranking Past by Single File.—In front of the squadron, half horse's length in advance of the right troop leader. In regimental parade movements, after passing the saluting point the squadron commander falls out to the right, and places himself on the right of the commanding officer while his squadron is ranking past.

In Ranking Past by Sections.—In front of the squadron, one horse's length in advance of the inner troop leader.

Squadron Second in Command.

In Marching, Trotting, and Galloping Past by Squadrons.—In rear of the centre of the squadron, one horse's length behind the line of serrefiles.

In Ranking Past by Sections.—One horse's length in rear of the inner file of the rear section.

In Ranking Past by Single File.—Half a horse's length in rear of the rear serrefile.

Troop Leaders.

In Ranking Past by Single File.—The right troop leader half horse's length in rear of the squadron commander; the second troop leader half horse's length in rear of the right troop leader, and so on.

In Ranking Past by Sections.—The troop leaders in the case of four troops form the leading complete section of the squadron: when there are less than four troops, the right troop leader is one horse's length in front of the inner file of the leading section, the second troop leader at the same interval on the left of the right troop leader, and so on.

Serrefiles.

In Ranking Past by Single File.—In rear of the squadron, half horse's length from head to croup, officer serrefiles in rear of non-commissioned officer serrefiles.

In Ranking Past by Sections.—Forming the rear section of the squadron, officers on the right.

Staff Officers.

In Line.—In one rank at close files, on the right of the adjutant, in line with the front rank, in the order laid down for foot parade.

Trumpeters and Band.

As a rule, during the parade movements, the whole of the trumpeters will be formed with the band, which, in line in two ranks with the kettledrum one horse's length in front of centre of front rank, is posted on the right of the staff at one horse's length interval from them.

If the band is not present, the whole of the trumpeters will usually be formed in single rank on the right of the staff officers, at one horse's length interval from them.

If required to form up with their squadrons, trumpeters will be in the rear ranks of their troops, except squadron trumpeters, who will be posted as follows :—

In Line and Column.—Inside the right (or senior) squadron serrefile.

In Ranking Past by Single File and Sections.—In rear of the officers at the head of the squadron.

The commanding officer's trumpeter is half horse's length to the flank and to the rear of that officer, on the flank further away from the saluting point.

Standard Bearer and Escort.

(These instructions are not applicable to the Regiments of Household Cavalry.)

In Line at Close Order.—As in field movements (p. 257), but half-way between the second and third squadrons.

In Line at Order.—The Standard in front of the centre of the interval between the second and third squadrons, in line with the troop leaders ; the escort covering the Standard, in line with the front rank.

In Trotting Past in Line.—The Standard in front of the centre of the interval between the first and second squadrons, in line with the troop leaders ; the escort covering it in line with the front rank.

In Marching Past by Wings.—The Standard in front of the centre of the interval between the first and second squadrons of the leading wing, in line with the troop leaders ; the escort covering it in line with the front rank.

In Marching, Trotting, or Galloping Past by Squadrons.—The Standard in front of the centre of the leading squadron, one horse's length in advance of the line of troop leaders ; the escort on the flank of the front rank of the squadron further away from the saluting point. In marching past by squadrons or wings, the Standard bearer and escort always take up their posts for marching past immediately the troops wheel on to the passing line at the first marker, resuming their positions in column of troops as the troops wheel off the passing line at the fourth marker. When ranking past by single file or sections, they take up their posts when the command to rank past is given at the marker B, and resume their usual positions at the marker D.

In Ranking Past by Single File and Sections.—Immediately in rear of the leading officers and trumpeter of the 1st squadron. In single file the escort is in rear of the Standard ; in sections, on each flank of it, at 1 horse's length interval.

Inspection or Review of the Regiment.

The regiment is formed in line at close order on the ground where the reviewing officer is to be received.

A point is marked about 150 yards in front of the centre, at which the reviewing officer will generally take his station.

On the word "*Take Order*," the flank men of the rear rank of each squadron turn about and mark a distance of three horses' lengths from the front rank. On the word "*March*" (the officers of Lancer regiments carry swords), the whole of the rear rank rein back three horses' lengths from the front rank ; serrefile officers (and the Standard) come to the front in the interval between the troop leaders, and the officers and rear rank dress by the right, the officers being dressed by the 2nd in command, and the rear rank by the adjutant. When the dressing is completed, the commanding officer gives the word "*Eyes Front.*"

While the regiment remains stationary on the parade line

for the purpose of receiving the reviewing officer, squadron commanders do not repeat the words of command. As soon, however, as the regiment is to be put in motion for marching past by the command "*March past by Squadrons*," the words of command are to be repeated by squadron commanders.

When the reviewing officer presents himself before the centre, the command "*General Salute, Eyes Centre—Draw Swords*" (in Lancer regiments, "*General Salute, Eyes Centre*") is given ; the time is taken from the commanding officer, and the officers come down at the last motion to the position of the salute. Non-commissioned officers do not salute. The Standard salutes such persons only, as are entitled to that honour ; the band plays the first part of a slow march, or trumpets sound, according to the rank of the reviewing officer ; after which the officers recover and carry their swords with the commanding officer.

The reviewing officer then goes towards the right, accompanied by the commanding officer, and the whole remain steady while he passes along the regiment, the band playing, or trumpets sounding until he leaves the line.

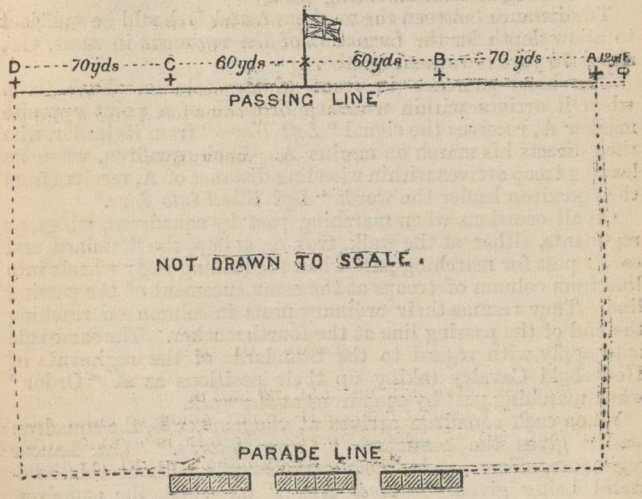
After the inspection of the ranks is completed, the commanding officer gives the words "*Slope Swords*," "*Close Order—March*," on which the rear rank moves up and serrefiles and the Standard resume their places at close order. (In Lancer regiments the command "*Slope Swords*" is not given, and officers slope swords on the command "*March*.")

Marching Past.

On the general caution "*March Past by Squadrons*," squadron commanders give the caution "*Troops, Right Wheel.*"

On the command "*Walk*," "*March*," the troops and band wheel to the right, and the staff (except the adjutant) fall out ; they will remain on the ground until the conclusion of the review

and during the parade movements will take post in rear of the saluting point. The adjutant marks the passing line by placing a serrefile non-commissioned officer or farrier at the point A,



facing the regiment and outflanking it by about 40 yards, and on a line about 4 yards in advance of the point at which the reviewing officer will post himself. The two markers place themselves at the points B and C, about 60 yards on the right and left of the centre, and dress by the marker A and the

adjutant, who posts himself at E, 12 yards outside that marker. Another serrefile non-commissioned officer or farrier places himself at D, outflanking the regiment by the same distance as the marker A. The markers keep their swords at the *Carry* while the regiment is marching past.

The distance between the markers A and B should be sufficient to allow depth for the formation of the regiment in mass, viz, about 70 yards in round numbers.

The band marches in front of the column. Each troop when it arrives within wheeling distance of a point opposite marker A, receives the signal "*Left Wheel*" from its leader, who then directs his march on marker A. Each squadron, when its leading troop arrives within wheeling distance of A, receives from the squadron leader the words "*Left Wheel into Line.*"

On all occasions when marching past by squadrons, wings, or regiments, either at the walk, trot, or gallop, the Standard and escort post for marching past when the leading body wheels into line from column of troops at the commencement of the passing line. They resume their ordinary posts in column on reaching the end of the passing line at the fourth marker. The same rule is to apply with regard to the Standards of the regiments of Household Cavalry taking up their positions as at "Order" when marching past by squadrons at the walk.

When each squadron arrives at the marker B, the squadron leader gives the command "*Carry Swords.*" (In Lancer regiments, officers and others carry swords without this command being given.) "*Eyes Right,*" on which the squadron dresses by the right, and continues to do so until opposite marker C. The leaders and serrefiles dress by the right. While passing from markers B to C it is the duty of the troop guide on the flank of the squadron which is the nearer to the saluting point to keep the flank of the squadron exactly upon the line of markers.

The band (or trumpeters, when there is no band), 6 horses' lengths in front of the commanding officer, commences to play immediately after the leading squadron has wheeled on to the

passing line at A, and, after passing the reviewing officer, it wheels to the left, clears the flank of the column, then wheels to the left about so as to take up a position opposite to the saluting point, and plays while the regiment is passing. It remains in this position until the conclusion of the parade movements; retiring, however, a sufficient distance if the regiment marches past by wings or in line.

The officers, when they arrive within 10 yards of the reviewing officer, salute; the squadron and troop leaders of the 1st squadron take the time from the commanding officer; the troop leaders of the other squadrons from the squadron commander. Serrefile officers, if more than one, take the time from the officer on the right of their rank. At 10 yards beyond the saluting point the officers "recover" and "carry" their swords, taking the time from the squadron commander.

When the front rank of each squadron arrives at marker C, the squadron commander gives the command "*Slope Swords.*" "*Eyes Front.*"

Each squadron on arriving at marker D receives from its commander the words "*Troops, Left Wheel.*"

As soon as the rear squadron has wheeled into column of troops at marker D, the commanding officer gives the word "*Trot,*" and the column moves round the square, each troop wheeling at the several angles, until the leading troop approaches marker A, when the commanding officer gives the word "*To the Halt,*" "*Mass to the Left.*"

The commanding officer then gives the caution "*Rank Past by Single File.*" The commander of the 1st squadron immediately gives the words "*Carry Swords*" (in Lancer regiments "*Trail Lance*"), "*Advance by Single File from the Right.*" The officers, &c., who precede the squadron, at the same time take up their positions for ranking past. On the words "*Walk,*" "*March,*" given by the commanding officer, and repeated by the commander of the 1st squadron, that squadron advances from its right by single file. The other squadrons in succession, as it comes to their turn, receive the same words of command from

their commanders, and advance in a similar manner. The distance from croup to head is 4 feet. Officers salute separately in succession when 10 yards from the reviewing officer.

Ranking past by single file will in general only be performed at the walk.

The head of the 1st squadron wheels to the left at marker D, and, when it has advanced the depth of the regimental column, the command is given (by the senior troop leader in the absence of the squadron commander) "*To the Halt*," "*Form Troops.*" Each man will ride close up to marker D, before wheeling. The heads of the rear squadrons similarly wheel in succession at marker D, and the squadrons are formed in mass on the left of the 1st squadron. As each squadron is formed it receives the words "*Slope Swords*," and the squadron commander takes post on the left flank.

As soon as the mass is thus formed it breaks into column of troops to the left by the command "*Column of Troops to the Left*," "*March.*" The column proceeds round the square, and mass is again formed as before between the markers A and B on the passing line.

The commanding officer then gives the caution "*Rank Past by Sections.*" The commander of the 1st squadron immediately gives the words "*Carry Swords*" (in Lancer regiments "*Trail Lance*") "*Advance by Sections from the Right*," on which the right-hand section of that squadron advances 4 horses' lengths, extending from its right to an interval of a horse's length from knee to knee. The officers, &c., who precede the squadron, at the same time take up their positions for ranking past in front of the leading section.

On the word "*March*," the leading section advances, and the remainder follow in succession, as in Squadron Drill, the files extending as soon as they have completed their second wheel. The distance from croup to head, and the interval from knee to knee, are each a horse's length, each section dressing to the right, and covering from the front.

The other squadrons in succession, as it comes to their turn, receive the same words of command from their commanders, and advance in a similar manner.

Ranking past by sections is usually to be executed at the trot, in which case officers do not salute.

At marker D, each section wheels to the left and moves forward at the trot; mass being formed in the same way as after ranking past by single file.

In ranking past by sections and single file a distance of four horses' lengths will be preserved between squadrons.

The caution is then given "*Trot past by Squadrons* (or *Wings*)." "*Column of Troops to the Left.*" The squadrons move off as described above. If the trot past is to be by squadrons, each squadron is wheeled into line to the left as it arrives on the passing line. At the point B the word "*Carry Swords*" is given (except in Lancer regiments), and at C "*Slope Swords.*" Officers, &c., are posted as when marching past by squadrons at the walk.

At marker D, each squadron receives the commands "*Troops, Left Wheel,*" and the regiment proceeds in column of troops.

If the regiment is to trot past by wings instead of by squadrons, each wing is wheeled left into line from column of troops at marker A. Swords are carried at B and sloped at C, and each wing is wheeled off the passing line at D by the command "*Troops, Left Wheel.*"

When trotting or galloping past the troops look to the front.

The whole regiment may sometimes be required to trot past in line. In this case the regiment is wheeled left into line at A, and wheeled off the passing line at D by the command "*Troops, Left Wheel.*"

When column of troops has been formed after trotting past, the regiment will gallop past by squadrons. This movement is generally performed in the reverse direction to the other parade movements, by entering the passing line at marker D. For this purpose the front of the column is reversed by the wheel about of troops. The direction of the head of the column, after trotting past, is changed to the left, and when the column has arrived on the original parade line the

commanding officer gives the word "*Troops, Right* (or *Left*) *about Wheel,*" followed by "*Gallop past by Squadrons,*" "*Gallop.*" Each squadron is wheeled into line at D.

Each squadron receives the command "*Carry Swords,*" at C (except in Lancer regiments), and "*Slope Swords,*" at B, and on arriving at A is wheeled off the passing line by the command "*Troops, Right Wheel.*"

As soon as all the squadrons have wheeled off the passing line at A, the commanding officer gives the command "*Trot.*"

The regiment, on arriving on the original parade line, is wheeled right into line, and is halted.

The markers, on the conclusion of the parade movements, rejoin the regiment as soon as the line is halted.

The sword (or lance) exercise, if required by the reviewing officer, will then be performed. At an inspection, these exercises are always to be performed on the move at a gallop. Squadron commanders do not perform the sword exercise on the move.

Formation for Sword Exercise Mounted.

"*From the Right of Fours to the Front, File.*" "*Gallop.*"

"*March.*"—The whole move forward in succession by the squadron of direction, the centre (leading left flank file of the right half) of each squadron marching straight to the front. The Standard and escort drop back into the serrefile rank, and all serrefiles cover the lefts of fours.

["*Right Prove Interval.*" / "*Slope Swords.*"] { Only if the sword exercise is performed at the halt.

"*Sword Exercise.*"

"*Pursuing Practice.*"

"*Form Ranks,*" "*Halt.*" The Standard and escort move up to their places.

Where the ground will not admit of both these exercises being performed to the front, the Pursuing Practice may be done to the flank by the command "*Fours Right,*" or to the rear by "*Retire,*" after which, the files being turned to the front, the line will be formed in the usual manner.

Formation for Lance Exercise Mounted.

"*From the Right of Fours to the Front, File.*" "*Gallop.*" "*March.*" The whole move forward by the squadron of direction.

"*Lance Exercise.*"

"*First Division.*"

"*Second Division.*"

"*Form Ranks.*" "*Halt.*"

The "Lance Exercise" is generally gone through to the front, the "First Division" to the rear, and the "Second Division" to the front again. Interval is only proved when the Lance Exercise is performed at the halt.

Formation for Review in Mass.

It may sometimes be necessary to form a regiment for review in mass.

The staff, except the adjutant, will be in rear of the centre at a horse's length distance; the band three horses' lengths in rear of the staff. If required, the staff and band may be formed on the right, at the same intervals as when the regiment is in line.

Before the reviewing officer arrives on the ground, the commanding officer gives the command "*Officers to the Front,*" "*March,*" on which the squadron officers (and Standard) come to the front at the trot, and take post at one horse's length in front of their squadron.

The staff officers, if present, remain in their original places, and do not come to the front.

The line of officers is dressed, from the flank towards which the dressing is, by the second in command.

The reviewing officer is received as described for a regiment in line (p. 422), but the ranks are not opened.

On the conclusion of the inspection of the ranks, the commanding officer gives the commands "*Slope Swords*" (except in Lancer regiments), "*Officers take Post*," "*March*," when the officers in succession move to the rear at the trot.

Advance in Review Order.

If the regiment is to advance in review order at the conclusion of a review, it will be formed in line on the original parade line, the band being formed in rear of the centre at three horses' lengths distance from the serrefile rank. The commanding officer gives the caution "*Advance in Review Order*," on which the serrefile officers (and the Standard) move to the front and take post as at "Order." The commanding officer then gives the words "*Carry Swords*," "*Walk*," "*March*" (in Lancer regiments "*Walk*," "*March*" only, officers carrying swords on the latter word), on which the regiment will advance by the squadron of direction until within 40 or 50 yards of the reviewing officer, when it will be halted and receive the command "*General Salute*," "*Eyes Centre*," the officers saluting and the band playing in the same way as when receiving the reviewing officer. During the advance, the band commences to play on the command "*March*," and ceases on the command "*Halt*." The ranks remain closed. After the officers have recovered and carried swords with the commanding officer, the regiment will wait for orders.

The commanding officer will subsequently give the command "*Slope Swords*," followed by "*Close Order*," "*March*," on which serrefile officers (and the Standard) resume their posts at close order. (In Lancer regiments "*Slope Swords*" is not given, and officers slope their swords on the word "*March*.")

In the advance in review order, squadron commanders only repeat the command "*Halt*."

The Brigade and Division.

The bands will be massed 25 yards in rear of the centre, standing in the same order as their respective regiments. When

formed for parade for inspection the division leader is ten horses' lengths in front of the line of brigadiers. The latter the same distance in front of commanding officers. Staff officers two horses' lengths in rear of them, one horse's length interval from one another. Gallopers one horse's length in rear of staff officers, except when the staff, including gallopers, does not exceed four officers in number, in this case the staff will form in one line.

If the brigade is formed for the review or inspection of a Royal Personage or superior officer, on the latter presenting himself the brigadier will give the command "*Attention*," "*Royal* (or *General*) *Salute*," "*Draw Swords*," the time being taken by commanding officers from him. If formed in line the brigade will previously have been directed to take order: if in brigade mass, the officers will have been brought to the front before the Royal Personage or superior officer is received. If the latter inspects the troops, the brigadier will accompany him during the inspection, but commanding officers will remain at their posts. The brigade staff while passing down the line will precede the brigadier by two horses' lengths. Gallopers one horse's length in front of the staff. If the divisional general is the inspecting officer, his staff will follow that of the brigadier at two horses' lengths distance.

In the case of a division, the directions given in the preceding paragraph will be observed generally, brigadiers accompanying the divisional general during his inspection of their several brigades, but brigade staffs and commanding officers will stand fast; if, however, the troops are inspected by a Royal Personage or superior officer, the brigadiers will remain at their posts. While passing down the line during the inspection by the divisional general, the divisional staff will precede him at two horses' lengths distance, in the following order:—

D.A.A.G.
Gallopers (if present)
A.D.C. A.D.C.
D.A.A.G. A.A.G.
G.O.

The order of march to be observed at Royal Reviews is detailed in "Infantry Drill," Part IX, S. 194.

When a brigade or division in line receives the command "*Take Order*," a squadron of one regiment is named as the squadron of direction, the two markers of that regiment take post outside the points where the right and left of the rear rank of the squadron of direction will stand when at *Order*, and the markers of the other regiments mark the points where the right and left flanks of the rear ranks of their respective regiments will stand, dressing upon the markers of the base regiment The flank men of the rear ranks do not in this case move back previously to the word "*March*," as when a single regiment takes order. When the rear rank has been dressed by the staff officer, the word "*Eyes Front*" is given, and the markers resume their places at the walk. In the absence of the staff officer, the adjutant of the regiment furnishing the base squadron will, as on all similar occasions, place the base and superintend the dressing.

The march past will usually be conducted in the same order as is laid down for the single regiment, regiments moving off in succession. When marching past in any order of formation, open column distance will be kept between regiments and brigades; in ranking past, the distance between them will be the same as prescribed for column of troops.

The intervals between the markers, who will be posted as during the parade movements of the regiment, must be regulated to suit the ground and the number of troops on parade. When two regiments are to march past, the markers A and B are furnished by the 1st regiment, C and D by the 2nd regiment; when there are more than two regiments, the markers A and D are furnished by the flank regiments, B and C by the regiment or regiments in the centre of the line.

When the markers move out, or on the order of the staff officer, the bands will trot through the nearest interval and form in line at marker B, ready for marching past and awaiting the order to advance from the staff officer.

While on the passing line, the brigade majors and aides-de-camp are two horses' lengths in front of their brigadiers, and at one horse's length interval from each other, the gallopers (if present) being one horse's length in front of the staff officers. Brigadiers are two horses' lengths in front of the commanding officers of their leading regiments. Officers salute as in the parade movements of the regiment.

When marching past the divisional general, brigadiers fall out after saluting and place themselves on his right while their brigades are passing, their aides-de-camp and trumpeters accompanying them.

If the division is reviewed by an officer superior to the general commanding it, the latter marches past two horses' lengths in front of the staff of the leading brigade, being preceded at two horses' lengths by his staff, who ride at one horse's length interval in the order detailed on page 431. In this case the divisional general alone falls out, accompanied by an aide-de-camp and the trumpeter.

The staff officers at the head of the column follow the bands at sufficient distance to ensure their clearing their front on wheeling off the passing line. The bands wheel to the left after passing the saluting point, wheel again, and form facing the reviewing officer, at a sufficient distance from the passing line to allow the troops to march past in the order of formation required.

Preparatory to ranking past by sections, regiments will usually form in column of masses at marker B, but this order of formation may be modified to suit the ground.

In ranking past by sections, the divisional general will be in front of the head of the column, preceded by his staff officers, who will be formed in sections, as far as possible, at one horse's length distance and interval. This applies also to brigadiers and their staffs. The staff of the leading brigade will follow at two horses' lengths in rear of the divisional general, and the commanding officer of the leading regiment of each brigade will follow the brigadier at a similar distance.

While passing down the line, during the inspection of the ranks, the trumpeters of general and commanding officers will ride together in rear of the procession.

After galloping past, the bands will at once clear the front at the trot, and move to the position indicated by the staff officer. The troops will usually form line facing the saluting point; or, if the space is restricted, line of masses can be formed.

S. 10. *Guards.*

Officers of cavalry who may be obliged, in the course of garrison duty, to take part in a guard mounting parade in combination with infantry, are referred to the "Infantry Drill," Part IX.

Relieving and Posting a Guard.*

"*New Guard.*" "*Halt,*" "*Eyes Right—Dress.*"	1. The new guard will be halted, with carbines shouldered, about 15 paces from and opposite the old guard and dressed.
"*Old Guard.*" "*Present—Arms.*"	The old guard, drawn up on its parade, will receive the new guard with the prescribed salute.
"*New Guard.*" "*Present—Arms.*"	The new guard will return the salute
"*Old Guard, Shoulder—Arms.*" "*New Guard, Shoulder—Arms.*"	After which, both guards will be ordered to shoulder, and the commander of the old guard will hand the duplicate of his guard report to the commander of the new guard.
"*Old Guard, Order—Arms.*" "*Stand at—Ease.*" "*New Guard, Order—Arms.*" "*Stand at—Ease.*"	The guards will order arms and stand at ease.

* In Lancer regiments the necessary modifications must be made to adapt the instructions in this and the following sections to the lance exercise, the *Carry Lance* being substituted as the salute in place of the *Present Arms.*

The guard will then be told off, and the first relief sent out. While the relief is going round, the commander of the new guard will take over the property in charge of the guard, according to the list in the old guard report.

"*Old Guard, Attention.*" "*Shoulder-Arms.*" "*New Guard, Attention.*" "*Shoulder-Arms.*" — When the reliefs have returned and all the men of the old guard have fallen in, both guards will be called to attention and ordered to shoulder arms.

"*Old Guard, Fours Right* (or *Left*)." "*Quick—March.*" "*New Guard, Present—Arms.*" — The old guard will be marched off, either to the right or left, in fours, sections or files, as most convenient. The new guard will present arms.

"*New Guard, Shoulder—Arms.*" — When the left, or right, of the old guard is clear of the ground on which it stood, the new guard will shoulder arms.

"*Fours—Right.*" "*Left—Wheel.*" "*Quick—March.*" "*Left—Wheel.*" — The new guard will then take up the ground on which the old guard was formed.

"*To the Halt.*" "*Fours—Left.*" "*Eyes Right.*" "*Dress.*" "*Order—Arms.*" "*Stand at—Ease.*" "*Attention.*" "*Shoulder-Arms.*" "*Right—Turn.*" "*Dismiss*" — When the new guard is on the ground which was occupied by the old guard, the commander will order it to form line to the halt, order arms, and stand at ease; he will then read the orders of the guard to his men, and dismiss them. When the first relief comes in, the orders must be read to the men who have been on sentry.

In situations where the new guard cannot advance in line towards the front of the old guard, it will move up by fours, &c., and will be formed up opposite to it, or, if necessary, on its left, leaving an interval between them of 4 or 6 paces.

When a guard is being posted in a new place, and there is no guard to relieve, it will be marched in column on to the ground it is to occupy, and be halted, fronted, and directed to order arms and stand at ease.

When the commander has taken over the property in charge, he will read the orders to the guard, and then tell it off and send out the first relief.

Guards march with carbines at the *Support*.

Marching Reliefs.

A relief will march with supported arms. If it consists of less than four men, it will march in line; if of four men or more, in files, &c., according to its strength; but in streets or narrow places reliefs should always be marched in single file or files. When marching in line, the corporal (who will march with shouldered arms) will be on the right; when in fours, sections, &c., on the right of the leading men.

When the first relief of a new guard is sent out, a corporal of the old guard will accompany it, to bring in the relieved sentries. If the relief moves in line, he will be on the left flank; if in fours, sections, &c., on the left of the leading men. When all the sentries are relieved, the corporals will change places and the corporal of the old guard will take command.

Relieving and Posting Sentries.

On the approach of the relief, a sentry will place himself with shouldered arms in front of his sentry box. The corporal of the relief will proceed as follows:—

"*Shoulder—Arms.* At about 10 paces from the sentry.

"*Relief, Halt.*" At about 6 paces from the sentry.

"*Sentries, Port—Arms.*" The old sentry, and the man who is to relieve him, will port arms, the latter moving out from the relief and placing himself at 1 pace from the former, facing him; the old sentry will then give over his orders, the corporal referring to the board of orders to see if they are correctly given.

"*Pass.*" The old sentry will take 1 pace to his left, and then move to his place in the relief, turning to the rear, and the new sentry will take 1 pace to his front.

Shoulder—Arms." "*Front.*" The sentries will then be ordered to shoulder arms and front.

"*Relief, Quick—March.*" *Support—Arms.*" The relief will be marched on, and, when it has proceeded about 10 paces, will be ordered to support arms.

The proper front of a sentry's post, and the extent of his walk, should be pointed out to him when he is posted.

When a sentry is to be posted on a new post, the procedure will be as above described, except that on the command, *Sentry, Port—Arms*, the sentry will port arms, move to the post assigned to him, and be ordered to front. The corporal will read the orders to him, and then direct him to shoulder.

Sentries walking to and fro on their posts must do so in a brisk and soldier-like manner; they must on no account quit their arms, lounge, or converse with any one; nor must they stand in their sentry boxes in good or even in moderate weather. Sentries are to walk about with supported arms, but they are permitted to order arms and stand at ease from time to time.

Sentries Paying Compliments.

On the approach of an officer, when he is at least 15 paces distant, a sentry, if on the march, will halt, front, and shoulder

arms ; if standing at ease, he will come to attention and shoulder arms. To field officers and other officers of the army and navy entitled to the salute, he will present arms.

To all armed parties, whether they are commanded by an officer or not, a sentry will present arms, and the party will return the compliment by drawing and carrying swords, carrying or shouldering arms, or carrying lances or arms (when mounted), as the case may be. Parties with side-arms are to be considered as armed parties.

To all unarmed parties a sentry will shoulder arms, unless they are commanded by field officers, in which case he will present ; in return, the commander of the party will give the word "*Eyes—Right*," or "*Eyes—Left*," as the case may be, and having passed him "*Eyes—Front.*"

Sentries will not present arms to any officer or armed party after sunset, but as long as they can discern an officer they will come to their front on his approach, and stand steady with shouldered arms till he has passed.

When a sentry is posted with a sword, he will "Carry Swords" on all occasions on which, if armed with a carbine, he would present or shoulder arms.

In Lancer regiments the compliment corresponding both to the *Shoulder* and the *Present* with the carbine, and to the *Carry* with the sword, is the *Carry Lance*, as the salute for officers of all ranks and for armed parties.

Sentries in their sentry boxes will salute by coming smartly to attention.

Sentries Challenging.

When it gets dark the sentries will challenge in the following manner :—On the approach of any person the sentry will bring his carbine to the *Ready* position, and call out in a sharp tone, "*Halt : who comes there?*" If the person approaching gives a satisfactory reply, the sentry will say, "*Pass Friend : All's well*," remaining at the *Ready* till he has passed.

If the person approaching answers "*Grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds*," when there is no countersign, the sentry will say "*Pass grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds: All's well*," shouldering his arm at the same time, and presenting as they pass if they are grand rounds; but when there is a countersign, he will say, "*Stand grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds; Advance one and give the countersign*," still remaining at the *Ready;* in this position he will receive the countersign, and if it is correct will say, "*Pass grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds*," and proceed as above described.

If the sentry is on or near the guard-room door, he will proceed as described below.

Instruction of Recruits as Sentries.

Recruits are to be instructed in their duties as sentries. The instructor will post them in different parts of the barrack yard, giving each of them some particular orders to attend to, and will teach them what is laid down in this section.

Guards Turning Out.

When guards turn out they will fall in with shouldered arms, and pay the compliments laid down in the "Queen's Regulations." The non-commissioned officer in command of a guard will fall in on the right, other non-commissioned officers on the left, and the trumpeter on the right of the non-commissioned officer commanding the guard, at three paces interval from him.

Guards will not turn out after sunset, except on the approach of a body of troops, in cases of alarm, or to receive grand or visiting rounds.

The following form will be observed when a guard is visited by the field officer or captain of the day (called grand or visiting rounds). On the approach of the rounds, the sentry at or near the guard-room door will bring his carbine to the *Ready* position and challenge "*Halt: Who comes there?*" the officer will answer

"*Grand* (or *Visiting*) *rounds*," as the case may be, and the sentry will call out "*Guard, turn out.*" The guard will then turn out, and if there is no countersign, as soon as it has fallen in, the commander will call out "*Advance grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds: All's well.*" To grand rounds he will present, to visiting rounds he will remain at the shoulder.

If there is a countersign to be given, a corporal or sergeant will be sent out with the right or left file of the guard, according to the position of the rounds: he will move next to the front-rank man. When at about 10 paces from the rounds, he will order his men to halt and bring their arms to the *Ready*, and will then repeat the challenge "*Who comes there?*" The answer will be given "*Grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds.*" The challenging non-commissioned officer will reply "*Stand grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds; Advance one and give the countersign;*" the officer, or the non-commissioned officer accompanying the rounds, will then advance and give the countersign, the two men of the file remaining at the *Ready* as he advances; the non-commissioned officer of the escort will go back and repeat the countersign to the commander of the guard, who (if the word is correct) will call out "*Advance grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds: All's well.*" The non-commissioned officer of the escort, having returned to his men, will then order them to shoulder arms, turn inwards, and step back 3 paces each. The rounds will pass between them. If they are grand rounds, the escort will be ordered to present; the guard will also present to grand rounds as they approach. As soon as the rounds have passed, the escort will be ordered by the non-commissioned officer to shoulder (if they have presented), turn inwards, march back, and fall in on the flank of the guard, taking up the *Present*, if the rest of the guard are at the present; the guard will then be dismissed.

Mounted Guards.

Mounted cavalry guards are usually employed for the "Queen's Guard" only, and this duty is ordinarily performed

solely by the household cavalry. The following instructions are intended for the guidance of cavalry regiments of the line which may exceptionally be required to furnish such duties.

The usual strength of a captain's cavalry guard is 1 captain, 2 subalterns, 1 serjeant-major (carrying the Standard), 2 serjeants, 1 corporal, and 46 (or more) privates.

The guard is formed as a squadron, in 2 troops; the Standard bearer is posted in the front rank between the two troops, with a coverer in the rear rank. One serjeant is posted on the outward flank of the front rank of each troop, the corporal on the right of the front rank of the left troop, the trumpeter on the right of the front rank of the guard. The senior subaltern commands the right troop, the junior subaltern the left troop. If the guard is furnished by a regiment without a Standard, the serjeant-major occupies the place laid down for the Standard bearer, with a coverer in the rear rank.

The troops having been formed in squadron, and the captain and troop leaders having taken up their posts in front of the guard, the captain gives the word "*Take Order, March,*" and the Standard bearer moves up into line with the troop leaders, the coverer moving up into his place in the front rank. The captain moves forward so as to be a horse's length in front of the Standard bearer. The captain then gives the command "*Receive the Standard,*" "*Walk, March,*" on which the Standard bearer moves off, accompanied by the two inward troop flank guides on his right and left, as an escort, and followed by the coverer, to the place at which the Standard is lodged. On arriving at this place, the Standard bearer gives the words, "*Halt,*" "*Draw Swords,*" to the escort, and after receiving the Standard from the appointed person, "*Walk, March.*" The Standard party then move to their posts in the guard, the Standard bearer passing in front of the front rank behind the troop leaders, and the escort and coverer passing between the ranks and dressing up. When the Standard arrives near the flank of the guard, the captain gives the word, "*Draw Swords,*"

the trumpet sounds and the officers salute; the officers recover and carry swords (taking the time from the captain) as the Standard bearer takes his post in front of the centre of the guard in line with the troop leaders.

The inspection of the ranks then takes place, after which swords are sloped, the ranks are closed (the Standard bearer and coverer moving back into their original places in the ranks), and the guard is marched off in files. On the word "*March*," one serjeant and two privates move off from the flank at an increased pace to form an advanced guard, the serjeant marching at a distance of 50 yards in front of the guard, and the two privates at the same distance in advance of the serjeant. A rear guard of one serjeant and two privates is similarly formed from the opposite flank at the same distances in rear of the guard. The trumpeter marches in front of the leading files of the guard, the officers in their ordinary places in files.

The two men of the advanced and rear guards have their carbines at the *Advance*. The remainder march with sloped swords.

Previously to the arrival of the new guard, the old guard is formed up on its parade ground and the ranks are opened. As the advanced guard of the new guard approaches the place at which the old guard is formed up, it halts until the main body comes up to it. The commanders of both guards then give the word "*Carry Swords*" and the trumpets sound. The new guard is formed up opposite to the old one, and the ranks are opened. The officers of the old guard then salute the new guard, and those of the new guard return the salute, the trumpets at the same time sounding, but the Standards are not lowered.

Both guards are then ordered to slope swords and sit at ease, and the commander of the old guard gives the necessary orders regarding the guard to the commander of the new guard, and furnishes him with a duplicate of his guard report. The new guard will be told off in reliefs, the serjeant-major, senior sergeant, and the men for the first relief of sentries will be

ordered to fall out, and the relief will be sent out. When the serjeant-major falls out, he hands over the Standard to the corporal on the right of the left troop. While the relief is going round, the serjeant-major takes over the property in charge of the guard according to the list in the old guard report.

As soon as the relief has returned and all the non-commissioned officers and men have mounted and taken their places in the ranks, both guards will be called to attention. The commander of the old guard then gives the word "*Carry Swords*," closes the ranks, and marches the guard off with the usual advanced and rear guards, the trumpets sounding as it commences to move off; the new guard carries swords (the officers saluting and the trumpet sounding) as the old guard passes. After the old guard has advanced about 50 yards, it is ordered to slope swords.

After the rear of the old guard is clear of the ground on which it stood, the new guard will slope swords and take close order, and will then be ordered to dismount and to file to their stables in the usual manner. No ceremony is required for moving off the Standard in this instance, as it is not actually "lodged," but remains in charge of the guard. But on ordinary occasions of parade when the Standard is either received or lodged, the ranks should be opened and the Standard should be saluted as it either arrives or moves off.

When the old guard arrives in barracks, it is formed up, takes order, and the Standard is lodged with the same ceremony as when mounting guard, the words "*Lodge the Standard*" being substituted for "*Receive the Standard*" in the commands.

The relief of any mounted cavalry guard, whatever its strength may be, is carried out on the same principles.

S. 11. *Royal and Ceremonial Escorts, State Processions, &c,*

General Instructions for Royal Escorts, &c.

The formation of escorts, and more especially the relief of travelling escorts at a rapid pace, should be frequently practised by all regiments, in order that both officers and men may become habituated to the duties required of them when detailed for this service.

Escorts are formed up, with swords drawn and at the *Slope*, facing the point at which the Royal Carriage is waiting. They are generally formed in single rank ; but when strong (as in the case of a field officer's escort), and there is sufficient room, it is advisable to form in two ranks.

An escort should be told off and formed up in such a manner that its different parties can move off in succession in the required direction without any delay or confusion, and without the advanced parties having to pass across the front of the rear parties. Thus, if the escort is to move towards its right, it should be told off from the right ; if towards the left, it should be told off from the left. In the following instructions the escort is supposed to move off from the right. In all cases the non-commissioned officers and men composing an escort must be thoroughly instructed beforehand as to the exact positions they are to occupy.

When a regiment of the line has to furnish an escort with Standard, the Standard will be posted as in the regiments of Household Cavalry, viz., in the centre of the front rank of the squadron, with a serjeant as coverer in the rear rank, and without any other Standard escort.

The position for the officers or non-commissioned officer riding by the Royal Carriage (unless other special instructions are given) is near the door, with their bodies in line with the carriage window. The officer in command of the escort should

always ascertain beforehand on which side of the carriage the principal Royal Personage will be seated, and will invariably ride on that side ; in most cases it will be the right, and the following instructions are framed on that supposition. The officer next in seniority takes post on the opposite side of the carriage. If the Royal Personage desires to speak with any person riding with the procession, the officer of the escort must drop slightly back, in order to allow the person to approach the carriage, still, however, remaining on the same side of the carriage, and resuming his original position the instant the conversation has ended. The officer in command of an escort has a most important duty to perform : he is at all times immediately and solely responsible for the safety of the Royal Personage, his place cannot be supplied by anyone not belonging to the escort, and he must on no account be interfered with by any other officer.

The only authorised paces for escorts are the walk and the trot. They ride with swords at the *Carry*, with the exception of the two leading and rear men of the advanced and rear guards respectively, who, in all escorts have their carbines at the *Carry*. In lancer regiments the escort have their lances at the *Trail*.

The pace of the procession is regulated by that of the Royal Carriage, and the different parties of the escort must be careful to preserve their distances from it. In most cases 50 yards is the distance to be maintained between the different parties of the advanced and rear guard of an escort, but this distance may be diminished according to circumstances. As a rule, the rear of that party of an escort which immediately precedes the Royal Carriage will keep at a distance of about three horses' lengths in front of the leaders' heads ; and the head of the party immediately following the Royal Carriage will be at one horse's length distance behind the carriage. On all occasions the greatest care must be taken that the progress of the Royal Carriage is not in any way impeded.

When the cortége arrives at its destination, the escort forms up, still with carried swords, facing the Royal Carriage.

The actual mode in which the formation is to be made will frequently be affected by accidents of position and by the extent of space available; but the escort must under all circumstances form up facing the Royal Carriage, without reference to which is the inner or the outer flank of the column. As the Royal Personage quits the carriage, the officers salute, the trumpet sounds, and the Standard is lowered.

All orders regarding the disposal, dismissal, &c., of an escort are to be taken by the officer in command from the equerry in waiting or other officer of the Royal Household.

Escorts are not permitted to cloak except when the Royal servants are cloaked, and when a procession has to pass through a crowded thoroughfare it is not desirable under any circumstances that the escort should cloak. Even when cloaked, however, escorts will have swords drawn.

All escorts turn out in "Review Order."

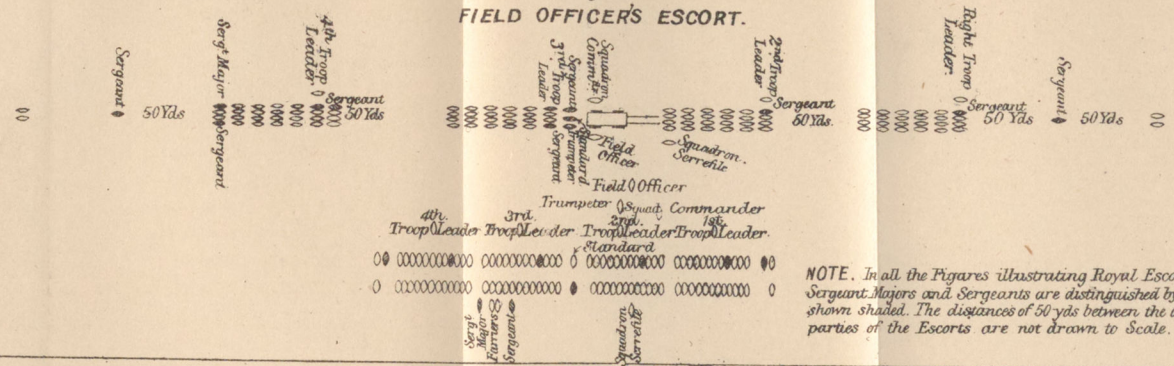
Detailed Instructions for Escorts.

The following paragraphs explain in detail the strength and mode of formation of the different Royal Escorts which are ordinarily employed. The instructions here given for telling off and forming up escorts cannot in all cases be exactly carried out, and the officer in command must exercise his discretion in adopting the method of telling off and formation which are most suitable; but the general distribution of the different parties of each escort must be in accordance with that here described.

The plates of Escorts are designed as if told off from the right.

PLATE I.
ROYAL ESCORTS.

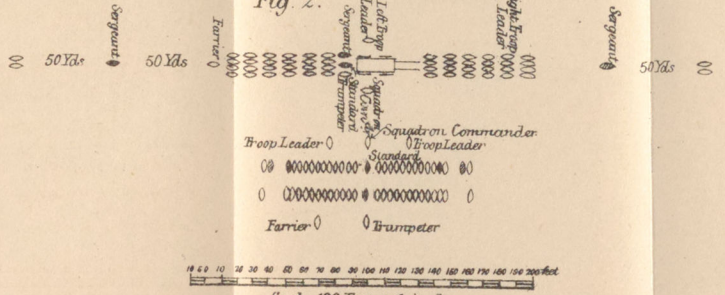
Fig 1.
FIELD OFFICER'S ESCORT.



NOTE. *In all the Figures illustrating Royal Escorts, the Sergeant Majors and Sergeants are distinguished by being shown shaded. The distances of 50 yds between the different parties of the Escorts are not drawn to Scale.*

CAPTAIN'S ESCORT WITH STANDARD.

Fig. 2.



Scale 120 Feet to 1 inch.

Wyman & Sons, Ltd, Lith 93 12-10-97.

Table showing the detail of the various Royal and other escorts.

—	Fld. Officers.	Captains.	Subalterns.	Sergeant-majors.	Sergeants.	Farriers.	Trumpeters.	Rank and File.	When employed.
Field officer's escort	1*	2	4	2	8	2	1	96	For the Sovereign on occasions of full State.
Captain's escort with Standard	—	1	2	1	3	1	1	52	For foreign Sovereigns, and when specially ordered.
,, ,, without ,,	—	1	1	1	3	1	—	27	For the Sovereign on occasions of Semi-state.
Prince of Wales's escort ...	—	—	1	1	2	—	—	28	For H.R.H. the Prince of Wales on Semi-state occasions when not representing Her Majesty.
Ordinary travelling escort ...	—	—	1	—	1	—	—	12	For Royal Personages on other than State occasions.
Her Majesty's travelling escort	—	—	1	—	2	—	—	12	For Her Majesty only, on other than State occasions.
Royal Duke's escort when Commander-in-Chief.	—	—	—	1	—	—	—	12	For a Royal Duke who is Commander-in-Chief and for the Commander of the Forces in Ireland on occasions of State ceremonial in Ireland.
Escort of Royal Duke or Princess.	—	—	—	1	—	—	—	8	For members of the Royal Family when not representing the Sovereign, and for Her Majesty's Judges.
Escort of Lord-Lieutenant in Ireland.	—	1	1	—	1	—	1	35	On State and Semi-state occasions.
Escort of Lord High Commissioner in Scotland.	—	—	1	—	1	—	—	20	On State occasions.
Escort of Speaker of the House of Commons.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	On occasions of State ceremonials.

* The officer commanding the regiment or the 2nd in command.

The "Field Officer's Escort" is formed as a squadron of four troops in two ranks (provided the space in which it is to be drawn up will admit of this formation) with the Standard bearer in the centre of the front rank, covered by a serjeant in the rear rank.

The senior captain acts as squadron commander, the junior captain commands the 2nd troop, the senior subaltern the 3rd troop, the remaining subalterns, in order of seniority, are posted as right troop leader and left troop leader and squadron serrefile; their positions are shown in Plate I, Fig. 1. If the escort moves off from the left the positions of the junior captain and the subalterns are changed, and will be as follows:—Junior captain, 3rd troop leader, senior subaltern, 2nd troop leader, and the remaining subalterns, in order of seniority, are posted as left troop leader and right troop leader and squadron serrefile.

The senior captain tells off the escort in four troops, and by fours, from the right, each troop consisting of 12 files. Two extra men and a serjeant are posted on each flank of the escort to act as advanced and rear guards respectively, the serjeant in each case being on the inner flank of his two extra men. One serjeant covers the Standard, and one is posted in each troop, so as to be on the inner flank of the leading section of the troop when wheeled by sections to the right. The serjeant-major not carrying the Standard, with the remaining serjeant and the two farriers, is posted in rear of the left troop, and when the procession moves off, they fall in in rear of the 4th troop. When the escort is formed up, the field officer takes post three horses' lengths in front of the squadron commander. If the escort is furnished by a regiment without a Standard, the escort will be formed in the same manner, a serjeant-major being posted in the centre of the front rank with a serjeant covering him in the rear rank. When the escort moves off, the serjeant-major and sergeant take up the positions aid down for the Standard bearer and coverer. These instructions are given as if the escort moved from the right.

When under peculiar circumstances flankers are required (as, for instance, to prevent a crowd from pressing upon the Royal procession), they are to be taken from the 1st and 4th divisions, so as to leave the 2nd and 3rd divisions, which immediately precede and follow the Royal Carriage, intact. On ordinary occasions, however, flankers are not employed.

On the Royal Personage appearing, the field officer in command gives the words "*Carry Swords*," "*Royal Salute*," on which the officers salute, the trumpet sounds, and the Standard is lowered.

As soon as the procession is ready to start, the field officer gives the command "*Form the Escort*," "*March*," on which the right troop leader gives the word "*First Troop, Sections Right*," "*March*," at the same time taking post on the left flank of the leading section. The advanced guard (consisting of the serjeant and two privates on the right) immediately moves off at an increased pace until it gains its proper distance. The 1st troop will be at least 50 yards in front of the 2nd troop, but this distance will be increased according to the number of carriages which may intervene between the two troops. When the procession consists of a long line of carriages, it may often be convenient to move off the advanced guard and 1st troop before the appearance of the Royal Personage, so as to take up their proper positions at the head of the procession, it being remembered that all carriages in advance of the Royal Carriage are to be between the 1st and 2nd troops, and that the 2nd and 3rd troops in all cases immediately precede and follow the Royal Carriage.

Immediately before the Royal Carriage is to move off, the 2nd troop leader gives the word "*Second Troop, Sections Right*," "*March*," on which the troop moves off immediately in front of the Royal Carriage. The rear section should be at such a distance in front of the horses of the Royal Carriage as to be able to prevent anything from interposing between the rear of the division and the carriage, especial care, however, being taken not in any way to impede the progress of the Royal Carriage, by which the pace of the whole procession is regulated.

Immediately the Royal Carriage moves off, the 3rd troop leader gives the command "*Third Troop, Sections Right,*" "*March.*" The Standard immediately follows the carriage at a horse's length distance from it; the leading section of the 3rd troop follows the Standard at half a horse's length distance.

The 4th troop remains stationary until the rear of the 3rd division, or any carriages that may follow the Royal Carriage in the procession, have gained a distance of 50 yards from it, when the left troop leader gives the word "*Fourth Troop, Sections Right,*" "*March,*" at the same time taking post on the inner (left) flank of the leading section of the troop. The rear guard (consisting of the serjeant and two privates, on the left of the escort) falls into its proper place in turn.

The officer in command of the escort should always be careful to ascertain beforehand the exact position which the State Carriage containing the Royal Personage to be escorted will occupy in the procession. When other carriages either precede or follow it, they will occupy the spaces between the 1st and 2nd, or 3rd and 4th troops, as under all circumstances the 2nd and 3rd troops are immediately to precede and follow the chief State Carriage, and no person is on any account to be permitted to intervene between either of them and the carriage.

When the procession arrives at its destination, the two men of the advanced guard form up (if the nature of the ground permits) at about 30 yards beyond the point at which the Royal Carriage will draw up, and facing towards that point. The remainder of the escort, as they reach the advanced men, form upon them in the manner best adapted to the available space and the circumstances of the position, preserving, however, as far as possible, the same formation as that in which the escort was drawn up before the procession started. On the Royal Personage quitting the carriage, the field officer in command gives the command "*Royal Salute,*" on which the officers salute, the trumpet sounds, and the Standard is lowered, as at the commencement of the procession.

The escort will remain formed up until the time for the

PLATE II.

ROYAL ESCORTS.

Fig 1.

CAPTAIN'S ESCORT WITHOUT STANDARD

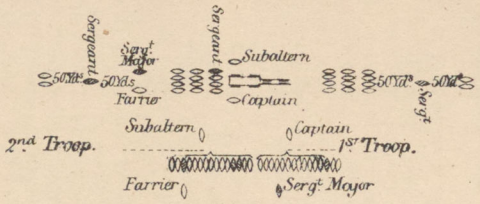
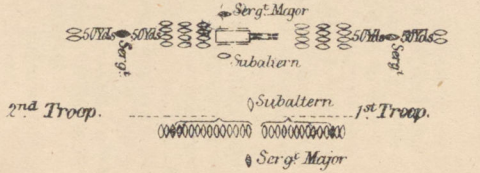


Fig 2.

PRINCE OF WALES' ESCORT



Note. Distances are not drawn to Scale.

Wyman & Sons Ltd. Lith. 9312-10-97.

return journey arrives, when it will march off in the same formation (from the right whenever practicable), and on arriving at its destination will form up in the manner previously described.

A "Captain's Escort with Standard" is employed for escorting foreign Sovereigns (unless a Field Officer's Escort is detailed), and also for escorting the Sovereign on certain occasions. In all escorts when they move off from the left the command "*Fours or Sections Left*" will be substituted for "*Fours or Sections Right*," &c.

The escort is formed as a squadron in double rank in two troops, with the Standard in the centre of the front rank between the troops, covered by a serjeant in the rear rank. The right and left troop each consists of 12 files in addition to which a serjeant and two men are posted on the outward flank of each troop to act as advanced and rear guards respectively; the serjeant in each case being on the inner flank of the two men. Each troop is told off from the right exclusive of the front and rear guards. If the escort moves off from the right, the senior subaltern commands the left troop, and the junior subaltern the right; and if the escort moves off from the left, the senior subaltern commands the right troop and the junior subaltern the left (Plate I, fig. 2). When a Captain's Escort of the strength detailed above is furnished by a regiment without a Standard, the escort will be formed in the same manner, the serjeant-major being posted in the centre of the front rank, covered by a serjeant. They will occupy the same places in the escort as are laid down for the Standard bearer and coverer.

On the Royal Personage appearing, a royal salute is given as described in the case of a Field Officer's Escort.

On the command "*Form the Escort*," "*Sections Right*," "*March*," the advance guard moves off at an increased pace until it has got its proper distance. The escort at the same time moves off, the right troop immediately preceding the Roya Carriage, the left troop following it.

If, owing to circumstances of ground the above escorts

have to be formed in single rank, they will be told off and formed up in such a manner that the different parties may move off successively in the order and formation above described.

A "Captain's Escort without Standard" is formed in single rank in two troops, exclusive of the advanced and rear guards, each of one serjeant and two privates, which are formed on the right and left of the line. The troop, which will be in rear of the carriage, will consist of 11 men and one serjeant, who will be posted so as to be on the inner flank of the section immediately behind the carriage, he forming part of that section. The troop in front of the carriage will consist of 12 men. Each division is told off by fours from the right, exclusive of the advanced and rear guards.

When the Royal Personage appears, swords are carried, the officers salute, and the captain gives the command "*Form the Escort*," "*Fours Right*," "*March*," on which the advanced guard moves off at an increased pace to the usual distances in front, and the right division moves of in fours three horses' lengths in front of the Royal Carriage. The left division follows in fours one horse's length behind the Royal Carriage.

The "Prince of Wales's Escort" is formed in single rank in a similar manner as that described for the "Captain's Escort without Standard," a serjeant and two privates being posted on each flank to act as advanced and rear guards respectively. Each troop consists of 12 men, exclusive of the advanced and rear guards. Each troop is told off by fours from the right.

After the Royal Salute has been given, the escort moves off by the command "*Form the Escort*," "*Fours Right*," "*March*," as described on page 449.

A travelling escort is formed up in single rank, and is told off by fours from the right, exclusive of the serjeant. The officer is in front of the centre if there is room, or, if not, on the right; the serjeant is on the left. Two corporals should be posted as Nos. 4 and 8, so as to be on the inner hand of the leading files of the parties preceding and following the Royal Carriage. In crowded thoroughfares the parties in front

To face page 452

PLATE III.

ROYAL ESCORTS.

Fig 1.

ORDINARY TRAVELLING ESCORT

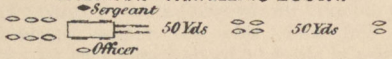


Fig 2.

HER MAJESTY'S TRAVELLING ESCORT

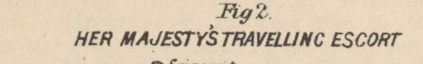


Fig. 3.

ROYAL DUKE'S ESCORT WHEN COMMANDER IN CHIEF.

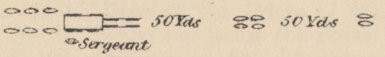
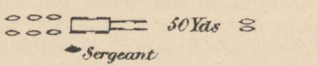


Fig 4.

ROYAL DUKE'S AND PRINCESS' ESCORT



Note Distances are not drawn to Scale

Wyman & Sons, Ltd, Lith. 9312·10·97.

of the Royal Carriage should reduce their distance from it so as to prevent anything intervening between them and the carriage.

After the usual Royal Salute has been given, the escort moves off in files by the command, "*Form the Escort*," "*Files Right*," "*March*." (Plate III, fig. 1.)

When a travelling escort is ordered for Her Majesty, a second serjeant is added, who rides immediately in rear of the officer, so as to be ready to move forward and take his post at any time, if necessary; further, the rear files fall back and take up a position as rear guard about 50 yards in rear of the last carriage of the cortége. (Plate III, fig. 2.) With the exception of the above arrangement of the rear files in the case of an escort for Her Majesty, a travelling escort attends the Royal Carriage only, without reference to the other carriages in the cortége.

The escort for a Royal Duke, when Commander-in-Chief, is formed as an ordinary travelling escort, the serjeant being posted on the right of the carriage. (Plate III, fig. 3.)

The ordinary escort for a Royal Duke (when not Commander in-Chief) or a Royal Princess, consists of 1 serjeant, and 8 rank and file. (Plate III, fig. 4.)

Whenever his Royal Highness the Prince of Wales or any member of the Royal Family represents the Sovereign at any State ceremonial, the same escorts are detailed as would be furnished for Her Majesty under similar circumstances.

In Ireland, the Lord Lieutenant, as representing the Sovereign, is entitled to the same escorts as would be furnished under ordinary circumstances for the Sovereign; but, under ordinary circumstances, the escort furnished to accompany the Lord Lieutenant, both on State and semi-State occasions, consists of 1 captain, 1 subaltern, 1 serjeant, 1 trumpeter, and 35 rank and file. Similarly, in Scotland the Lord High Commissioner to the General Assembly, when proceeding in State, receives an escort of 1 subaltern, 1 serjeant, and 20 rank and file.

The Commander of the Forces in Ireland (or the general officer acting for him in his absence) is, on occasions of State

ceremonial in Ireland, entitled to an escort of 1 serjeant and 12 rank and file, who are formed as described for the escort of a Royal Duke when Commander-in-Chief.

The Speaker of the House of Commons is, on occasions of State ceremonial, entitled to an escort of one Lifeguardsman, who rides on the right of the carriage.

When escorts are ordered for Her Majesty's Judges, they will, under ordinary circumstances, consist of 1 serjeant and 8 rank and file, and will be formed as described for the escort of a Royal Duke or Princess.

Relief of Escorts.

When travelling escorts relieve each other *en route* at an intermediate point where the Royal Carriage does not stop, the new escort should be formed up on one side of the road, and each party of it should move off in succession as the corresponding party of the old escort comes up, the officer saluting as the carriage approaches and taking his post on the right of the carriage. The old escort forms in succession on that flank of the new escort which is nearest to it, so as to be out of the way of the latter as it moves off. The officer of the old escort salutes as he quits the side of the Royal Carriage. The relief must always take place quietly and without confusion, and in such a manner as to cause no check to the progress of the Royal Carriage, at whatever pace the latter may be travelling. In narrow roads, where there is not room for the escorts to form up on the side of the road, it is advisable to have the different parties of the relieving escort stationed in files on the road in the order in which they are to move off, as the corresponding parties of the old escort come up, the files of the party which is to follow the carriage being opened out to the right and left so as to leave the centre of the road clear and to allow room for the passage of the Royal Carriage between the files. In this case the men of the old escort move off to each side of the road, without forming up, as the different parties of the new escort take their places. But whenever space

permits, the old escort should form up on one side of the road as it is relieved by the new escort.

If the relief takes place at a point where the Royal Carriage stops, the new escort will be formed up on the side of the road opposite to the door at which the carriage stops, and the old escort will form on that flank of the new escort which is nearest to it. Both escorts remain thus formed up until the Royal Carriage is again ready to start, when the new escort moves off, either from the right or left, as when forming a travelling escort.

In case the Royal Carriage should stop to change horses at a point at which the relief of the escort does not take place, the escort forms up on one side of the road facing the carriage during the halt, as before originally starting, and again moves off exactly in the same order when the Royal Carriage is ready to proceed. The officer in command salutes both as he quits the Royal Carriage when the escort forms, and also when he again takes his post by the carriage as the escort moves off.

Street Parties at Royal Processions, &c.

Cavalry employed in lining streets on occasions of State ceremonials, will generally be marched in file or files. Upon arriving at the ground to be taken up, the rear file or files will be halted, and the two men will move to the opposite sides of the street and face inwards; the next file or files will be similarly halted and faced inwards at the required interval from the men first formed, and so on in succession. Or both of the men of the rear files may take post on the near side of the road, and face inwards, the two men of the next files similarly taking post on the off side of the road, about 20 yards further on, and so on in succession, each files forming alternately on opposite sides of the road. The interval between the men must of course vary according to the strength of the party and the extent of ground to be taken up, but will usually be about 20 yards. A sufficiently

strong party should be stationed at the end of each street opening into the main route, in order to block the traffic and keep the course of the procession clear. All street parties form up with drawn swords.

It is the duty of the troops, in conjunction with the civil police, to keep a clear passage for the procession, and to prevent the crowd from pressing upon it. In the performance of this duty great tact and forbearance must be exercised, as a rash act, loss of temper, or even incivility on the part of a single soldier in the midst of a crowd might lead to most serious consequences. The men must be extremely careful and patient in the management of their horses, so as to prevent any injury to people on foot. They must on no account converse with any person in the crowd, but must devote their whole attention to the performance of their special duties, and must carefully observe every movement that takes place in their neighbourhood.

If the crowd presses forward so much that it cannot be kept back without force, the horses should be passaged quietly to the right and left, with their croups towards the people. The horses' heads should never be turned towards the crowd, as a horse is liable to be thrown down by the bit rein being suddenly seized.

As the procession approaches, the command "*Carry Swords*" is given, and as the Chief Royal Personage passes, the officers salute and Standards are lowered. When different Royal Personages pass in separate processions each one is saluted, but when they all pass in one general procession, the salute is given to the Chief Royal Personage only.

After the procession has passed, when the officer in command receives orders to remove his party, the men are moved off to one or other flank, either in file or files, according to the manner in which they were distributed, and close up on the move to their proper distances from each other.

In passing a Royal residence, when the Royal Personage is present, cavalry parties pass with drawn and carried swords, and trumpets sounding. Standards, however, are not lowered on such occasions.

S. 12. *Firing a Feu-de-joie.*

The line will be drawn up at *Order*, with shouldered arms.

"*With Blank Cartridge, Ready, Present.*" — Muzzles of carbines to slant upwards when loading, and to remain so. Carbines to be elevated at an angle of 45°.

The right-hand front rank man commences the fire, which will run down the front rank and up the rear rank as quickly as possible. When the right-hand rear rank man has fired, the whole will glance their eyes to the right, to bring the carbine to the "Ready" position, remove the cartridge case, &c.

"*Ready, Present.*" — As before directed.

The same to be repeated a third time.

"*Order—Arms.*"

The commanding officer will then give the following commands :—

"*Shoulder—Arms.*"
"*Royal—Salute.*"
"*Present—Arms.*"
"*Shoulder—Arms.*"
"*Order—Arms.*"
"*Three cheers.*"

When artillery are present and are ordered to fire 21 guns, seven will be fired before each round of the Feu-de-joie.

S. 13. *Funerals.*

The party appointed for the escort, according to the rank of the deceased, will be drawn up in two ranks, at order, facing the place where the corpse is lodged. Small parties will be formed with their files extended at one side pace from each other. When

the corpse is brought out the officer commanding will proceed as follows :—

"*Present—Arms.*" As usual.

"*Reverse—Arms.*" As detailed in the Lance and Carbine Exercise. The officers' swords are reversed under the right arm, the point of the sword downwards, the hilt being grasped with the right hand.

"*Close—Order.*" "*March.*"

Large funeral parties will march by troops, fours, or sections, which will be placed at the head of the procession.

In small parties, after the men have reversed arms, they will simply be turned either to the right or left, and moved to the head of the procession in files.

"*Slow—March.*" { The party will move off in slow time followed by the band, with drums muffled.

Unless specially ordered by the officer commanding the garrison, the band will not commence playing the Dead March until within a short distance (about 300 yards) of the burial ground.

The remainder of the procession will be formed as follows :—

THE CORPSE.

Pall bearers of equal rank with the deceased on each side of the Corpse.

Chief Mourners.

Officers, or non-commissioned officers, two and two according to rank, the juniors in front.

"*Troops—Right* (or *Left*) *Wheel*," [or "*Fours—Right* (or *Left*)"]
"*Halt.*"
"*Front Rank*,

When the head of the procession arrives near the burial ground, if the escort is formed in troops, fours, sections or files they

Right-about Turn." "*Front* (or *Rear*) *Rank, 4 Paces Step Back;*" "*Slow March.*"	will be ordered to wheel or form to the right or left and halted, the ranks turned inwards, and the front or rear rank ordered to step back four paces, or more if necessary, forming a lane for the corpse to pass through.

If the party is formed in files, the ranks will be inclined outwards, and will then be halted and turned inwards.

"*Rest on your Arms reversed.*"	As detailed in the Carbine Exercise.
"*Stand at—Ease.*"	As detailed in the Carbine Exercise. The head turned so as to look towards the corpse.
"*Attention.*"	The corpse and the remainder of the procession having passed through the lane, the word *Attention* will be given, on which the soldiers will raise their heads and drop their right hands.
"*Reverse—Arms.*"	As detailed in the Carbine Exercise.
"*Ranks, Right and Left—Turn.*" "*Slow—March.*" "*Halt, Front.*"	The ranks will then be turned towards the grave and move in slow time, the front rank inclining towards the rear rank till at three paces interval from it; the escort will be halted and fronted, near the grave and facing towards it.
"*Rest on your Arms Reversed.*" "*Stand at—Ease.*"	As detailed in the Carbine Exercise.

The funeral service will be performed, after which the escort will proceed as follows:—

"*Attention.*"	As before described.
"*Present—Arms.*"	As detailed in the Carbine Exercise.
"*Shoulder—Arms.*"	As usual.

"*With Blank Cartridge, Ready.*"	As detailed in the Carbine Exercise.
"*Fire Three Volleys in the Air.*"	As usual.
"*Present.*"	Fire, elevating the muzzle in the air.

After firing three rounds the men will be directed to shoulder arms. The escort will then be marched back to camp or barracks in troops, fours, sections, or files, in quick time. In marching back, the band is not to play until the party is entirely clear of the burying-ground.

N.B.—In the funerals of general officers the arrangements for the prescribed number of guns, and for the composition of the troops, must be made under the superintendence of the general officer commanding.

Printed for Her Majesty's Stationery Office,
By Harrison and Sons, St. Martin's Lane,
Printers in Ordinary to Her Majesty.
(Wt. 22824 17000 1 | 98—H & S 5962)

MILITARY BOOKS, published by Authority—continued.

VOLUNTEER FORCE: Regulations for. 1897. Price 1*s.*

VOLUNTEERS in Brigade and Regimental Camps, or when encamped with the Regular Forces. Orders and Instructions for. Revised, 1895. Price 1*d.*

TRUMPET and BUGLE SOUNDS for the ARMY. With Instructions for the Training of Trumpeters and Buglers. 1895. Price 2*s.*

GUNNERY: Text Book of. By Major G. MACKINLAY, R.A. Containing Parts I. and II., and Gunnery Tables. 1887. Price 4*s.*

GUNNERY TABLES. Collected and compiled by Major G. MACKINLAY, R.A., for the Text Book of Gunnery, 1887. Price 2*s.* 6*d.*

GUNS: Handbooks for, viz.:—

40-PR. R.M.L. of 35 cwt. (1897.) Price 9*d.*

32-PR. S.B. B.L. (For Flank Defence). Mounted on Garrison Sliding Carriage and Traversing Platform. Land Service. 1885. Price 6*d.*

30-PR. B.L. (Mark I). 1897. Price 1*s.*

20-PR. R.B.L. of 16 cwt. On Travelling Carriage. (Movable Armament and Volunteer Batteries of Position). 1896. Price 1*s.*

16-PR. R.M.L. of 12 cwt. L.S. (1895.) Price 1*s.*

13-PR. „ of 8 cwt. „ (1892.) Price 1*s.*

12-PR. of 12 cwt. A QUICK-FIRING. Land Service. 1896. Price 1*s.* 6*d.*

9-PR. R.M.L. of 6 cwt. L.S. (1885.) Price 1*s.*

6-PR. HOTCHKISS QUICK-FIRING. L.S. 1890. Price 1*s.* 6*d.*

12·5-inch R.M.L. of 38 tons, on Sliding Carriage. L.S. 1893. Price 1*s.* 9*d.*

12-inch B.L. of 47 tons. 1891. Price 1*s.* 6*d.*

10-inch „ 1895. Price 3*s.* 6*d.*

8-inch Howitzer, R.M.L. of 70 cwt. 1895. Price 3*s.*

7-inch R.B.L. of 72 cwt. and 82 cwt. On Moncrieff and Sliding Carriages. 1897. Price 1*s.*

6·3-inch R.M.L. Howitzer. 1895. Price 1*s.*

0·45 MAXIM M.H. Chamber Machine Gun on Parapet Mounting. 1890. 8vo. 16 pp. 13 plates. Price 1*s.* 6*d.*

0·303-inch MAXIM MACHINE GUN (Magazine Rifle Chamber). Mounted on Carriages, Field, Machine Gun. Cavalry and Infantry. 1897. Price 9*d.*

WORKS

Prepared in the Intelligence Division of the War Office.

AFRICA, BRITISH EAST. Handbook for. 1893. Price 3*s.*

ARMED STRENGTH OF:—

BELGIUM. 1882. Price 2*s.*

DENMARK. By Captain W. S. Cooke, 22nd Regt., 1875. Price 3*s.*

FRANCE. By Major C. J. East, 57th Regt., D.A.Q.M.G. 1877. Price 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE GERMAN EMPIRE. By Captain J. M. Grierson, R.A., and edited by Col. C. W. Bowdler Bell, D.A.A.G. 1888. Part I. Price 6*s.* 6*d.* Part II. Price 2*s.*

JAPAN. By Captain J. M. Grierson, R.A. August, 1886. Price 2*s.*

THE NETHERLANDS and their **COLON**
With two Maps. By Major J. K. Trotter, R.A. Price 7*s.*

PORTUGAL. By Lieutenant Count Gleichen, Grenadier Guards. (With Map.) 1888. Price 3*s.*

SPAIN. With Map. 1883. Price 3*s.*

SWEDEN and NORWAY. By Captain W. S. Cooke, 22nd Regt., D.A.Q.M.G. With Map. Price 3*s.* 6*d.*

SWITZERLAND. By Colonel C. Bowdler Bell, D.A.A.G. With a Map. 1889. Price 7*s.* 6*d.*

AUSTRIA-HUNGARY. Military Forces of. Handbook of the. Price 2*s.*

BALKAN STATES. MINOR. Handbook of the Armies of. Price 6*d.*

CAVALRY. Instructions for the Training, Employment, and Leading of. By Major-General Carl von Schmidt. Compiled by Captain von Vollard-Bockelberg, 2nd Silesian Dragoons. Translated by Captain C. W. Bowdler Bell, 8th Hussars. 1881. Price 3*s.* 6*d.*

DUTCH ARMY (Home and Colonial). Handbook of the. 1896. Price 9*d.*

EGYPT. MAP OF. 4 Sheets. 1882. Price 4*s.*

ENGLISH-ARABIC VOCABULARY AND DIALOGUES FOR THE USE OF THE ARMY AND NAVY. By Capt. C. M. Watson, R.E. Price 1*s.*

FRANCO-GERMAN WAR, 1870-71. Authorised Translation, from the German Official Account, by Major F. C. H Clarke, C.M.G., R.A.

First Part:—History of the War to the Downfall of the Empire.

Vol. I. Sects. 1 to 5:—From the Outbreak of Hostilities to the Battle of Gravelotte. With case of Maps and Plans. Price 26*s.*